

IFLA Series on Bibliographic Control Vol 31

# **International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD)**

~~Preliminary~~ Consolidated Edition

Recommended by the ISBD Review Group

Approved by the Standing Committee of the  
IFLA Cataloguing Section

Draft as of 2010-05-10

2010



## CONTENTS

### Introduction

- A General Chapter
  - A.1 Scope, purpose and use
  - A.2 Treatment of resources
  - A.3 Outline of the ISBD and Punctuation
  - A.4 Sources of information
  - A.5 Language and script of the description
  - A.6 Abridgements and abbreviations
  - A.7 Capitalization
  - A.8 Misprints
  - A.9 Symbols, etc.
  - A.10 Imperfections
  - A.11 Examples

### SPECIFICATION OF ELEMENTS

- 0 Content form and media type area
  - 0.1 Content form
  - 0.2 Content qualification
  - 0.3 Media type
- 1 Title and statement of responsibility area
  - 1.1 Title proper
  - 1.2 Parallel title
  - 1.3 Other title information
  - 1.4 Statement of responsibility
- 2 Edition area
  - 2.1 Edition statement
  - 2.2 Parallel edition statement
  - 2.3 Statement of responsibility relating to the edition
  - 2.4 Additional edition statement
  - 2.5 Statement of responsibility following an additional edition statement
- 3 Material or type of resource specific area
  - 3.1 Mathematical data (Cartographic resources)
  - 3.2 Music format statement (Notated music)
  - 3.3 Numbering (Serials)
- 4 Publication, production, distribution, etc., area
  - 4.1 Place of publication, production and/or distribution

- 4.2 Name of publisher, producer and/or distributor
- 4.3 Date of publication, production and/or distribution
- 4.4 Place of printing or manufacture
- 4.5 Name of printer or manufacturer
- 4.6 Date of printing or manufacture
- 5 Physical description area
  - 5.1 Specific material designation and extent
  - 5.2 Other physical details
  - 5.3 Dimensions
  - 5.4 Accompanying material statement
- 6 Series and multipart monographic resource area
  - 6.1 Title proper of a series or multipart monographic resource
  - 6.2 Parallel title of a series or multipart monographic resource
  - 6.3 Other title information of a series or multipart monographic resource
  - 6.4 Statement of responsibility relating to a series or multipart monographic resource
  - 6.5 International standard number of a series or multipart monographic resource
  - 6.6 Numbering within a series or multipart monographic resource
- 7 Note area
  - 7.0 Notes on the content form and media type area and for special types of material
  - 7.1 Notes on the title and statement of responsibility area
  - 7.2 Notes on the edition area and the bibliographic history of the resource
  - 7.3 Notes on the material or type of resource specific area
  - 7.4 Notes on the publication, production, distribution, etc., area
  - 7.5 Notes on the physical description area
  - 7.6 Notes on the series and multipart monographic resources area
  - 7.7 Notes relating to the contents
  - 7.8 Notes on the resource identifier and terms of availability area
  - 7.9 Notes on the issue, part, iteration, etc., that forms the basis of the description
  - 7.10 Other notes
  - 7.11 Notes relating to the copy in hand
- 8 Resource identifier and terms of availability area
  - 8.1 Resource Identifier
  - 8.2 Key title (continuing resources)
  - 8.3 Terms of availability

## Appendixes

Appendix A: Multilevel description

Appendix B: Bi-directional records

Appendix C: Bibliography

Appendix D: Abbreviations

Appendix E: Glossary

## Index

**Members of the Study Group on Future Directions of the ISBDs (as of November 2006)**

Françoise Bourdon	Bibliothèque nationale de France
Elena Escolano Rodríguez	Biblioteca Nacional, Spain
Renate Gömpel	Deutsche Nationalbibliothek, Germany
Lynne C. Howarth	University of Toronto, Canada
Agnès Manneheut (from August 2005)	Agence bibliographique de l'Enseignement supérieur, France
Dorothy McGarry (Chair)	University of California, Los Angeles, USA (retired)
Eeva Murtomaa	National Library of Finland
Mirna Willer	National and University Library, Zagreb, Croatia
John Hostage (Consultant, from August 2006)	Harvard Law School, USA

**Members of the ISBD Review Group (as of May 2010)**

Françoise Bourdon	Bibliothèque nationale de France
John D. Byrum, Jr. (Chair through March 2006; corresponding member from April 2006)	Library of Congress, USA (retired)
Elena Escolano Rodríguez (Chair from April 2006)	Biblioteca Nacional, Spain
William Garrison	Syracuse University, USA
Renate Gömpel	Deutsche Nationalbibliothek, Germany
Mauro Guerrini	Università di Firenze, Italy
Ton Heijligers (Corresponding member)	Amsterdam, The Netherlands
Lynne C. Howarth	University of Toronto, Canada
Philippe Corentin Le Pape	SICD des universités de Toulouse, France
Cristina Magliano	ICCU Rome, Italy
Dorothy McGarry	University of California, Los Angeles, USA (retired)
Eeva Murtomaa	National Library of Finland
Glenn Patton	OCLC Online Computer Library Center, USA
John D. Byrum, Jr. (corresponding member)	Library of Congress, USA (retired)
Elena Escolano Rodríguez (chair)	Biblioteca Nacional de España, Spain
Renate Gömpel	Deutsche Nationalbibliothek, Germany
顾犇 (Ben Gu)	National Library of China
Mauro Guerrini	Università di Firenze, Italy

Tuula Haapamäki	National Library of Finland
John Hostage	Harvard Law School, USA
Lynne C. Howarth	University of Toronto, Canada
Natalia Kaparova	Russian State Library
Irena Kavčič	National and University Library, Slovenia
이재선 (Jaesun Lee)	National Library of Korea
Agnès Manneheut (corresponding member)	Université de Nantes, France
Dorothy McGarry	University of California, Los Angeles, USA (retired)
Glenn Patton	OCLC Online Computer Library Center, USA

### Liaisons with other groups

<u>Name</u>	<u>Institution</u>	<u>Representation</u>
<u>Anders Cato</u>	<u>National Library of Sweden</u>	<u><i>Katalogiseringsregler för svenska bibliotek</i></u>
<u>Gordon Dunsire</u>	<u>University of Strathclyde, Scotland</u>	<u>Sematic Web communities</u>
<u>Hanne Hørl Hansen</u>	<u>Dansk BibliotekCenter, Denmark</u>	<u><i>Katalogiseringsregler og bibliografisk standard for danske biblioteker</i></u>
<u>Cristina Magliano</u>	<u>ICCU, Italy</u>	<u>Commissione RICA</u>
<u>Tom Pols</u>	<u>Koninklijke Bibliotheek, Netherlands</u>	<u>FOBID, Netherlands Library Forum</u>
<u>Massimo Gentili-Tedeschi</u>	<u>Biblioteca Nazionale Braidense, Italy</u>	<u>International Association of Music Libraries, Archives, and Documentation Centres</u>
<u>Margaret Stewart</u>	<u>Library and Archives Canada</u>	<u>Joint Steering Committee for Development of RDA</u>
<u>Regina Varniene-Janssen</u>	<u>Director of Centre of Bibliography and Book Science in Lithuania</u>	<u><i>Kompiuterinių bibliografinių ir autoritetinių įrašų sudarymo metodika</i></u>
<u>WATANABE Takahiro</u>	<u>Tezukayama Gakuin University, Japan</u>	<u>Japan Library Association</u>
<u>Mirna Willer</u>	<u>University of Zadar, Croatia</u>	<u><i>Pravilnik i priručnik za izradbu abecednih kataloga</i></u>

## INTRODUCTION

The International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD) is intended to serve as a principal standard to promote universal bibliographic control, that is, to make universally and promptly available, in a form that is internationally acceptable, basic bibliographic data for all published resources in all countries. The ISBD's main goal of the ISBD is, and has been since the ~~very~~ beginning, to ~~offer~~ provide consistency when sharing bibliographic information.

10 The ISBD is the standard that determines the data elements to be recorded or transcribed in a specific sequence as the basis of the description of the resource being catalogued. In addition, it employs prescribed punctuation as a means of recognizing and displaying ~~these~~ data elements and making them understandable independently of the language of the description.

~~Currently, a~~ A new Statement of International Cataloguing Principles was published by IFLA in 2009<sup>1</sup> ~~is~~ being developed by means of a series of regional IFLA Meetings of Experts on an International Cataloguing Code, in order that the principles are approved all around the world. In these principles, which replace and broaden the Paris Principles<sup>2</sup> of 1961, the ~~fourth~~ fifth section is devoted to bibliographic description where it is ~~recognized~~ stated that “The ~~d~~ Descriptive portion of the bibliographic ~~record~~ data should be based on an internationally agreed standard.”<sup>3</sup> ~~According to this,~~ A footnote identifies the ISBD as ~~is recognized to be~~ the standard for the library community, as the statement of principles is intended not only for libraries but also for archives, museums, and other communities.

20 Although the development of this standard was originally ~~pushed~~ motivated by the automation of bibliographic control as well as by the economic necessity of sharing cataloguing, the ISBD ~~is~~ continues to be useful for and applicable ~~for~~ to bibliographic descriptions of all kinds of bibliographic resources in any kind type of catalogue, whether OPACs (Online Public Access Catalogues) online or catalogues in a form less technologically advanced. Those agencies using national and multinational cataloguing codes could apply this internationally agreed-upon standard conveniently in their catalogues.

~~The ISBD Review Group is trying to solve some of the problems that today's cataloguers face. The present ISBD is intended to serve as a standard for description of all types of published materials up to the present date, and to make it easier to describe resources that share characteristics of more than one format. In addition, it will facilitate the work of keeping the ISBD updated and consistent for the future.~~

30 ~~Having these goals in mind, in 2003 the ISBD Review Group decided to set up a Study Group on Future Directions of the ISBDs. This Study Group decided that consolidation of all ISBDs was feasible. The~~

<sup>1</sup> *IFLA Cataloguing Principles: the Statement of International Cataloguing Principles (ICP) and its Glossary in 20 Languages.* Ed. by Barbara B. Tillett and Ana Lupe Cristán. (München: K.G. Saur, 2009). Also available at <http://www.ifla.org/en/publications/statement-of-international-cataloguing-principles>

<sup>2</sup> *International Conference on Cataloguing Principles. Report.* (London: International Federation of Library Associations, 1963), 91-96.

<sup>3</sup> *IFLA Cataloguing Principles, 5.3* IFLA cataloguing principles : steps towards an international cataloguing code : report from the 1st IFLA Meeting of Experts on an International Cataloguing Code, Frankfurt, 2003. — München : Saur, 2004. — IFLA cataloguing principles : steps towards an international cataloguing code, 2 : report from the 2nd IFLA Meeting of Experts on an International Cataloguing Code, Buenos Aires, Argentina, 2004. — München : Saur, 2005. — IFLA cataloguing principles: steps towards an international cataloguing code, 3 : report from the 3rd IFLA Meeting of Experts on an International Cataloguing Code, Cairo, Egypt, 2005. — München : Saur, 2006. — Also available at: [http://www.d-nb.de/standardisierung/afs/imeicc\\_index.htm](http://www.d-nb.de/standardisierung/afs/imeicc_index.htm); <http://www.loc.gov/loc/ifla/imeicc/imeicc2/>; <http://www.loc.gov/loc/ifla/imeicc/> and <http://www.nl.go.kr/ice/ice/information.php>

Study Group on Future Directions of the ISBDs was charged by the Review Group with the task of preparing a definitive text, resulting in this document.

Its ~~w~~Work on the ISBD has been guided by the following ~~o~~Objectives and ~~p~~Principles:

#### **Objectives:**

- ~~To prepare a consolidated, updated ISBD from the specialized ISBDs in order to meet the needs of cataloguers and other users of bibliographic information.~~
- ~~To~~ The ISBD provides consistent stipulations for description of all types of published resources, to the extent that uniformity is possible, and specific stipulations for specific types of resources as required to describe those resources.

#### 40 **Principles:**

- The ~~primary purpose of the ISBD is to~~ provides the stipulations for compatible descriptive cataloguing worldwide in order to aid the international exchange of bibliographic records between national bibliographic agencies and throughout the international library and information community (e.g. including producers and publishers).
- The ISBD accommodates ~~D~~ different levels of description ~~will be accommodated~~, including those needed by national bibliographic agencies, national bibliographies, universities and other research collections.
- The descriptive elements needed to identify and select a resource must be specified.
- The set of elements of information rather than the display or use of those elements in a specific automated system ~~will~~ provides the focus.
- Cost-~~e~~ effective practices must be considered in developing the stipulations.

50

~~The resulting text has been established by means of collocating related provisions from each ISBD in a new structure, merging the published versions of texts for different types of materials as the basis on which to work, updating the result with the revised versions of ISBD reached in the last few years, and generalizing wording.~~ The organization of provisions in the present text is ~~by giving~~ to give first the general stipulations that apply to all types of resources, then the specific stipulations that add information required for that specific type of resource or ~~is an~~ are ~~exceptions~~ to a general rule.

60 In general, the ISBD is applied to describe manifestations, by means of description of the item in hand as an exemplar of the entire manifestation, ~~using~~ in the terminology of *Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records* (FRBR)<sup>4</sup> ~~terminology~~. ~~With it~~ In this way, the ISBD applies the Statement of International Cataloguing Principles, ~~that~~ which establishes ~~that~~ “A b Bibliographic records description typically should be based on the item as representative of the typically reflect manifestations”<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> IFLA Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records, *Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records: Final Report* (München: K.G. Saur, 1998). Also available at <http://www.ifla.org/en/publications/functional-requirements-for-bibliographic-records>

<sup>5</sup> ~~ibid.~~ IFLA Cataloguing Principles, 5.2.

In accordance with the fourth principle of the ISBD and endeavouring to improve interoperability between bibliographic retrieval systems and display formats, the prescribed punctuation has been slightly changed. For example, punctuation may be repeated where an area ends with a point and the following area begins with a point. Also, if different elements in the same area are supplied, each is enclosed in its own set of square brackets. This will give consistency in other displays that differ from the ISBD display.

70 In the present edition the treatment of general material designations continues as it was in the previous specialized ISBDs, although this element is going to be changed in structure and location. Attempting to provide improved guidance regarding the use of the ISBDs for bibliographic description of resources in multiple formats, and recognizing the increasing incidence of resources published in more than one physical medium and the challenges that these resources pose for bibliographic control, the Review Group appointed a task force charged to investigate the GMD. The Material Designations Study Group agreed on the importance and primacy of the GMD as an “early warning device” for catalogue users. The group proposed the creation of a separate, unique, high level component for recording in bibliographic records. As its work is not yet ready in its complete form, and in order not to delay further the publication of this ISBD, given that many people are depending on it, the Review Group decided the ISBD will be updated after the Material Designations Study Group finishes its work.

80 In the ISBD, national bibliographic agencies are called upon to “prepare the definitive descriptions that “containing all the mandatory elements set out in the ISBD insofar as the information is applicable to the resource being described” (see A0.1.3). This practice is also recommended for application by libraries that share bibliographic data with each other. Inclusion of a data element is considered “mandatory” in all cases for certain elements, and in other cases is considered “mandatory” when necessary for identification of the resource being described or otherwise considered important to users of a bibliography or a catalogue. In the latter cases, the inclusion or exclusion of an element has been made dependent on a specific condition that is given in the stipulations comprising the ISBD. To facilitate the application of the practices stipulated, the ISBD designates particular data elements as optional, i.e. a cataloguing agency is free to choose to include or exclude these elements. In the ISBD, a review of the Outline (provided at paragraph 0.3) indicates which data elements are mandatory, conditional or optional. The stipulations of the ISBD can be complemented by the IFLA Guidelines for the Application of the ISBDs to the Description of Component Parts.<sup>6</sup>

90

### **ISBD and FRBR relationship**

This edition of the ISBD reflects the effort to bring description of all materials to the same state of conformity with FRBR. This aspect has entailed a close examination of the ISBD data elements to make optional those that are also optional in FRBR. In no case is a data element mandatory in FRBR but optional in the ISBD.

### **ISBD and FRBR relationship**

100 The ISBD Review Group considered that it was essential for IFLA to clarify the relationship between the ISBDs and the FRBR model. In trying to ~~achieve the adaptation of~~ ISBD terminology to the FRBR’s terms of “work”, “expression”, “manifestation” and “item” and to replace ~~that should be introduced in place of~~ terms such as “publication”, the group encountered difficulties, owing in large part to the fact that the terms used in FRBR were defined in the context of an entity-relationship model conceived at a higher

<sup>6</sup> International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. *Guidelines for the application of the ISBDs to the description of component parts*. (London: IFLA Universal Bibliographic Control and International MARC Programme, 1988). Available online at: <http://www.ifla.org/files/cataloguing/isbd/component-parts.pdf>

level of abstraction than the specifications for the ISBDs. ~~Taking into consideration advice~~ As a report from the Frankfurt IFLA Meeting of Experts on a International Cataloguing Code (IME-ICC) had cautioned, it was said “FRBR terminology should *not* be merely incorporated such as it stands into the ISBDs and cataloguing rules, but these should keep their own specific terminology, and provide accurate definitions showing how each term in this specific terminology is conceptually related to the FRBR terminology”<sup>7</sup>. The Rreview Group agreed with the advice from the IME-ICC and decided, in 2003, to avoid using FRBR terminology in the ISBD. Nevertheless, the ISBD Review Group did ~~decide to~~ introduce some changes in ~~terminology~~ wording. ~~Among them~~ One change is the use of the term “resource” rather than “item” or “publication”. This decision was taken in order to avoid confusion, because the use of the term “item” in the former ISBDs is different from the term “item” as used in FRBR.

The Rreview Group believed that development of a table to detail the relationship of each of the elements specified in the ISBDs to its corresponding entity-attribute or relationship as defined in the FRBR model would satisfy the need to make clear that the ISBDs and FRBR themselves enjoyed a harmonious relationship. The document that develops the mapping, entitled “Mapping ISBD Elements to FRBR Entity Attributes and Relationships” was approved by the Cataloguing Section’s Standing Committee on July 9, 2004.<sup>8</sup>

The ISBD Review Group wants to acknowledge all previous revision work and publications of the ISBDs, as this new version has the intention of respecting as much as possible the ~~different stipulations coming from the specific~~ associated with the individual ISBDs, in order to adhere to the ~~second objective of~~ providing consistent stipulations for descriptions of all types of resources. ~~The following~~ is a brief summary in recognition of this previous work.<sup>9</sup>

## History

The International Standard Bibliographic Descriptions date back to 1969, when the IFLA Committee on Cataloguing sponsored an International Meeting of Cataloguing Experts. This meeting produced a resolution that proposed the creation of standards to regularize the form and content of bibliographic descriptions. As a result, the Committee on Cataloguing put into motion work that ultimately would provide the means for a considerable increase in the sharing and exchange of bibliographic data. This work resulted in the concept of the International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD).

The first of the ISBDs was the International Standard Bibliographic Description for Monographic Publications (ISBD(M)), which appeared in 1971. By 1973, this text had been adopted by a number of national bibliographies and, with translations of the original English text into several other languages, had been taken into account by a number of cataloguing committees in redrafting national and multinational

<sup>7</sup> Patrick Le Boeuf, "Brave new FRBR world". In *IFLA Cataloguing Principles: Steps towards an International Cataloguing Code: Report from the 1st IFLA Meeting of Experts on an International Cataloguing Code, Frankfurt, 2003*. Available at [http://www.d-nb.de/standardisierung/pdf/papers\\_leboeuf.pdf](http://www.d-nb.de/standardisierung/pdf/papers_leboeuf.pdf)

<sup>8</sup> This mapping is based on the ISBDs published at that time. Available at: <http://www.ifla.org/files/cataloguing/pubs/ISBD-FRBR-mappingFinal.pdf>

<sup>9</sup> For a more detailed introduction to the ISBDs, see: John Byrum, “The Birth and Re-birth of the ISBDs: Process and Procedures for Creating and Revising the International Standard Bibliographic Descriptions”, 66th IFLA Council and General Conference, Jerusalem, Israel, 2000. Available at <http://www.archive.ifla.org/IV/ifla66/papers/118-164e.htm>

rules for description.<sup>10</sup> Comments from users of the ISBD(M) led to the decision to produce a revised text that was published in 1974 as the “First standard edition”. The International Standard Bibliographic Description for Serials (ISBD(S)) was also published in 1974.

140 In 1975, the Joint Steering Committee for Revision of the Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules proposed to the IFLA Committee on Cataloguing that a general international standard bibliographic description suitable for all types of library materials should be developed. The ISBD(G), published in 1977, was the result. The ISBD(M) was then revised to bring it into line with the ISBD(G), and the “First standard edition revised” was published in 1978.

Other ISBDs subsequently appeared for specific types of materials: ISBD(CM) for cartographic materials, ISBD(NBM) for nonbook materials, and a revised ISBD(S) for serials, were published in 1977; ISBD(A) for older monographic publications (antiquarian) and ISBD(PM) for printed music were published in 1980.

### Revision, 1980–2000

150 At the IFLA World Congress in Brussels, held in August 1977, the Standing Committee of the IFLA Section on Cataloguing made important new decisions in relation to IFLA’s programme of ISBDs. It was decided that all ISBD texts would be fixed to a life of five years, after which revision would be considered for all texts or for particular texts. As a result, the Standing Committee formed an ISBD Review Committee; it first met in 1981 to make plans for reviewing and revising the ISBDs.

The ISBDs were republished as follows: ISBD(M), ISBD(CM) and ISBD(NBM) in 1987, ISBD(S) in 1988, ISBD(CF) for computer files was published in 1990, ISBD(A) and ISBD(PM) in 1991, and ISBD(G) in 1992. By the end of the 1980s, the first general review project had been completed. Thereafter, ISBD(CF) became ISBD(ER) for electronic resources, published in 1997.

160 In the early 1990s, the IFLA Section on Cataloguing with the cooperation of the Section on Classification and Indexing set up a Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records (FRBR). One immediate consequence of this development was the decision to suspend most revision work on the ISBDs while the FRBR Study Group pursued its charge to “recommend a basic level of functionality and basic data requirements for records created by national bibliographic agencies”. In 1998, the FRBR Study Group published its Final Report after its recommendations were approved by the IFLA Section on Cataloguing’s Standing Committee<sup>11</sup>. At that time the ISBD Review Group was reconstituted to resume its traditional work. As expected, the IFLA Section on Cataloguing’s Standing Committee asked the ISBD Review Group to initiate a full-scale review of the ISBDs. The objective of this “second general review project” was to ensure conformity between the provisions of the ISBDs and ~~FRBR’s~~ the data requirements in FRBR for the “basic level national bibliographic record”.

<sup>10</sup> For a complete list of the superseded ISBDs is available at: ~~in English:~~ <http://www.ifla.org/VI/3/nd1/isbdlist.htm> <http://www.ifla.org/en/node/900> and a list of the authorized translations, see <http://www.ifla.org/VI/3/nd1/isbdtran.htm>

<sup>11</sup> Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records : Final Report / IFLA Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records, International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. – München : K. G. Saur, 1998. Also available at <http://www.ifla.org/VII/s13/frbr/frbr.htm>

## Revision, 2000–2006

170 ~~To date,~~ In this general revision project, ISBD(S) was revised to ISBD(CR) for serials and other continuing resources, and was published in 2002 following meetings to harmonize the ISBD(S) with the ISSN guidelines and with the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*, 2nd edition. A revised ISBD(M) was also published in 2002, and a revised ISBD(G) in 2004. ISBD(CM) and ISBD(ER) underwent the world-wide review process and were revised following that process, but were not finished at that time because work was begun on a consolidated ISBD.

### Preliminary consolidated edition, 2007

~~This resulted from a decision by the Review Group a~~ At the Berlin IFLA Conference in 2003, the ISBD Review Group decided to form the Study Group on Future Directions of the ISBDs. This study group decided that consolidation of all ISBDs was feasible. The study group was charged by the review group with the task of preparing a definitive text, resulting in the preliminary consolidated edition.

180 The ISBD Review Group was trying to solve some of the problems that today's cataloguers face. The consolidated ISBD is intended to serve as a standard for description of all types of published materials up to the present date, and to make it easier to describe resources that share characteristics of more than one format. In addition, it facilitates the work of keeping the ISBD updated and consistent for the future.

All these last revisions ~~have been~~ were taken into account in the ~~current~~ preliminary consolidated edition of the ISBD, in addition to the recently revised ISBD(A) resulting from the world-wide review process carried on in 2006. The resulting text was established by means of collocating related provisions from each ISBD in a new structure, merging the published versions of texts for different types of materials as the basis on which to work, updating the result with the revised versions of ISBD reached in the last few years, and generalizing wording.

190 In accordance with the principle that the focus of the ISBD is the elements and not the display and endeavouring to improve interoperability between bibliographic retrieval systems and display formats, the prescribed punctuation was slightly changed in the preliminary consolidated edition in 2007. For example, punctuation ~~may be~~ is repeated where an area ends with a point and the following area is preceded by prescribed punctuation that begins with a point. Also, if different elements in the same area are supplied, each is enclosed in its own set of square brackets. This will give consistency in other displays that differ from the ISBD display.

200 Grateful acknowledgement is made to all the study groups involved in the review of specific ISBDs, and to the previous chair of the ISBD Review Group, John D. Byrum, who carried out the majority of revision projects. Special thanks are due to Dorothy McGarry, chair of the Study Group on Future Directions of the ISBDs, for the editorial oversight she contributed in the revisions of several of the ISBDs and in the production of the successive drafts and final version of the preliminary consolidated edition.

### Consolidated edition, 2010

Despite the changes introduced by the revision projects summarized above, the essential structure and data components of the ISBD have proved relatively stable over the years and continue to be widely used in full or part by creators of cataloguing codes and metadata schemas. However, given the changing nature of resources and recent technological developments that have impacted bibliographic access, it was decided the ISBD Review Group will maintain the consolidated edition of the ISBD, which ~~will~~ has superseded the individual ISBDs, taking into consideration changes to national and multinational cataloguing codes.

- 210 The ISBD Review Group appointed a Material Designations Study Group (MDSG) in 2003 to investigate the general and specific material designations (GMD/SMD) as applied to multiple formats and mixed media. This study group was aware of concerns that had been raised by the Working Group on General Material Designations at the first IFLA Meeting of Experts on an International Cataloguing Code (IME ICC) in 2003 in Frankfurt. As Tom Delsey had noted in a 1998 study of the logical structure of Part I of the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*,<sup>12</sup> the GMD terms reflected a confusing mix of physical format, class of material, form of carrier, and notation (e.g. Braille). Moreover, the location of the GMD immediately following the title proper was seen as interrupting the logical order and sequencing of title information.
- 220 By the IFLA 2007 meetings in Durban, the preliminary Consolidated Edition of the ISBD had been published, and the MDSG had drafted a proposal for a content/carrier component for ISBD Review Group discussion. The draft took into account version 1.0 of the RDA/ONIX Framework for Resource Categorization<sup>13</sup> (August 2006), and the subsequent drafts of *Resource Description and Access (RDA)*<sup>14</sup> incorporating the RDA/ONIX Framework. These and other documents were instrumental to the work of the study group as it addressed the structure and terminology of an independent ISBD component for content/carrier.
- After a period of revisions and worldwide review, a new Area 0, called “Content Form and Media Type Area”, containing the three elements of (1) content form, (2) content qualification, and (3) media type, was approved in 2009 and published on the IFLA website.<sup>15</sup> It is now included in the ISBD for the first time, and the general material designation has been removed from Area 1.
- 230 ~~This text will not solve all the problems that are present in today’s cataloguing processes. Conscious that more consistency and uniformity can be reached, the Review Group foresees a new revision in two years’ time to work toward this goal, and also to solve many of the problems that remain and consider other suggestions coming from all of the IME ICCs.~~
- ~~Grateful acknowledgement is made to all the Study Groups involved in the review of specific ISBDs, and to the previous chair of the ISBD Review Group, John D. Byrum, who carried out the majority of revision projects. Special thanks are due to Dorothy McGarry, chair of the Study Group on Future Directions of the ISBDs, for the editorial oversight she contributed in the production of the successive drafts and final version of this document.~~
- 240 Some other important changes in the current edition are: editorial work to avoid redundancy and achieve more harmonization; simplification of designating the levels of mandatory, optional and conditional elements to indicate only when an element is mandatory; clarification of the basis of the description, which constitutes the object of the bibliographic description; more attention to multipart monographic resources; revision of the sources of information; and more consideration of the requirements of nonroman scripts; stipulations for the description of older monographic resources that did not correspond to the ISBD have been removed; it has been clarified that qualifiers are different from elements, and finally, many more definitions have been included in the glossary.

<sup>12</sup> Tom Delsey. *The Logical Structure of the Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*. 1998-1999. Available at: <http://www.rda-jsc.org/docs.html>

<sup>13</sup> *RDA/ONIX Framework for Resource Categorization*. 2006. Available at: <http://www.rda-jsc.org/working2.html#chair-10>

<sup>14</sup> RDA: Resource Description and Access. <http://www.rda-jsc.org/rda.html>

<sup>15</sup> *ISBD Area 0: Content Form and Media Type Area*. Available at: <http://www.ifla.org/publications/isbd-area-0-content-form-and-media-type-area>

250

Special thanks are due to John Hostage, editor of the Consolidated ISBD, for his editorial oversight and contributions in the production of the successive drafts and final version of this document. I would also like to acknowledge the many contributions from consulting members of the review group, representatives of national libraries, national library networks and international institutions, as well as those received as a result of the worldwide review process from both institutions and individuals. These contributions have provided many suggestions to help the ISBD Review Group in revision of the ISBD.

Madrid, Spain

~~February 2007~~ June 2010

Elena Escolano Rodríguez, Chair  
ISBD Review Group

## **0A** PRELIMINARY NOTES **GENERAL CHAPTER**

### **0.A.1** Scope, purpose and use

#### **0.A.1.1** Scope

260 The International Standard Bibliographic Description (ISBD) specifies the requirements for the description and identification of the most common types of published resources that are likely to appear in library collections. The ISBD also assigns an order to the elements of the description and specifies a system of punctuation for the description.

The provisions of the ISBD relate first to bibliographic records produced by national bibliographic agencies and second to bibliographic records produced by other cataloguing agencies.

The types of resources covered by the ISBD include the following:

~~Printed texts~~

~~c~~ Cartographic resources

~~e~~ Electronic resources

~~m~~ Moving images

270 ~~m~~ Multimedia resources

~~n~~ Notated music resources

~~printed texts~~

~~s~~ Sound recordings

~~s~~ Still images (e.g. engravings, photographs)

It is anticipated that national or international committees responsible for preparing codes of cataloguing rules will use the ISBD as the basis for their rules on description of library materials, to describe all aspects of ~~the~~ each resource, including its content, its carrier, its medium, and its mode of issuance.

The ISBD is also concerned with resources for use by the visually impaired (e.g. in eye-readable form or in embossed form), and includes those published for limited distribution or for sale on demand.

~~For definitions, see the Glossary.~~

#### 280 **0.A.1.2** Purpose

The primary purpose of the ISBD is to provide the stipulations for compatible descriptive cataloguing worldwide in order to aid the international exchange of bibliographic records between national bibliographic agencies and throughout the international library and information community.

By specifying the elements that comprise a bibliographic description and by prescribing the order in which those elements should be presented, and secondarily the punctuation by which they should be separated, the ISBD aims to:

- make records from different sources interchangeable, so that records produced in one country can be easily accepted in library catalogues or other bibliographic lists in any other country;
  - assist in the interpretation of records across language barriers, so that records produced for users of one language can be interpreted by users of other languages;
  - assist in the conversion of bibliographic records to electronic form;
- 290

- enhance interoperability with other content standards.

### **0.A.1.3 Use**

The ISBD provides stipulations to cover the maximum amount of descriptive information that may be required in a range of different bibliographic activities. It therefore includes elements that are essential to one or more of those activities, but not necessarily to all.

~~Elements of the ISBD are designated as mandatory, conditional, or optional.~~

- **Mandatory:** the element is required in all situations if applicable; this is indicated in the text by “is given” or “are given”.
- **Conditional:** the element is required under certain conditions, such as “when necessary for identification or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue”. If the condition is not met, use of the element is optional.
- **Optional:** the element may be included or omitted at the discretion of the agency; this is indicated in the text by “optional” or “may”.

Elements of the description that are required are designated by the term “Mandatory” after the heading for the element. In the text, terminology such as “is given” or “are given” is used.

National bibliographic agencies are called on to accept responsibility ~~of~~ for creating the definitive record for each resource issued in that country. It is therefore recommended that descriptions prepared by them contain all the mandatory elements set out in the ISBD insofar as the information is applicable to the resource being described. It is recommended that this practice be followed also by other libraries that share bibliographic data with each other.

~~Other cataloguing agencies have a wider choice as they are not providing the definitive record for international exchange. They can select ISBD elements, mandatory, conditional or optional, for inclusion in their own records, provided that the elements selected are given in the prescribed order and transcribed with the prescribed punctuation.~~

The responsibility for creating bibliographic descriptions may extend beyond libraries, for example, to cultural institutions, publishers, independent scholars and various online communities.

The ISBD description forms a part of a complete bibliographic record and is not normally used by itself. The other elements that make up a complete bibliographic record, such as headings and subject information, are not included in the ISBD stipulations. The rules for such elements are normally given in cataloguing codes and other standards.

References from variations of the title proper or other references that may be called for in a national cataloguing code do not form a part of the bibliographic description and are not provided in the ISBD. They may be indispensable, however, in catalogues and bibliographies.

Informational elements relating to a particular collection (location of material, recording of holdings, etc.) are not provided by the ISBD; they are local elements that can be added to the general description.

To describe a resource that exhibits characteristics of different types of materials (e.g. an electronic continuing resource, a digital map that is serially issued), a cataloguer should combine stipulations for the different types of materials that are necessary to describe all aspects of the resource, including its content, its carrier, its medium, and its mode of issuance.

## **0.A.2 Treatment of resources**

### **0.A.2.1 ~~Specific types of resources~~ Object of the bibliographic description**

The ISBD is used to create a description of a set of resources that bear the same characteristics in respect to both intellectual content and physical form, i.e. an edition. An edition may be identified by an edition statement on the resource or by information provided by the publisher. A major difference between two resources in any of the elements indicates that different editions are involved and separate descriptions are required. A change in the identity of the distributor does not constitute a change of the edition. An ISBD description describes a complete copy of a published resource.

340 Resources can be published as single-part resources or as multipart resources, as finite or intended to be finite or intended to continue, and they can be issued at one time or at successive times.

A single-part resource is a resource that is issued as a single physical unit.

Multipart resources are treated either in a multilevel description (see Appendix A) or in a single-level description of the entire resource. In some cases the parts of a multipart resource can also be described as single-part resources.

Continuing resources are treated as serials or as integrating resources. Also catalogued using the stipulations for continuing resources are those resources issued in successive issues or parts bearing numbering, and that bear other characteristics of a serial (e.g. frequency in the title), but whose duration is limited (e.g. the newsletter of an event). In addition, finite integrating resources (such as a Web site for a political campaign) are catalogued using these stipulations.

350 **For older monographic resources:**

Not only editions, but also issues, impressions and states of older monographic resources may be given separate descriptions. ~~The ISBD~~ This standard is concerned with the description of complete copies of library materials, and makes no provision for situations where no conclusive evidence as to the intended extent of a resource exists or when an imperfect copy is catalogued without the help of a bibliographic description for the resource. Whenever possible, a description of a complete example should be found. Where no complete example exists, a description may be worked out from imperfect copies if the imperfections are such as to permit this, and imperfections and other peculiar characteristics relating to the copy in hand described in area 7 (see 7.11). ~~However, when no description of a complete copy can be found, the imperfect copy must be described (see 0.11).~~ In this case, it is understood that the description prepared may not apply to all copies of the same edition, issue or state.

360

**For continuing resources:**

~~For cataloguing purposes, continuing resources are treated in the ISBD in two ways depending on the mode of issuance: as serials or as integrating resources.~~

~~Also catalogued using the stipulations for continuing resources are those resources issued in successive issues or parts bearing numbering, and that bear other characteristics of a serial (e.g. frequency in the title), but whose duration is limited (e.g. the newsletter of an event). In addition, finite integrating resources (such as a Web site for a political campaign) are catalogued using these stipulations.~~

370 **A.2.2** ~~For~~ **E**lectronic resources:

For cataloguing purposes, **E**lectronic resources are treated in the ISBD in two ways depending on whether access is direct or remote. Direct access is understood to mean that a physical carrier can be described. Such a carrier (e.g. a disk/~~dise~~, cassette, cartridge) must be inserted into a computer or into a peripheral **device** attached to a computer. Remote access is understood to mean that no physical carrier can be handled; access can only be provided by use of an input-output device (e.g. a ~~terminal~~**computer**) either connected to a ~~computer system~~ (e.g. a resource in a network) or by use of resources stored on a ~~hard disk~~**server** or other storage device. All remote-access electronic resources are considered to be published.

380 Electronic resources are also increasingly produced in different editions. A new edition occurs when it has been determined that there are significant differences in the intellectual or artistic content of the resource. In these cases, a separate bibliographic record is created. A resource in which the differences are not found to be significant would normally not warrant a separate bibliographic record, although a cataloguing agency may choose to create multiple bibliographic records. ~~In the case of remote-access resources (e.g. online services) that are frequently updated, it is recommended that the cataloguing agency omit the edition statement in area 2 and give an appropriate note(s) in area 7 (see 7.2). (For additional information concerning editions, see 2.1.1.)~~ Significant differences include additions and deletions; a difference in the programming language; changes to upgrade or improve the efficiency of the resource; modifications in the programming language or operating system that allow the resource to be compatible with other machines and operating systems.

390 Differences that do not constitute a new edition include: a difference in the size of the physical carrier (e.g. 14 cm vs. 9 cm disk); differences in printer-related file formats (e.g. ASCII vs. PostScript); differences in system-related formats (e.g. IBM vs. Macintosh); differences relating to the character code or to blocking or recording densities. The differences may be given in area 7.

~~0.~~**A.2.3** **R**esources issued in multiple formats

~~When~~ **I**f a resource is issued in different types ~~and/or sizes~~ of physical carriers, or in different output media, ~~either of two methods of description may be followed:~~

a)1) ~~e~~**E**ach different physical carrier or different output medium ~~may be~~**i**s described in a separate bibliographic record~~s~~.

a)2) Each different physical carrier or different output medium may be described in the single bibliographic record, with each carrier/medium occupying a separate line or else grouped in a single continuous line in the description (see area 5).

400 It is recommended that national bibliographic agencies, and those cataloguing agencies that participate in a network sharing bibliographic data with each other, create one bibliographic record for each physical format or output medium of the resource. A separate description makes future manipulation of such records simpler for merging information in displays or for distinguishing the separate resources. Other cataloguing agencies may describe the resource using either a single bibliographic description or multiple bibliographic descriptions based on local requirements and the needs of users of the catalogue, provided that adequate information to identify each is given.

~~0.~~**A.2.34** **M**ultipart **M**ultimedia resources

410 In the case of a multimedia resource that has two or more different physical carriers, each carrier occupies a separate line of description in a single bibliographic record (see area 5). For the physical description of multimedia resources, see 5.1.2.

## **A.2.5 Reproductions**

In describing a facsimile or other photographic, micrographic, or digitised reproduction, bibliographic information pertaining to the reproduction is given in all areas of the description, except area 3 for serials. Information pertaining to the original is given in area 7 (see 7.2.4.2).

### **0.A.2.4.6 Changes requiring a new description for (continuing resources)**

#### **0.A.2.4.6.1 Major changes in title proper of serials**

420 For serials, a new description is required in the cases of a major changes in the title proper. The following are to be considered major changes:

- a) 0.2.4.1.1 — When for languages and scripts that divide text into words, the addition, deletion, change, or reordering of any word ~~occurs~~ within the first five words (the first six words if the title begins with an article) of the title, except as indicated below (see 0.A.2.5.7);

#### *Examples*

Energy policy and conservation biennial report  
*becomes* Energy policy and conservation report

Металлургия и технология  
*becomes* Metallurgiya i mashinostroenie

430 New notes  
*becomes* Upstream journal

La recherche aéronautique  
*becomes* La recherche aérospatiale

Scene  
*becomes* TV 2

IFLANET unplugged  
*becomes* IFLA CD ...

Link magazine  
*becomes* Link journal

- 440 b) 0.2.4.1.2 — When the an addition, deletion, or change in the title proper that of any word ~~occurs after the first five words (the first six words if the title begins with an article) and~~ changes the meaning of the title or indicates a different subject matter;

#### *Examples*

The best bed & breakfasts in the world  
*becomes* The best bed & breakfasts in England, Scotland & Wales  
*Editorial comment:* Indicates different subject matter.

#### *but not*

450 Report on the high-level radioactive waste activities conducted under MS 1990,  
116C.712, subd. 5A  
*becomes* Report on the high-level radioactive waste activities conducted under  
Minnesota Statutes 116C.712  
*Editorial comment:* Insignificant difference after first five words

- ~~c) 0.2.4.1.3~~—When a corporate body, named anywhere in the title, changes, except as indicated below (see ~~0.A.2.57.1-5~~).

*Examples*

The register of the Kentucky State Historical Society  
*becomes* The register of the Kentucky Historical Society

NFCR Cancer Research Association symposia  
*becomes* Association for International Cancer Research symposia

**~~0.A.2.46.2~~ Other major changes to serials**

460 For serials, a new description also is required in the following cases:

- ~~a) 0.2.4.2.1~~—When the title proper is a generic term and the issuing body changes its name (except as indicated below; see ~~0.A.2.57.1-5(e)~~ for *minor* changes in a body's name that do not require a new description) or the serial is issued by a different body;

*Example*

Symposium series / Society for Applied Bacteriology  
*becomes* Symposium series / Society for Applied Microbiology

- ~~b) 0.2.4.2.2~~—When the edition statement changes and indicates a significant change to the scope or coverage of the serial;

*Example*

470 Transportation directory. – New England edition  
*becomes* Transportation directory. – Eastern edition

- ~~c) 0.2.4.2.3~~—When the physical medium changes;

*Examples*

New Zealand national bibliography  
*Editorial comment:* Published only in paper.  
*becomes* New Zealand national bibliography  
*Editorial comment:* Published only in microfiche.

MaInTax deluxe  
*Editorial comment:* Issued on 3 1/2-in. computer disk.  
*becomes* MaInTax deluxe  
*Editorial comment:* Issued on CD-ROM.

480

- ~~d) 0.2.4.2.4~~—When hitherto ~~a~~ dependent titles ~~becomes~~ independent;

*Example*

Fauna Norvegica. Series B, Norwegian journal of entomology  
*becomes* Norwegian journal of entomology

- ~~e) 0.2.4.2.5~~—When a serial is cumulated, and the cumulations bear ~~the same title as the initial issues and are in the same language, and the contents of the cumulations are significantly~~

different (e.g. when the contents of quarterly issues of an index are merged into a single alphabet for the annual issue) separate numbering from the basic issues;

490

*Example*

Reader's guide to periodical literature

*Editorial comment:* Issued in annual and less frequent cumulations with numbering separate from that of the semimonthly, etc., issues.

f) 0.2.4.2.6 — ~~When a serial is formed by the merger of two or more other serials (see 7.2.4.5);~~

*Example*

Archivio di ottalmologia

and Rassegna italiana di ottalmologia

*merge to form* Archivio e rassegna italiana di ottalmologia

g) 0.2.4.2.7 — ~~When two or more serials are formed from the split of a serial (see 7.2.4.6).~~

500

*Example*

Geografi i Bergen

*becomes* Geografi i Bergen. Serie A

and Geografi i Bergen. Serie B

**0.A.2.4.6.3 Major changes to integrating resources**

For integrating resources, a new ~~record~~ description is required in the following cases:

a) 0.2.4.3.1 — ~~When the edition statement changes and indicates a significant change to the scope or coverage of the resource;~~

*Example*

Manual of forestry management practices. – Canadian edition

*becomes* Manual of forestry management practices. – North American edition

510

b) 0.2.4.3.2 — ~~When the physical medium changes;~~

*Example*

Cuadernos de historia medieval

*Editorial comment:* (Print version)

*becomes* Cuadernos de historia medieval

*Editorial comment:* (Online version)

c) 0.2.4.3.3 — ~~When a resource is formed by the merger of two or more other resources (see 7.2.4.5);~~

*Example*

USMARC format for bibliographic data

and Canadian MARC communication format for bibliographic data

*merge to form:* MARC 21 format for bibliographic data

520

d) 0.2.4.3.4 — ~~When two or more resources are formed from the split of a resource (see 7.2.4.6).~~

**0.A.2.5.7 Changes not requiring a new description: for (continuing resources)**

**0.A.2.5.7.1 Minor changes in title proper of serials**

For serials, a new description is not required in cases of minor changes in the title proper. In general, if a minor change occurs in the title proper, the later title is given in area 7 (see 7.1.1.6.1). In case of doubt, consider that the change is minor. The following are to be considered minor changes:

a) 0.2.5.1.1—The a change is in the representation of a word or words, for example,

530 one spelling vs. another

*Examples*

Statistisk aarvog for kongeriget Norge  
*becomes* Statistisk årbok for kongeriket Norge

Labour history  
*becomes* Labor history

abbreviated word or sign or symbol (e.g. “&”) vs. spelled-out form

*Examples*

Accommodations and travel services  
*becomes* Accommodations & travel services

540 Ga. peach statistics  
*becomes* Georgia peach statistics

Oxf. Hist. Soc.  
*becomes* Oxford Historical Society

arabic numeral vs. roman numeral

*Example*

XXe siècle  
*becomes* 20e siècle

number or date vs. spelled-out form

*Examples*

550 Four wheel fun  
*becomes* 4 wheel fun

XX century  
*becomes* Twentieth century

hyphenated word vs. unhyphenated word

*Example*

Year-book of the ...  
*becomes* Year book of the ...

one-word compound vs. two-word compound, whether hyphenated or not

*Example*

560                    Openhouse  
                          *becomes* Open house

**b)** 0.2.5.1.2—The **a** change involves **involving** an acronym or initialism vs. the full form (see also 1.1.3.3, 1.1.4.1.1);

*Example*

                          Research in technological adaptation  
                          *becomes* RITA

**c)** 0.2.5.1.3—The **a** change is in the inflexion of a word, for example, from singular to plural form;

*Examples*

570                    Fishery report  
                          *becomes* Fisheries report

                          Research studies  
                          *becomes* Research study

**d)** 0.2.5.1.4—The change is the addition, deletion, or change of articles, prepositions, and conjunctions anywhere in the title;

*Example*

                          Fiscal survey of the states  
                          *becomes* The fiscal survey of states

580                    **e)** 0.2.5.1.5—The **a** change involves **involving** the name of the same corporate body and elements of its hierarchy or their grammatical connection anywhere in the title (e.g. the addition, deletion, or rearrangement of the name of the corporate body or the substitution of a variant form, including an abbreviation);

*Examples*

                          Rapport de la Société canadienne de l'Eglise catholique  
                          *becomes* Rapport / Société canadienne de l'Eglise catholique

                          Views / Goodridge Area Historical Society  
                          *becomes* Views from the Goodridge Area Historical Society  
                          *becomes* Views from the GAHS

590                    Berichte der Deutschen Gesellschaft für Mathematik und Datenverarbeitung  
                          *becomes* GMD-Berichte

                          AAPG continuing education course notes series  
                          *becomes* American Association of Petroleum Geologists continuing education course  
                          notes series

                          Boletín de la Sociedad Española para la Defensa del Patrimonio Geológico y  
                          Minero  
                          *becomes* Boletín S.E.D.P.G.M.

**f) 0.2.5.1.6**—~~The change is~~ the addition, deletion, or change of punctuation, including initialisms and letters with separating punctuation vs. those without separating punctuation, anywhere in the title;

600

*Example*

GBB  
becomes G.B.B.

**g) 0.2.5.1.7**—~~The a change is in~~ **involving** the order of titles when the title is given in more than one language on the prescribed source of information, provided that the title chosen as title proper still appears as a parallel title;

*Example*

South African medical journal = Suid Afrikaanse tydskrif vir geneeskunde  
becomes Suid Afrikaanse tydskrif vir geneeskunde = South African medical journal

610

**h) 0.2.5.1.8**—~~The change is~~ the addition, deletion, or change of words anywhere in the title that link the title to the numbering;

*Examples*

Tin  
becomes Tin in ...

**i) 0.2.5.1.9**—~~t~~Two or more titles proper are used on different issues of a serial according to a regular pattern;

*Examples*

Weekly labor market report  
*Note:* Last issue each month has title: Monthly labor market report

620

Minneapolis morning tribune  
*Note:* Sunday issues have title: Minneapolis Sunday tribune  
*Editorial comment:* Daily issues and Sunday issues have consecutive numbering.

Annual report / Medical Association of South Africa  
*Note:* Reports for alternate years have title: Jaarverslag / Die Mediese Vereniging van Suid-Afrika

**j) 0.2.5.1.10**—~~t~~The addition to, deletion from, or change in the order of words in a list anywhere in the title, provided that there is no significant change in the subject matter;

*Example*

Kartboken for Oslo, Bærum, Lørenskog, Nesodden, Oppegård, Ski  
becomes Kartboken for Oslo, Bærum, Asker, Lørenskog, Nesodden, Oppegård, Ski

630

**k) 0.2.5.1.11**—~~T~~he addition or deletion anywhere in the title of words that indicate the type of resource such as “magazine”, “journal”, or “newsletter”, or their equivalent in other languages **(but see A.2.6.1 for changes from one such word to another in the first five words of the title)**;

*Examples*

Fussball-Jahrbuch  
*becomes* Fussball

Handel und Industrie  
*becomes* Revue Handel und Industrie

Minnesota history bulletin  
*becomes* Minnesota history

640 Trade and industry  
*becomes* Trade and industry review

Colección Ciencias y técnicas  
*becomes* Ciencias y técnicas

Baubetrieb, Bauökonomie, Baurecht  
*becomes* Schriftenreihe Baubetrieb, Bauökonomie, Baurecht

Relatórios de pesquisa  
*becomes* Série Relatórios de pesquisa

*but not*

650 ~~Link magazine~~  
*becomes* ~~Link journal~~

*Editorial comment:* The change from one word indicating the type of resource to another word is a major change if it occurs in the first five words of the title (see 0.2.4.1.1).

~~0.2.5.1.12~~ — In case of doubt, consider that the title has not changed.

### **~~0.A.2.5.7.2~~ Minor changes to integrating resources**

Any change in information recorded in the description for the same integrating resource other than those noted in ~~0.A.2.4.6.3.1~~ and ~~0.2.4.3.2~~ does not result in a new description; instead, the description is changed to reflect the new information.

#### *Example*

660 Hirnet  
*becomes* Terminál  
*Editorial comment:* The only change is in the title proper of the Web site.

### **~~0.A.3~~ Outline of the ISBD and Punctuation**

#### **~~0.A.3.1~~ Outline of the ISBD**

#### ~~General notes on the outline of the ISBD~~

In the outline, the terms “first statement ...”, “subsequent statement ...”, and the like denote the order in which these statements are given in the description and have no other connotation. “Mandatory” for most data elements indicates that the element is mandatory if it is applicable to the resource.

670

~~Wherever information normally associated with one area or element appears in the resource linked linguistically as an integral part of another area or element, it is transcribed as part of that other area or element.~~

C. For older monographic resources, area 4 is called Publication, printing, distribution, etc., area.

Area	Prescribed preceding (or enclosing) punctuation for elements	Element	Usage (M=Mandatory) (C=Conditional) (O=Optional)	Repeatability
Note: Each area, other than the first, is preceded by a point, space, dash, space (. –)				
		<u>0. Content form and media type area</u>		
		<u>0.1</u> <u>Content form</u>	<u>M</u>	<u>R</u>
	<u>()</u>	<u>0.2</u> <u>Content qualification</u>		<u>R</u>
	<u>:</u>	<u>Subsequent content qualification</u>		
	<u>:</u>	<u>0.3</u> <u>Media type</u>	<u>M</u>	
1. Title and statement of responsibility area		1.1 Title proper	M	
	<u>[]</u>	<u>1.2</u> <u>General material designation</u>	<u>⊖</u>	
	<u>=</u>	<u>1.3</u> <u>Parallel title</u>	<u>⊖</u>	R
	<u>:</u>	<u>1.4</u> <u>Other title information</u>	<u>⊖</u>	R
		<u>1.5</u> <u>Statements of responsibility</u>		
	<u>/</u>	First statement	M	
	<u>;</u>	Subsequent statement	<u>⊖</u>	R
	<u>:</u>	<u>1.1.5.2</u> <u>Subsequent title by same author, etc.</u>		<u>R</u>
	<u>:</u>	<u>1.4.5.11.2</u> <u>Subsequent title by different author, etc.</u>		<u>R</u>
2. Edition area		2.1 Edition statement	M	
	<u>=</u>	2.2 Parallel edition statement	<u>⊖</u>	R
		2.3 Statements of responsibility relating to the edition		
	<u>/</u>	First statement	M	
	<u>;</u>	Subsequent statement	<u>⊖</u>	R
	<u>,</u>	2.4 Additional edition statement	M	R
		2.5 Statements of responsibility following an additional edition statement		
	<u>/</u>	First statement	M	
	<u>;</u>	Subsequent statement	<u>⊖</u>	
3. Material or type of resource specific area				<u>R</u>
		3.1 Mathematical data (Cartographic resources)	<u>M</u>	R
		<u>3.1.1</u> <u>Statement of scale</u>	<u>M</u>	
	<u>:</u>	<u>3.1.2</u> <u>Statement of projection</u>		
	<u>()</u>	<u>3.1.3</u> <u>Statement of coordinates and equinox</u>	<u>M</u>	
	<u>:</u>	<u>3.1.3.3</u> <u>Statement of equinox</u>		
		3.2 Music format statement (Notated music)	M	
	<u>≡</u>	<u>3.2.2</u> <u>Parallel music format statement</u>		
		3.3 Numbering (Serials)	M	
	<u>()</u>	<u>Chronological designation</u>	<u>M</u>	
	<u>≡</u>	<u>3.3.5-</u> <u>3.3.6</u> <u>Subsequent or parallel system of numbering</u>		
	<u>:</u>	<u>3.3.8</u> <u>Subsequent system of numbering</u>		

Area	Prescribed preceding (or enclosing) punctuation	Element	Mandatory?	Repeat-ability
4. Publication, production, distribution, etc., area	4.1	Place of publication, production and/or distribution		
		First place	M	
	;	Subsequent place	☉	R
	:	Name of publisher, producer and/or distributor	M	R
	{ }	<del>Statement of function of distributor</del>	☉	
	,	4.4 <u>3</u> Date of publication, production and/or distribution	M	
	( )	<u>Printing information</u>		
	(	4.5 <u>4</u> Place of printing, <u>or</u> manufacture, <del>or</del> engraving	☉	R
	:	4.6 <u>5</u> Name of printer, <u>or</u> manufacturer, <del>or</del> engraver	☉	
	, )	4.7 <u>6</u> Date of printing or manufacture	☉	
5. Physical description area				R
	5.1	Specific material designation and extent	M	
	:	5.2 Other physical details	☉	
	;	5.3 Dimensions Format (for older monographic resources)	☉	
	+	5.4 Accompanying material designation	☉	R
6. Series <u>and multipart monographic resource</u> area	( )			R
	6.1	Title proper of series, <del>subseries</del> or multipart monographic resource	M	
	=	6.2 Parallel title of series, <del>subseries</del> or multipart monographic resource	☉	R
	:	6.3 Other title information of series, <del>subseries</del> or multipart monographic resource	☉	R
	6.4	Statements of responsibility relating to series, <del>subseries</del> or multipart monographic resource		
	/	First statement	☉	
	;	Subsequent statement	☉	R
	,	6.5 International Standard Serial Number of series or subseries	M	
	;	6.6 Numbering within series, subseries or multipart monographic resource	☉ <u>M</u>	
7. Note area			☉	R
8. Resource identifier and terms of availability area				R
	8.1	Resource identifier Fingerprint (for older monographic resources)	M ☉	
	=	8.2 Key title (for continuing resources)	☉	

:	8.3	Terms of availability <del>and/or price</del>	⊖	R
(→)	8.4	Qualifications	⊖	R

## ~~0.A.3.2~~ Punctuation

680 ~~0.A.3.2.1~~ Each element of the description, ~~except the first element of area 1,~~ is either preceded or enclosed by prescribed punctuation. **Prescribed punctuation that precedes an element is omitted when it is the first element of an area.** Prescribed punctuation is preceded and followed by a space (a single space on a keyboard or an em space in printing) with the exception of the comma (,) and point (.) which are only followed by a space. The inclusion of other punctuation is at the discretion of the ~~national bibliographic agency or other cataloguing agency~~ **cataloguing agency**, as is the spacing before and after such punctuation. ~~ISBD~~ **Prescribed** punctuation is retained even when this results in double punctuation (see ~~0.A.3.2.7~~). For the punctuation of scripts written from right to left, see ~~0.A.3.2.11~~ and Appendix B.

### ~~For older monographic resources:~~

~~Cataloguing agencies, particularly those creating definitive records, may wish to indicate unambiguously in the description the exact punctuation as found on the resource. A hyphen used at the end of the line solely to divide a word taken over to the next line is not recorded; in case of doubt, the hyphen is recorded.~~

690 ~~Line endings may be indicated by a standard designation as chosen by the cataloguing agency (e.g. slash “/” or double slash “//”, vertical stroke “|” or double vertical stroke “||”) when they are considered necessary for identification or when the title is taken from the opening lines of a poem (see e.g. 1.1.5.1).~~

~~0.A.3.2.2~~ Parentheses ( ( ) ) and square brackets ( [ ] ) are each to be treated as a single punctuation symbol, and the preceding space comes before the first (opening) parenthesis or square bracket and the following space comes after the second (closing) parenthesis or square bracket (~~but see also 0.9A.8~~ for exceptions). If parentheses or square brackets are preceded or followed by prescribed punctuation that ends or begins with a space, only one space is given. If a closing parenthesis or square bracket is followed by a comma or a point used as prescribed punctuation, or by any punctuation mark found on the resource, no space is used.

700 ***Example***

. –#[S.I.]#: Publisher

*not* . –###[S.I.]##: Publisher

*Editorial comment:* The character “#” is used in this example only as a means of showing spacing and does not actually appear in a bibliographic record.

~~0.A.3.2.3~~ Each area of the ~~ISBD~~ **description** other than ~~area 1~~ **the first** is preceded by a point, space, dash, space (. –), unless that area is clearly separated from the preceding area by paragraphing, ~~typography or indentation,~~ in which case the point, space, dash, space may be replaced by a point (.) given at the end of the preceding area.

710 ~~0.A.3.2.4~~ When the first element of an area is not present in a description, the prescribed punctuation of the first element that is present is replaced by a point, space, dash, space (. –) preceding the area.

~~0.A.3.2.5~~ When an area is repeated, each repetition is preceded by a point, space, dash, space (. –), except in the condition described in ~~0.A.3.2.3~~.

**0.A.3.2.6** When an element is repeated, each repetition is preceded by the prescribed punctuation appropriate to the element.

**0.A.3.2.7** When an element or area ends with a point and the prescribed punctuation for the element or area that follows begins with a point, in order to take into account punctuation for both abbreviations and prescribed punctuation, both points are given.

*Examples*

720 ~~3rd ed.~~ –  
not ~~3rd ed.~~ –

And then ... – 4th ed.  
not And then ... – 4th ed.

by J. Smith, Esq.. –  
not by J. Smith, Esq. –

National flight [~~Electronic resource~~] / by Air Flight Inc.. Navigation advisor / Interactive Mapping Corporation  
not National flight [~~Electronic resource~~] / by Air Flight Inc. Navigation advisor / Interactive Mapping Corporation

*Examples for older monographic resources*

730 by J. Smith, Esq.. –

by J. Smith, ... G. Brown, and others ... –

by J. Smith, Esq. ... –

Histoire et pédagogie de la mécanique [~~Printed text~~] / Jean-Rosmorduc, ... . Réflexion sur une première approche du mouvement en mécanique avec des élèves de quatrième / Jacques Charlemagne

not

Histoire et pédagogie de la mécanique [~~Printed text~~] / Jean-Rosmorduc, ... Réflexion sur une première approche du mouvement en mécanique avec des élèves de quatrième / Jacques Charlemagne

740 **0.A.3.2.8** Two punctuation symbols can be used in all or most areas:

- 1a) Square brackets enclose information found outside the prescribed sources of information and interpolations in the description. When successive elements within the same area are obtained from outside the prescribed sources of information, each is enclosed in its own pair of square brackets.

*Examples*

. – [S.l.] : [s.n.]  
not . – [S.l. : s.n.]

. – [2nd ed.]. – [S.l.] : [s.n.]  
not . – [2nd ed.]. – [S.l. : s.n.]

750 . – ([Historical instruments at the Victoria and Albert Museum] ; [4])  
not . – ([Historical instruments at the Victoria and Albert Museum ; 4])

- 2b) The mark of omission, i.e. three points ( ... ), indicates the omission of some part of an element. The mark of omission is preceded and followed by a space.

**For continuing resources:**

~~When information varies from one issue to another, e.g. a year in the title of a yearbook, the numbering of a congress, this information is replaced by the mark of omission when the information appears in the middle or at the end of the title.~~

~~0.A.3.2.9~~ When in an area or an element the same information appears in ~~two or more~~ **than one** languages ~~and/or scripts~~, the following provisions apply:

760 When one element is recorded in ~~two or more languages and/or scripts~~ **more than one language or script**, the information in each language ~~and/or script~~ after the first is preceded by a space, equals sign, space (=).

When, in a single area, two or more elements are recorded in ~~two or more languages and/or scripts~~ **more than one language or script**, the elements in each language ~~and/or script~~ are given together with the appropriate preceding punctuation for each element. The whole group of elements for the first language ~~and/or script~~ recorded is preceded by punctuation appropriate to the first element and each group after the first is preceded by a space, equals sign, space (=).

When a single statement (e.g. a statement of responsibility, see 1.5) is given partly in one language ~~and/or script~~ and partly in more than one language ~~and/or script~~, the several linguistic forms are transcribed together; equals signs or other punctuation symbols are used as appropriate.

770 ~~0.A.3.2.10~~ An area or element that does not apply to the resource is not included in the description. The preceding or enclosing prescribed punctuation of such an area or element is also omitted.

~~0.A.3.2.11~~ When information is given in **a nonroman script** ~~written from right to left, commas and semicolons used as prescribed punctuation may be given with the equivalent symbols in that~~ ~~are reversed when that is the style of the script.~~ Similarly, **in a script written from right to left**, the point, space, dash, space combination of prescribed punctuation reads from right to left ~~and the meanings of open and closed parentheses and square brackets are reversed. The diagonal slash and groups of western arabic numerals that are not reversed in such scripts are not reversed when given.~~

*Example*

780 – סוגינה לכנור ופסנתר (או לחליל ופסנתר) / ירדנה אלותין. תל אביב : מכון למוסיקה ישראלית, cop. 1982.

See Appendix B for the treatment of information given both in scripts written from left to right and in scripts written from right to left.

~~0.A.3.3~~ The complete punctuation pattern for each area is set out at the beginning of the area.

**0.A.4 Sources of information****0.A.4.1 Basis of the description**

For all types of material the **whole** resource itself constitutes the basis of the description. ~~The information used in the description of a resource is taken from the preferred source, and in the description for each area from certain sources in a prescribed order of preference (see 0.4.2).~~ **In deciding the basis of the description, the bibliographic unit that is going to be described, it is necessary to take into account the following:**

790 **Single-part monographic resources: the whole resource**

Multipart monographic resources: a source identifying the entire resource and source of information applying to the whole resource is preferred, but if there is no such source, the first issue or part, or lacking this the earliest available issue or part is selected. For analytic description of the part see single-part monographic resources.

**For serials or multipart monographic resources:**

**Serials:** ~~The basis of description is~~ the first issue or part or, lacking this, the earliest available issue or part. For numbered serials, the first issue or part is the lowest numbered issue or part. For unnumbered serials, the first issue or part is the issue or part with the earliest publication, production, distribution, etc., date.

800 Generally the first (or earliest) issue or part is preferred over a source associated with the whole resource or with a range of more than one issue or part.

**Area**

**Basis of description**

0. Content form and media type

All issues or parts

1. Title and statement of responsibility

First or earliest issue or part

2. Edition

First or earliest issue or part

3. Material or type of resource specific

All issues or parts

For Numbering (Serials): First and last issues or parts for each system or sequence

4. Publication, production, distribution, etc.

Place and publisher, producer, distributor, etc.

First or earliest issue or part

Place and manufacturer

First or earliest issue or part

Date

First and/or last issues or parts

5. Physical description

All issues or parts

6. Series

All issues or parts

7. Note

All issues or parts and any other source

8. Resource identifier and terms of availability

All issues or parts and any other source

**For integrating resources:**

**Integrating resources:** ~~The basis of description is the current iteration of the integrating resource,~~ except for the beginning date of publication.

<b>Area</b>	<b>Basis of description</b>
<u>0. Content form and media type</u>	<u>Current iteration</u>
1. Title and statement of responsibility	Current iteration
2. Edition	Current iteration
3. Material or type of resource specific	All iterations Numbering (Serials) not used
4. Publication, production, distribution, etc.	
Place and publisher, producer, distributor, etc.	Current iteration
Place and manufacturer	Current iteration
Dates	First and/or last iterations
5. Physical description	Current iteration
6. Series	Current iteration
7. Note	All iterations and any other source
8. Resource identifier and terms of availability	All iterations and any other source

#### **0.A.4.2 Determining a Preferred sources of information**

The selection of the preferred source of information varies depending on the type of material, but there are common general criteria:

- 810
- comprehensiveness of information for identification: the source that gives the fullest, clearest, and most authoritative information
  - proximity of the source to the information: the source that is nearest the content of the resource, such as an internal source, and
  - persistence of the source of information: the source that is the most enduring.

If there is more than one source of information that is qualified as the preferred source of information for a resource, the first occurring of those sources is selected, unless one of the following conditions applies:

- 820
- If the resource contains preferred sources of information in more than one language or script, the preferred source of information is selected as follows:
    - 1) The source in the language or script that corresponds to the language or script of the content or the predominant language or script of the content of the resource.
    - 2) The source in the language or script of translation if the translation is known to be the purpose of the resource
    - 3) The source in the original language or script of the content
    - 4) The first occurring source.
  - If the resource contains preferred sources of information bearing different dates, the source bearing the later or latest date is selected.

**A.4.2.1 Printed resources:****A.4.2.1.1 Resources in roman script:****For monographic resources:**

830 The preferred source of information is the title page, or, for resources lacking a title page, the title-page substitute. A title-page substitute is selected according to the criteria in A.4.2. Sources such as a cover, spine, etc., are not treated as a preferred source of information unless they were issued with the resource.

If information traditionally given on the title page is given on facing pages, with or without repetition, the two pages are treated as the preferred source of information.

Title pages not selected as the preferred source of information or as part of a collective single source of information are considered to constitute other preliminaries.

For resources lacking a preferred source of information applying to the whole resource, see A.4.2.5.

**For monographic resources:**

840 When for a single-part monographic resource there is more than one title page, the one selected is the one specific to the resource being described (e.g. for a monograph in a series, the analytical title page; for a facsimile reproduction, the title page with the reproduction details) (see also 1.1.4.2).

~~When in a single-part monographic resource there is no title page applying to the whole resource, but each work contained in it has its own title page, the several title pages, including those of tête-bêche resources containing different works, may be considered collectively as a single source of information.~~

~~When a multipart monographic resource is catalogued as a whole, the title page common to the volumes is used as the basis for the description. The titles of the individual volumes may be treated in contents notes (see 7.7) or according to the specifications for multilevel descriptions (see Appendix A).~~

850 ~~Title pages not selected as the title page for description or as part of a collective single source of information are considered to constitute other preliminaries.~~

~~When a resource lacks a title page, an alternative source of information is selected as a title page substitute. The selection of the source to be treated as title page substitute is determined by considering which source has the fullest information, with preference given to a source that is part of the resource over sources outside the resource.~~

~~If information traditionally given on the title page is given on facing pages, with or without repetition, the two pages are treated as the title page.~~

When a multipart monographic resource is catalogued as a whole, the title page common to the parts is used as the preferred source of information.

**For older monographic resources:**

860 ~~When for a multipart monographic resource there is a title page for each part, the one selected is the title page of the part carrying the lowest number or, if the parts are not numbered, the part that has been published first.~~

If a title-page substitute cannot be selected according to the criteria in A.4.2, sources are considered in the following order: ~~In case of doubt, the order of choice for a title page substitute is~~ colophon, half-title, other preliminaries, caption title, docket title, running title, incipit, explicit, opening words of the main text, opening words of the resource. ~~No title page substitute may be considered as a single source along with a title page.~~ In each description only one page, portion of page, or part of the resource can be designated as a title-page substitute.

870

#### **For continuing resources:**

The preferred source of information is the title page or the title-page substitute of the issue used as the basis of the description (see A.4.1). The title-page substitute for a continuing resource lacking a title page is taken from certain sources in the following order of preference:

- 1) the analytical title page, cover, caption, masthead, editorial pages, colophon;
- 2) the other preliminaries and information to be found on the wrappers and top and bottom of text pages (such as running title);
- 3) the rest of the continuing resource: prefaces, forewords, tables of contents, text, appendices, etc.;

880

- 4) ~~sources of reference~~ sources ~~from outside the continuing resource and not associated with it (e.g. bibliographies, publishers' lists).~~

#### **A.4.2.1.2 Resources in non-roman scripts:**

The colophon is the preferred source of information when one or more of the following conditions is true: ~~In the case of resources in non-roman scripts where full bibliographic details are given in the colophon, a leaf standing in the position of a title page and bearing the title proper is not to be considered the title page in the following circumstances:~~

- a) ~~when the~~ a leaf standing in the position of a title page bears only the title proper in the manner of a half-title page;
- b) ~~when the~~ a leaf standing in the position of a title page bears the title proper, with or without other bibliographic information, in a calligraphic version (the full bibliographic details in the colophon being given in conventional forms of Chinese characters as used in modern Chinese, Japanese and Korean printing);
- c) ~~when the~~ a leaf standing in the position of a title page bears only a ~~w~~Western-language version of the title and/or publication details.

890

~~In each of these cases, the first preference for the title page substitute is the colophon.~~

#### **0.A.4.2.2 For Cartographic resources and For still images:**

The preferred source of information ~~used in the description of~~ for a cartographic resource or a still image is taken from certain sources chosen in the following order of preference: ~~The whole resource, which includes:~~

900

- a) ~~t~~the resource itself;

- b) ~~t~~he container (portfolio, cover, envelope, etc.) or case, the cradle and stand of a globe, etc., issued by the publisher or manufacturer of the resource;
- c) ~~a~~n accompanying text or brochure.
- ~~2) d) s~~ources outside the resource, such as a catalogue, bibliography, etc.

The preferred source for an atlas is selected according to the criteria for monographs or continuing resources, as appropriate (see A.4.2.1.1).

**0.A.4.2.3 For sound recordings and  
For moving images: Multimedia and audiovisual resources**

910 Many multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and ~~still and~~ moving images lack a single source of information for creating a bibliographic description. In describing a resource it may therefore be necessary to select from such disparate sources of information as the content of the resource itself (where the data may be given in a visual or auditory form or both), an affixed label, a container or an enclosure or other accompanying textual matter such as a manual. ~~In deciding an order of preference among these sources of information the following principles should be observed:~~

- ~~a) Sources permanently associated with the resource will normally be preferred. Thus the title frames of a motion picture, the label on a disc or the central area of a stereograph reel will normally be preferred to accompanying textual matter found with any of these resources.~~
- 920 ~~2) However, preference should be given to the source that most adequately identifies the work or works:~~
  - ~~a) when a source that would have been preferred following principle 1 contains insufficient data for cataloguing purposes (because the information found therein is ambiguous or incomplete); and~~
  - ~~b) when no source can be identified as being permanently associated with the resource.~~
- 930 ~~On occasion the descriptive insert issued with a cassette or compact disc may thus be preferred as a source of data to the label on the cassette or disc itself, particularly when the resource contains two or more works and when the descriptive insert is the only source for a collective title. Similarly for multipart resources a unifying container will normally be preferred to the labels, etc., of individual parts, particularly when the unifying container is the only source for a collective title.~~

The preferred sources of information are:

- a) a source that collectively identifies the work or works contained in the resource and is permanently associated with the resource, such as the title frames of a motion picture or the label on a disc
- b) a source that collectively identifies the work or works contained in the resource and accompanies the resource, such as a descriptive insert issued with a disc

Textual sources will normally be preferred to sound sources. However, when textual information is deficient or clearly erroneous and the integral sound source is more adequate, the latter may be preferred.

**0.A.4.2.4 For Electronic resources:**

940 The information used in the description of an electronic resource is taken from certain sources in the following order of preference:

- 1) 1. The whole resource is the preferred source of information; it includes:
  - a) The resource itself with the following preferred order of sources:

- i) Sources internal to the resource itself. Such information is taken from formally presented information, e.g. in the title screen, main menu, program statements, first display of information, the header to the file including "Subject:" lines, home page, encoded information (e.g. TEI header, HTML title);
- ii) The physical carrier or its labels.

The encoded information may be included in the resource itself or described for the resource but not included in it.

950 When the resource is unreadable without processing (e.g. it is compressed), the information should be taken from the resource when it has been processed for use.

When the information varies in degree of fullness in these sources, the source that provides the fullest or most complete information is preferred.

- b) When the information from the resource itself is insufficient or is not available (either because the sources are lacking or because the equipment to mount the resource is lacking), other sources may be selected according to the following order of preference:

- i) Printed or online documentation or other accompanying material (e.g. a publisher's letter). In using accompanying documentation, caution is to be exercised in distinguishing between information that applies to the documentation and that pertaining to the resource itself;

960 ii) Information printed on a container used by the publisher, producer, or distributor.

The preferred sources of information are:

- a) a source that identifies the resource as a whole and is internal to the resource itself, such as a title screen, main menu, program statements, the header to the file including "Subject:" lines, home page, or encoded information (e.g. TEI header, HTML title)
- b) a source that identifies the resource as a whole and appears on the physical carrier or its labels
- c) a container issued by the publisher, producer, or distributor
- d) documentation or other accompanying material (e.g. a publisher's letter) that identifies the resource

970 When the electronic resource consists of two or more separate physical parts (e.g. a multimedia resource made up of an electronic optical disc and videodisc), each with its own sources of information, the source that applies to the resource as a whole and that includes a collective title is preferred.

In cases where the necessary information is not provided in any of the above sources, preference is given to the following sources in the following order:

- a) other published descriptions of the resource (e.g. bibliographic databases, reviews);
- b) other sources.

#### **0.A.4.2.5 Resources without a common source of information containing different works:**

##### **Single-part monographic resources:**

980 When there is no prescribed source of information applying to the whole resource, but each work contained in it has its own prescribed source of information, including resources with multilingual versions of the same work, the several sources of information may be considered collectively as a single source of information.

**Continuing resources:**

When the resource contains more than one work, each with its own prescribed source of information and numbering, a separate description is made for each. An appropriate explanation is given in area 7 relating the separate descriptions (see 7.2.4.6).

**Multipart monographic resources:**

When there is no prescribed source of information applying to the whole resource, but each part has its own prescribed source of information, the prescribed source of the first available part is selected.

990 **A.4.2.6 Resources without a source of information in the resource**

If no source of information is found in the resource, sources outside the resource, such as a catalogue, bibliography, or review, may be used.

**A.4.3 Prescribed sources and order of preference by area**

For each area certain sources are designated as “prescribed sources of information” and listed in an order of preference.

If data elements for areas 1 and 2 are found in different sources (e.g. titles found on title page and cover, or cover and colophon, etc.), the source is selected according to the preferred order of sources (see below each area and A.4.2) and the form found there is transcribed. When appropriate, the information is given in the order of the sequence of information found in that the source is followed selected.

1000 For areas 2, 3, 4, and 6, multiple sources are prescribed, so a combination of sources makes up the “prescribed sources”. If data elements for these areas are found in different sources, the source is selected according to the preferred order of sources (see below each area and A.4.2) and is transcribed in the form found there. When appropriate, the information is given in the order of the sequence of information found in that the source is followed selected.

Information taken from a source other than prescribed sources for areas 1 to 6 is enclosed in square brackets if it is transcribed as part of the area. Alternatively, such information may be given in area 7 without square brackets in area 7. Information found outside the resource may be given in area 7.

1010 The resource described is that as issued by the publisher, printer, distributor, etc. No part of the resource may be considered as a prescribed source unless it is part of the resource as issued. For example, a cover or spine is used as a prescribed source only if it is clear that the resource was issued in that binding.

**For older monographic resources:**

~~The resource described is that as issued by the publisher, printer, distributor, etc. No part of the resource may be considered as a prescribed source unless it is part of the resource as issued. For example, a cover or spine is used as a prescribed source only if it is clear that the resource was issued in that binding.~~

When information in areas 1, 2, 4 or 6 is from a source other than the prescribed sources of information for the area, the source of information is given in area 7. When the resource lacks a title page and an alternate source of information is selected as title-page substitute, the title-page substitute is identified in area 7 (see 7.1.1.2), as is any information in areas 1, 2, 4 and 6 taken from a substitute.

1020

## 0.A.5 Language and script of the description

Elements in areas 1, 2, 3, 4 and 6 are normally ~~transcribed~~ recorded from the resource and are, therefore, wherever practicable, in the language ~~(s)~~ or languages and ~~of~~ script ~~(s)~~ or scripts in which they appear there. Interpolations in these areas are enclosed in square brackets and are given in the language and ~~of~~ script of the context of that part of the description, except:

- prescribed abbreviations (see 0.A.6) and prescribed interpolations (see 0.A.108, 0.A.119);
- ~~general material designation (see 1.2) and statement of function of distributor (see 4.32.5) and additions to the date of printing (see 4.7.3) are given in the language and of script chosen by the national bibliographic agency or other cataloguing agency~~ cataloguing agency.

1030 Terms used in areas ~~3~~, 5, 7 and 8 are usually not transcribed from the resource and therefore do not require square brackets for interpolations, etc. The terms are given in the language and ~~of~~ script chosen by the ~~national bibliographic agency or other cataloguing agency~~ cataloguing agency, except:

- when a representative fraction for a scale that does not appear on the resource is provided in area 3;
- when the original title or a variant title is provided in area 7;
- when quotations are provided in area 7;
- when the key title is provided in area 8.

Certain stipulations in the ISBD specify a particular English term or phrase to be used in a description. Cataloguing agencies may use an equivalent term or phase in a language chosen by the agency.

1040 Elements of the description of resources appearing in scripts<sup>16</sup> other than that chosen by the ~~national bibliographic agency or other cataloguing agency~~ cataloguing agency may, if necessary, be given in transliterationed or transcribed without brackets into the script chosen by the agency. When the script is not in current use or is otherwise not available a suitable alternative script should be used, e.g. Cyrillic (civil) for Cyrillic (Church Slavonic).

### For older monographic resources:

1050 The spelling of words taken from the resource is preserved, but ligatures and other contemporary forms of letters and diacritics may be transcribed in their current forms when the contemporary form is not available to the cataloguing agency. No account is taken of the differing forms of letters when no orthographic difference is made in current usage. Accents and other diacritic marks not present on the source are not added. For recording of upper and lower case letters, see 0.A.7. Interpolations by the cataloguing agency should follow modern practice as to spelling. For Latin interpolations, see 0.A.6.6.

<sup>16</sup> When the script is not in current use or is otherwise not available a suitable alternative script should be used, e.g. Cyrillic (civil) for Cyrillic (Church Slavonic).

## **0.A.6 Abridgements and abbreviations**

**A.6.1** Abbreviations found in the source of information used for the description are transcribed as found. In general area 1, information do not abbreviate or abridge in transcribed areas is not abbreviated or abridged if not on the resource.

1060 In exceptional cases the abridgement of certain elements in the description is permitted, provided the omission takes place at the end or in the middle of the element (e.g. a lengthy title proper or a title proper of a serial that includes a date or number that varies from issue to issue; see 1.1.5.1). In such cases, the omission is indicated by the mark of omission ( ... ).

### **For older monographic resources**

When contractions and abbreviations in continuance of the manuscript tradition of abbreviating words that were long and/or frequently encountered are found, these may be left as they stand or may be expanded wherever possible. Any such expansion is enclosed in square brackets or given in area 7.

#### Examples

Boetij viri celeberrimi de [con]solatio[n]e phylosophie liber : cu[m] optimo [com]me[n]to beati Thome

1070 Dialogus beati Gregorij Pape : eiusq[ue] diaconi Petri in quattuor libros diuisus : de vita [et] miraculis patru[m] italicor[um] : [et] de eternitate a[n]imarum

When the meaning of an abbreviation or contraction is conjectural, a question mark is given following the conjectural expansion, e.g. amico[rum?]. When the meaning of an abbreviation or contraction cannot be determined, a question mark is given, enclosed in square brackets, for each indeterminable abbreviation or contraction, e.g. amico[?], [?]'s, or the abbreviation or contraction may be left as it stands.

1080 ~~**0.6.1** In exceptional cases the abridgement of certain elements in the description is permitted, provided the omission takes place at the end or in the middle of the element (e.g. a lengthy title proper (see 1.1.5.1) or, for serials, when a title proper includes a date or number that varies from issue to issue). In such cases, the omission is indicated by the mark of omission.~~

**0.A.6.2** In the case of the abridgement of If a single statement of responsibility consisting of the names of several persons or corporate bodies is abridged (see 1.5.4.4-1.5.3), the omission is indicated by the mark of omission and the insertion of the prescribed abbreviation “et al.” (= *et alii*, and others), or for non-roman script records, its equivalent in another script. The abbreviation is enclosed in square brackets.

**0.A.6.3** Certain abbreviations are prescribed in specific stipulations (see e.g. 4.1.16, 4.2.14-13-5.3.1).

1090 **0.A.6.4** In various stipulations, provision is made for the use of “standard abbreviations” (e.g. in the edition statement, see 2.1.2) without specifying the forms of the abbreviations to be followed. These abbreviations are not prescribed, but it is recommended that ISO 832, *Information and Documentation—Bibliographic Description and References—Rules for the Abbreviation of Bibliographic Terms*, ISO 31-1:1992, *Quantities and units. Part 1, Space and time*, international or similar national standards, be used (see Appendix C).

The abbreviations used throughout in the examples, other than those prescribed above in ~~0.A.6.2~~ and ~~0.A.6.3~~, are illustrative and not prescriptive (see also Appendix D). Certain Latin abbreviations are used

in order to facilitate the international exchange of bibliographic records and to avoid the need for bibliographic agencies to supply equivalent terms to match the text in any possible language.

**0.A.6.5** Initials and acronyms are recorded without internal spaces, regardless of how they are presented on the resource.

*Examples*

1100

Pel batesimo di S.A.R. Ludovico ...

KL Ianuarius habet dies xxxi

Secundum usum S.R.E.

Prediche del M.R.P.C.M.

Abbreviations consisting of more than a single letter are treated as distinct words, separated with spaces from preceding or following words or initials.

*Examples*

Ph. D.

Mr J.J. Rousseau

When two or more distinct abbreviations, initialisms, etc., appear in juxtaposition, each is separated from the other by a space.

1110

*Examples*

par R.F. s. d. C.

M. J.P. Rabaut

**0.6.6** — **Abbreviations found in older monographic resources**

~~When contractions and abbreviations in continuance of the manuscript tradition of abbreviating words that were long and/or frequently encountered are found, these may be left as they stand or may be expanded wherever possible. Any such expansion is enclosed in square brackets or given in area 7.~~

*Examples*

1120

~~Boetij viri celeberrimi de [con]solatio[n]e philosophie liber : cu[m] optimo [com]me[n]to beati Thome~~

~~Dialogus beati Gregorij Pape : eiusq[ue] diaconi Petri in quattuor libros diuisus : de vita [et] miraculis patrum italicorum : [et] de eternitate a[n]imarum~~

~~When the meaning of an abbreviation or contraction is conjectural, a question mark is given following the conjectural expansion, e.g. amico[rum?]. When the meaning of an abbreviation or contraction cannot be determined, a question mark is given, enclosed in square brackets, for each indeterminable abbreviation or contraction e.g. amico[?], [?]s, or the abbreviation or contraction may be left as it stands.~~

## **A.7 Capitalization**

1130 In general, in those scripts where capitalization is relevant, the first letter of the first word of each area should be a capital; the first letter of the first word of some elements **or subelements** should also be a capital (e.g. ~~general material designation~~, parallel title, alternative title, section title). Other capitalization should follow the appropriate usage for the language(s) and/or script(s) used in the description (see **A.5 for the language, script, and form of letters to be used for transcription**)<sup>17</sup>. When more than one language and/or script appears in the description, each should be capitalized in accordance with the usage of that language and/or script even when this produces an inconsistent pattern of capitalization for the description as a whole.

### **For older monographic resources:**

Letters of numerical value in a chronogram in the title or **in the publication**, ~~printing~~**production**, distribution, etc., area, or in an acrostic in the text of a poem are given in capitals. Interpolations used by the cataloguing agency should follow modern practice.

#### *Example*

1140 Anno Vt speraMUs, pace CoronanDo [1610]

A final larger capital I in Latin words is a ligature representing ii or ij. It can be expanded (see **A.6.6.1**) or it may be left as it stands.

Early type founts provided only one letter for upper case I and J and one for U and V. (Lower case i/j and u/v were used mutually as well, the differences follow the founts used and graphical conventions rather than spelling conventions, but both letters were extant in most type founts.) The capital letters U and V began to be differentiated in the early 16th century, distinction between I and J, i and j, u and v came later in the 16th century.<sup>18</sup>

1150 Several slightly different transcription conventions for I and J and for U and V are applied in the international cataloguing community. These may range from recording the actual capitalization of the originals to converting V to u in most cases. One consistent conversion method as chosen by the cataloguing agency is to be applied.

For example, if the capitalization of the original is not recorded, alternating I and J, U and V, and VV or UU representing W are transcribed as they appear, that is:

I or J as i or j, final IJ as ij, U and V as u and v, VV as vv.

or, I or J may be converted to i or j, U and V to u or v, and VV to w, according to modern spelling conventions.

If it is not possible to identify a capital letter as one or the other (e.g. I/J or U/V in Gothic type), it should be normalized according to modern orthography in the language of the resource.

<sup>17</sup> The provisions of **A.5** apply to the language, script and form of letters and diacritics to be used for transcription.

<sup>18</sup> Consistent use of these types as different letters was not established until well into the 19th century, however. See D.B. Updike, *Printing types: their history, forms and use.*— (Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1937), p. 22, note.

1160

*Examples:*

JOHANNES as Johannes

JSAK as Isak

~~Depending on the conversion method chosen, the cataloguing agency should provide for the necessary complementary access points.~~

**0.8** ~~Examples~~

~~The examples given throughout the ISBD are illustrative and not prescriptive except when the stipulations specify that the form found in the example(s) is to be followed. Most examples are based on the description of existing resources.~~

**0.9A.8 Misprints**

1170 Inaccuracies or misspelled words are transcribed as they appear on the resource. They may be followed by “sic” enclosed in square brackets that are preceded and followed by a space ( [sic] ). ~~Alternatively, or~~ the correct version may be added, enclosed in square brackets, the correction being preceded by “i.e.” (*id est*), or its equivalent in another language and/or script. ~~Letters or numbers that have been omitted from misspelled words may be inserted, enclosed in square brackets (in this case not preceded or followed by a space).~~

*Examples*

Chansons créés et interprétés [sic]

The world in [d]anger **[i.e. danger]**

Looser [i.e. Loser] takes all

1180

The notted [i.e. noted] history of Mother Grim

Barcelonette [i.e. Barcelonnette]

Golden Vienese [sic] waltzes

compuesto por Luis de Bricñeo [i.e. Briceño]

Small busines [sic] encyclopedias

An hnmble [sic] address

To my loaing [sic] friend

Antiqvtates [i.e. Antiquitates] Alstetenses et Palatinatvs Saxonici

~~or~~~~Antiqv[i]itates Alstetenses et Palatinatvs Saxonici~~

1190

**For older monographic resources:**

When the printer has left a blank space for an initial letter to be inserted by hand, the letter is supplied, enclosed in square brackets, and the interpolation is explained in area 7.

*Example*

[T]he true history of recent events

*Note:* Initial letter space left blank by printer

Spaces that are intentionally left blank, to give room for dates or names, etc., entered later by hand, are recorded enclosed in square brackets. The term “blank space” or an appropriate equivalent in the language chosen by the cataloguing agency is recorded. Additions by hand in such spaces are recorded in area 7 or given enclosed in square brackets in area 1 with an explanation in area 7.

1200

*Example*

Kungörelse, Angående Någon tilärnad Entreprenade, af tändningen och underhållandet af Stadsens enskilde Lycktor. Gifwen Stockholms Rådhus den [blank space] Junii 176[blank space]

*Note:* Date "19 Junii 1767" filled in by hand on title page and on the last page of copy x in collection y

or

Kungörelse, Angående Någon tilärnad Entreprenade, af tändningen och underhållandet af Stadsens enskilde Lycktor. Gifwen Stockholms Rådhus den [19] Junii 176[7]

*Note:* Dates between brackets filled in by hand on copy x in collection y

1210

When copies with a misprint corrected are known and both variants are described in one record, the later variant is used as the basis for description. Information about the misprint is given in area 7.

*Example*

Den sluga och förståndiga gubben, som lærer de oförfarna både i städerna och på landet, at igenom hwarjehanda hus-curer, hela och bota mångfaldiga sjukdomar, så wäl hos människor som fänad; jämte mycket annat, som kan tjena til förmon och nytta i åtskilliga hushålls-stycken.

*Note:* Variant state has misprint in title: "sjukdo-"/"domar"

. – Stockholm, : gedruckt bey Henr. C. Merckell, königl. Buchdr. im Grosz-Fürstenthum Finland., Anno 1721.

*Note:* Statement of publication taken from colophon. Variant state has misprint in colophon: "Stocholm"

1220

Turned letters are transcribed as intended and an explanatory note is given.

*Example*

... virtue ...

*Note:* The “r” in “virtue” is turned the wrong way

1230

**For continuing resources:**

Inaccuracies or misspelled words are not transcribed in the title proper (see 1.1.5.1).

**0.10 A.9 Symbols, etc.**

A symbol or other matter that cannot be reproduced by the facilities available (~~normally, characters that are neither numeric nor alphabetic~~) is replaced by its description or its equivalency in letters or words, as appropriate. The substitution is enclosed in square brackets and an explanatory note is made if considered important to users of the catalogue. A copyright symbol that cannot be reproduced may be replaced by an abbreviation without square brackets.

*Examples*

- 1240 / by [E.B.C.]  
*Note:* Author's initials represented by musical notes
- I [love] Paris  
*Note:* The word "love" in the title is represented by a heart symbol
- Splinters, historical, sacred and profane, partly from off that standard [oak], our blessed constitution  
*Note:* The word "oak" is represented by a woodcut of the tree
- [3rd ed.]  
*Note:* Edition information represented by three stars
- , cop. 2009  
*Editorial comment:* Date appears as: ©2009.

**1250 0.11 A.10 Imperfections****For older monographic resources:**

The ISBD is concerned with the recording of copies of library materials as issued, and makes no provision for situations where no complete copy exists or when an imperfect copy has to be catalogued without the help of a bibliographic record for a complete example.

In the first case, compilers and users of databases, whether manual or machine-based, should realize that descriptions taking account of alterations during printing, special dedication copies, the presence of cancel leaves, etc., may not apply to all copies of the same edition.

- 1260 In the second case, a record for a complete copy should first be sought and imperfections and other peculiar characteristics described in area 7; but when no details of a complete copy can be found, information supplied by the cataloguer from inference in the title and statement of responsibility area is given in square brackets with an explanatory note.

Alternative possibilities are linked by “or”. When such information cannot be supplied, lacunae are indicated by the mark of omission with an explanatory note. The extent of an imperfect copy when the complete extent cannot be inferred is given according to the provisions of 5.1.4.1.5.

**A.11 Examples**

1270

The examples given throughout this document are illustrative and not prescriptive except when the stipulations specify that the form found in the example or examples is to be followed. Most examples are based on the description of existing resources.

## SPECIFICATION OF ELEMENTS

### 0 CONTENT FORM AND MEDIA TYPE AREA

**Mandatory**

#### **Introductory note**

1280 The purpose of the content form and media type area is to indicate at the very beginning of the description both the fundamental form or forms in which the content of a resource is expressed and the type or types of carrier used to convey that content so as to assist catalogue users in identifying and selecting resources appropriate to their needs.

The content form and media type area comprises three elements, each taken from closed lists: (1) the **content form**, one or more terms reflecting the fundamental form or forms in which the content of a resource is expressed; (2) the **content qualification**, specifying the type, sensory nature, dimensionality, and/or presence or absence of motion for the resource being described; and (3) the **media type**, indicating the type or types of carrier used to convey the content of the resource.

#### **Contents**

0.1 Content form

0.2 Content qualification

0.3 Media type

#### 1290 **Prescribed punctuation**

**A.** Content qualification terms are enclosed in parentheses immediately following the content form term ( ( ) ).

**B.** When different content qualification terms are applicable to one content form, each subsequent content qualification term is preceded by a space, semicolon, space ( ; ).

**C.** The media type term is preceded by a space, colon, space ( : ).

**D.** When different content forms are contained in one media type, each content form term after the first is preceded by a point, space ( . ).

**E.** When a resource consists of different media types and contains different content forms, each subsequent content form : media type statement is preceded by a space, plus sign, space ( + ).

#### 1300 Punctuation patterns

Content form (content qualification) : media type

Content form (content qualification ; content qualification) : media type

Content form. Content form (content qualification) : media type

Content form (content qualification). Content form (content qualification) : media type

Content form (content qualification) : media type + Content form (content qualification) : media type

**Prescribed source**The resource itself

**0.1 Content form**

1310

**Mandatory**

Content form categories reflect the fundamental form or forms in which the content of a resource is expressed. One or more terms from the following list is given in the language and script chosen by the cataloguing agency. For works of mixed content where there is no predominant part of the resource (i.e. all parts are equally prominent or important), as many terms as are applicable to the resource being described are recorded, in alphabetical order. Alternatively, for resources comprising mixed content where three or more forms are applicable, the term “multiple content forms” may be given. For works of mixed content where one part of the resource is predominant and other content is considered accompanying material (see 5.4), the term corresponding to the predominant part of the resource is recorded.

**Content Form Terms**

1320

<b><u>Content Form Term</u></b>	<b><u>Definition and Scope of Term</u></b>
<u>dataset</u>	<u>Content expressed by digitally-encoded data intended to be processed by a computer. Examples include numeric data, environmental data, etc., used by applications software to calculate averages, correlations, etc., or to produce models, etc., but not normally displayed in its raw form. Excluded are digitally recorded music [see music], language [see spoken word], sounds [see sounds], computer-reproduced images [see image] and text [see text].</u>
<u>image</u>	<u>Content expressed through line, shape, shading, etc., intended to be perceived visually. An image can be still or moving, in two or three dimensions. Examples include art reproductions, maps, photographs, remote-sensing images, stereographs, motion pictures, and lithographs.</u>
<u>movement</u>	<u>Content expressed through motion, i.e. the act or process of changing the position of an object or person. Examples include dance notation, stage actions, or choreography, but exclude moving images, such as motion pictures [see image]</u>
<u>music</u>	<u>Content expressed through ordered tones or sounds in succession, in combination, and in temporal relationships to produce a composition. Music can be written (notation), performed, or recorded in analogue or digital formats as vocal, instrumental, or mechanical sounds having rhythm, melody, or harmony. Examples include written music, such as scores or parts, and recorded music, such as concert performances, opera, and studio recordings.</u>

<u>object</u>	<u>Content expressed through three-dimensional material, either naturally occurring entities, or human-made/machine-manufactured artefacts. Also referred to as three-dimensional structures or realia, examples of artefacts include sculpture, models, games, jigsaw puzzles, coins, toys, buildings, equipment, clothing, cultural, and other items. Naturally occurring entities include fossils, rocks, insects, biological specimens on slides, etc. Cartographic objects include globes, relief models, and cross-sections intended to be viewed from the side in three-dimensional form.</u>
<u>program</u>	<u>Content expressed through digitally-encoded instructions intended to be processed and performed by a computer. Examples include operating systems, application software, etc.</u>
<u>sounds</u>	<u>Content expressed through sounds made by animals, birds, naturally occurring sources of noise, or such sounds simulated by the human voice or digital (or analogue) media. Examples include recordings of bird songs, animal calls, and sound effects, but exclude recorded music [<i>see music</i>], and recorded <i>human</i> speech [<i>see spoken word</i>].</u>
<u>spoken word</u>	<u>Content expressed through the sound of the human voice talking. Examples include talking books, radio broadcasts, oral history recordings, and audio recordings of plays, whether recorded in analogue or digital format.</u>
<u>text</u>	<u>Content expressed through written words, symbols and numbers. Examples include books (printed or electronic), correspondence, databases of journals, and microfilmed newspapers.</u>
<u>multiple content forms</u>	<u>Mixed content where three or more forms are applicable.</u>
<u>other content form</u>	<u>If none of the terms listed above applies to the content of the resource being described, the term “other content form” is given.</u>

## **0.2 Content qualification**

A content form category is expanded by one or more content qualification sub-categories, if applicable to the resource being described. Content qualifications specify the type, presence or absence of motion, dimensionality and sensory nature for the resource being described.

Terms from the following lists are given in the language and script chosen by the cataloguing agency, using as many terms as are appropriate to expand on or further clarify the corresponding content form category.

<b><u>Specification of Type</u></b>	
<u>cartographic</u>	<u>Content representing the whole or part of the Earth or any celestial body at any scale. Includes maps, atlases, globes, relief models, etc.</u>
<u>notated</u>	<u>Content expressed through a notational system for artistic purposes (e.g. music, dance, staging) intended to be perceived visually.</u>
<u>performed</u>	<u>Content expressed in an audible or visible form, at a given time, and recorded in a resource. Includes recorded performances of music or movement, computer-generated music, etc.</u>

1330

<b><u>Specification of Motion</u></b> (for use with Content Form “ <i>image</i> ” only)	
<u>The perceived presence or absence of movement in the image content of a resource.</u>	
<u>moving</u>	<u>Image content that is perceived to be in motion, usually by means of a quick succession of images.</u>
<u>still</u>	<u>Image content that is perceived to be static.</u>

<b><u>Specification of Dimensionality</u></b> (for use with Content Form “ <i>image</i> ” only)	
<u>The number of spatial dimensions in which the image content of a resource is intended to be perceived. The following terms should be used when this type of content qualification cannot be deduced from the content form.</u>	
<u>2-dimensional</u>	<u>Image content that is intended to be perceived in two dimensions.</u>
<u>3-dimensional</u>	<u>Image content that is intended to be perceived in three dimensions.</u>

**Sensory Specification**

This attribute refers to a human sense through which the content of a resource as published is intended to be perceived. The following terms should be used when this type of content qualification cannot be deduced from the content form.

<u>aural</u>	<u>Content that is intended to be perceived through hearing.</u>
<u>gustatory</u>	<u>Content that is intended to be perceived through taste.</u>
<u>olfactory</u>	<u>Content that is intended to be perceived through smell.</u>
<u>tactile</u>	<u>Content that is intended to be perceived through touch.</u>
<u>visual</u>	<u>Content that is intended to be perceived through sight.</u>

**0.3 Media type****Mandatory**

1340 Media type categories record the type or types of carrier used to convey the content of the resource. Categories generally reflect the format of the storage medium and housing of a carrier in combination with the type of intermediation device required to render, view, run, etc., the content of a resource. One or more terms from the following list is given in the language and script chosen by the cataloguing agency. For works of mixed media where there is no predominant part of the resource (i.e. all parts are equally prominent or important), as many terms as are applicable to the resource being described are recorded. Alternatively, for resources comprising mixed media where three or more media types are applicable, the term “multiple media” may be given. For works of mixed media where one part of the resource is predominant and other media types are considered accompanying material (see 5.4), the term corresponding to the predominant part of the resource is recorded. Where no media type is recorded, the resource is assumed to be “unmediated” such that no mediation device is required to use or perceive the resource.

1350

**Media Type Terms**

<b><u>Media Type Term</u></b>	<b><u>Definition and Scope of Term</u></b>
<u>audio</u>	<b><u>For audio player-enabled resources</u></b> <u>Media used to store recorded sound, designed for use with a playback device such as a turntable, audiocassette player, CD player, MP3 player, or iPod. Includes media used to store digitally encoded as well as analogue sound.</u>
<u>electronic</u>	<b><u>For computer-enabled resources</u></b> <u>Media used to store electronic files, designed for use with a computer. Includes media that are accessed remotely through file servers, as well as direct-access media such as computer tapes and disks.</u>
<u>microform</u>	<b><u>For microform reader-enabled resources</u></b> <u>Media used to store reduced-size images, not readable to the human eye, and designed for use with a device such as a microfilm or microfiche reader. Includes both transparent and opaque micrographic media.</u>
<u>microscopic</u>	<b><u>For microscope-enabled resources</u></b> <u>Media used to store minute objects, designed for use with a device such as a microscope to reveal details invisible to the naked eye.</u>
<u>projected</u>	<b><u>For projector-enabled resources</u></b> <u>Media used to store moving or still images, designed for use with a projection device such as a motion picture film projector, slide projector, or overhead projector. Includes media designed to project both two-dimensional and three-dimensional images.</u>

<u>stereographic</u>	<b><u>For stereograph viewer-enabled resources</u></b> <u>Media used to store pairs of still images, designed for use with a device such as a stereoscope or stereograph viewer to give the effect of three dimensions.</u>
<u>video</u>	<b><u>For video player-enabled resources</u></b> <u>Media used to store moving or still images, designed for use with a playback device such as a videocassette player or DVD player. Includes media used to store digitally encoded as well as analogue images.</u>
<u>multiple media</u>	<u>For resources comprising mixed media where three or more media types are applicable.</u>
<u>other media</u>	<u>If none of the terms listed above applies to the type of carrier and intermediation device required to convey, use, or perceive the content of the resource being described, the term “other media” is given.</u>

Examples

Music (performed) : audio

*Editorial comment: an audio CD*

Text

*Editorial comment: a book.*

Image (cartographic ; tactile)

*Editorial comment: a tactile map*

Music (notated)

*Editorial comment: a sheet of music*

Text : electronic

*Editorial comment: a website*

Object + Image (olfactory)

*Editorial comment: a model and graphic (a 3-dimensional model of a coffee bean and 2-dimensional card with a microfragrance-coated image of a coffee bean that can be scratched to produce the smell of coffee)*

Music (notated) + Music (performed) : audio + Text. Music (notated). Music (performed) : electronic

or

Multiple content forms : multiple media

*Editorial comment: a resource comprised of multiple forms of content, and types of media: one printed score + 1 sound disc + 1 CD-ROM*



## 1 TITLE AND STATEMENT OF RESPONSIBILITY AREA

### Introductory note

1380 The ~~title and statement of responsibility area covers stipulations also~~ **includes** for the General material designation, the **title proper**, parallel titles, and other title information, **and statements of responsibility**. **The elements are defined in the glossary.** More information appears at the beginning of each element of the area.

### Contents

- 1.1 Title proper
- ~~1.2 General material designation~~
- 1.3 **2** Parallel title
- 1.4 **3** Other title information
- 1.5 **4** Statement of responsibility

### ~~Recommended punctuation~~ **Prescribed punctuation**

- 1390 ~~A.~~ The general material designation is enclosed in square brackets, the first bracket being preceded and the second followed by a space ( [ ] ).
- AB.** Each parallel title or other parallel statement is preceded by a space, equals sign, space ( = ).
- BC.** Each unit of other title information is preceded by a space, colon, space ( : ), unless a word or phrase is given on the resource to link a second or subsequent unit with the preceding unit.
- CD.** The first statement of responsibility following any title is preceded by a space, diagonal slash, space ( / ).
- DE.** Each subsequent statement of responsibility is preceded by a space, semicolon, space ( ; ), unless the statements are considered to form a single phrase.
- 1400 **EF.** Titles of individual works by different authors, composers, artists, etc., contained ~~in~~ **in** a resource, are separated by a point, space ( . ).
- GF.** Titles of individual works by the same author, composer, artist, etc., contained ~~in~~ **in** a resource are separated by a space, semicolon, space ( ; ).
- HG.** ~~In the case of~~ **If a** title **is** made up of common and dependent titles, each dependent title designation, if any, or each dependent title following the common title is preceded by a point, space ( . ).
- IH.** Each dependent title following a dependent title designation is preceded by a comma, space ( , ).
- JI.** A dependent title designation or dependent title following other title information ~~or a statement of responsibility~~ is preceded by a point, space ( . ).

#### **Punctuation patterns** *Examples*

- 1410 Title proper ~~[General material designation]~~
- Title proper ~~[General material designation]~~ : other title information
- Title proper ~~[General material designation]~~ = Parallel title

1420

Title proper ~~[General material designation]~~ = Parallel title : other title information

Title proper ~~[General material designation]~~ : other title information = Parallel title : parallel other title information

Title proper ~~[General material designation]~~ : other title information = parallel other title information

Title proper ~~[General material designation]~~ / statement of responsibility

Title proper ~~[General material designation]~~ = Parallel title / statement of responsibility

Title proper ~~[General material designation]~~ = Parallel title = Parallel title / statement of responsibility

Title proper ~~[General material designation]~~ : other title information : other title information / statement of responsibility

Title proper ~~[General material designation]~~ / statement of responsibility = parallel statement of responsibility

Title proper ~~[General material designation]~~ / statement of responsibility = Parallel title / parallel statement of responsibility

Title proper ~~[General material designation]~~ / statement of responsibility ; second statement of responsibility ; third statement of responsibility

1430

Title ~~[General material designation]~~ / statement of responsibility. Title / statement of responsibility

Title ~~[General material designation]~~ ; Title / statement of responsibility

Title ~~[General material designation]~~ : other title information ; Title : other title information / statement of responsibility

Title ~~[General material designation]~~ = Parallel title ; Title = Parallel title / statement of responsibility

1440

Common title. Dependent title ~~[General material designation]~~

Common title. Dependent title designation, Dependent title ~~[General material designation]~~

Common title. Dependent title designation ~~[General material designation]~~

Common title. Dependent title ~~[General material designation]~~ = Parallel common title. Parallel dependent title

Common title. Dependent title ~~[General material designation]~~ / statement of responsibility

Common title : other title information. Dependent title ~~[General material designation]~~ : other title information

Common title / statement of responsibility. Dependent title ~~[General material designation]~~ : other title information / statement of responsibility = Parallel common title / parallel statement of responsibility. Parallel dependent title : parallel other title information / parallel statement of responsibility

1450 **Prescribed sources**

Square brackets are placed around information given in area 1 that was found on the resource but not on one of the prescribed sources is given in area 1, enclosed in square brackets, or in area 7. Individual stipulations (e.g. 1.1.3.3, 1.1.4.3) place limitations on the information found on the resource that is given in area 1.

**Printed textual resources and  
Printed notated music resources:**

Title page or title-page substitute.

**Printed cartographic resources and  
Multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and  
moving images:**

1460

**All other resources:**

The resource itself, container, documentation, other accompanying material.

**Electronic resources:**

The resource itself, documentation, other accompanying material, container.

**For resources containing different works:**

**Monographs:**

When there is no prescribed source of information applying to the whole resource, but each work contained in it has its own prescribed source of information, the several sources of information, including those of tête bêche resources containing different works, may be considered collectively as a single source of information.

1470

**Continuing resources:**

When the resource contains more than one work, each with its own prescribed source of information and numbering, a separate description is made for each. An appropriate explanation is given in area 7 relating the separate descriptions.

**Multipart monographic resources:**

When there is no prescribed source of information applying to the whole resource, but each part has its own prescribed source of information, the prescribed source of the first available part is selected.

**For all types of resources:**

1480 Information found outside the resource may be given in area 7



## 1.1 Title proper

**Mandatory**

### Introductory note

The title proper consists of the title of the resource in the form in which it appears on the prescribed sources of information for the title and statement of responsibility area. It includes alternative titles and the conjunction linking an alternative title with the first part of the title proper.

1490 It can consist of a common title and a dependent title when a section, supplement, part, etc., has a title or designation insufficient to identify it without the inclusion of the common title or the title of the main resource.

The title proper excludes any parallel titles (see 1.3) or other title information (see 1.4).

Resources lacking a collective title are considered not to have a title proper (for the treatment of such resources see 1.1.4.4).

For the selection of the title proper when a title appears in more than one language and/or script (on the same source or on different sources), see 1.1.4.1, 1.1.4.2.

For resources other than electronic resources, the source of the title proper is given in area 7 (see 7.1.1.2) if (a) it is from a title page substitute for printed textual resources or (b) it is from a source other than the preferred source of information for cartographic resources and for audiovisual resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images.

1500 For electronic resources, the source of the title proper is given in area 7 in all cases.

**1.1.1** — A file name of an electronic resource is not treated as the title proper unless it is the only name given internally on the file and externally on the resource, its container, documentation and other accompanying material (see also 1.1.6).

#### *Examples of titles proper*

<i>Type of resource</i>	<i>Title on resource</i>	<i>Title proper</i>
motion picture	"Non-destructive inspection—a dollar-saving diagnostic tool"	Non-destructive inspection
sound recording	"L'Ascension, hymne pour grand orchestre"	L'Ascension
model	"Muscular dynamism or Unique forms of continuity in space"	Muscular dynamism, or, Unique forms of continuity in space
book	"Don Juan oder die Liebe zur Geometrie"	Don Juan oder Die Liebe zur Geometrie
book	"Julie ou La nouvelle Héloïse"	Julie ou La nouvelle Héloïse
book	"音乐圣殿 古典音乐欣赏"	音乐圣殿
music	"Symphony no. 16 in G major"	Symphony no. 16 in G major

<i>Type of resource</i>	<i>Title on resource</i>	<i>Title proper</i>
	(Oxford)"	
filmstrip	"French colonies in America. Colonies françaises d'Amérique"	French colonies in America
serial	"Willing's press guide"	Willing's press guide
newspaper	"Le Monde"	Le monde
periodical	"Cartactual"	Cartactual
yearbook	"Farm & home almanac"	Farm & home almanac
subseries	"Kulturwissenschaften"	Kulturwissenschaften
integrating resource	"Amazon.com"	Amazon.com
integrating resource	"A century of lawmaking for a new nation"	A century of lawmaking for a new nation
integrating resource	"www.opatija.hr"	WWW.opatija.hr
integrating resource	"dubrovnikportal"	Dubrovnikportal
electronic resource	"Mix and match games, Module 1– Letters"	Mix and match games. Module 1, Letters

**1.1.12** The title proper is the first element of the ~~description~~ area even when it is preceded on the prescribed source of information by statements of responsibility, edition statements, series statements, publication/distribution statements, date, price or other matter that is not title proper information.

1510

**1.1.2** A file name of an electronic resource is not treated as the title proper unless it is the only name given internally on the file and externally on the resource, its container, documentation and other accompanying material.

### 1.1.3 Forms of title proper

The title proper can take various forms:

**1.1.3.1** The title proper can consist solely of a term(s) or terms indicating a type of work or its intellectual or artistic content or of a generic term or terms.

#### *Examples*

Proceedings

Plays

Collected works

1520

Journal

Textes et documents

Concerto

Drawings

Survey data

Software

Graphics

会议文集

**1.1.3.2** The title proper can consist of the name of a person or corporate body when the prescribed source of information bears no title other than that name.

1530 *Examples*

Sophocles

The British Museum

Kongress geografa Jugoslavije, Rijeka-Pula-Gorica, 3-8.X.1949

Museum diluvianum quod possidet Joh. Jacobus Scheuchzer

Arthur Sullivan

The Beatles

Michigan Institute on the Teaching of Librarianship

Dian Fossey

International Summer School on Computational and Mathematical Linguistics

1540 徐悲鸿

梅原龍三郎

김수근

**1.1.3.3** The title proper can consist of or include a set of initials, an acronym, or a logo.

*Examples*

ISBD(M)

IFLA journal

Collection CAP

MM 51

BASIC

1550 P.M.S.

The expanded form, when present on the prescribed source of information but not selected as the title proper (see 1.1.4), is given as other title information (see 1.4.3) or as a statement of responsibility (see 1.5.5.1).

When it is not on the prescribed sources, the expanded form may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.1.4).

**1.1.3.4** The title proper can consist of two parts (each of which may be considered to be a title) linked by the word “or”, “that is”, etc. (or the equivalent in another language). The second part is defined as the alternative title. An alternative title is part of the title proper. There is no prescribed punctuation before or after the linking word. The use of this punctuation is at the discretion of the cataloguing agency.

*Examples*

1560

Eric, or, Little by little

~~"Le tiers des étoiles" ou On ne sait pas quel ange~~~~Don Juan oder Die Liebe zur Geometrie~~~~Moriae encomium, or, A panegyrick upon folly~~~~Rechtschaffener Tantzmeister oder Gründliche Erklärung der frantzösischen Tantz-Kunst~~~~Lutèce ou Premier plan de la Ville de Paris~~~~The West India atlas, or, A compendious description of the West Indies~~

Un giorno di regno ossia Il finto Stanislao

~~Nina ou La folle par amour~~

1570

~~Belmont und Constanze oder Die Entführung aus dem Serail~~~~Dr. Strangelove, or, How I learned to stop worrying and love the bomb~~~~Marcel Marceau ou L'art du mime~~~~En liten catechismus eller Kort summe på then rette christelige och catholiske troo~~

袖珍神学, 或, 简明基督教词典

ジュリエット物語, あるいは, 悪徳の栄え

아라비안나이트, 일명, 千日夜話

*Examples for older monographic resources*

1580

Collegium institutionum juris, sive Controversiae, antinomiae et difficultates librorum quatuor institutionum juris; ...

*Editorial comment: Older monographic resource.*~~Wunder-Spiegel, oder Göttliche Wunder-Werck, ...~~~~Evangelische Kirchen Harmonie, das ist: Der hoch-heiligen Skrift unterschiedene-  
Texte, und Worte: ...~~~~Le mystère d'iniquité, c'est à dire L'histoire de la Papauté par quels progresz elle est  
montée à ce comble~~~~Some considerations about the case of scandal, or Giving offence to weak brethren~~

~~The ISBD does not prescribe punctuation before or after the linking word. The use of this punctuation is at the discretion of the cataloguing agency.~~

**1.1.3.5** The title proper can include numbers or letters.

- 1590 *Examples*
- Analytic theory of continued fractions II
- Knox County, Kentucky, marriage book BB & C
- Knitting I
- Knitting II
- International map of the world 1:1 000 000
- [Royalists and Puritans, 1635–1660](#)
- World 1:5 000 000 series 1106
- Le 01
- 37 design and environment projects
- 1600 L und E
- Editorial comment:* The other title information reads: Österreichisches Zentralorgan für Lebensmittel und Ernährung
- Dossiers CH+6
- In Caii Plinii Secundi Naturalis Historiae I. & II. cap. Libri xxx. Commentarius
- [Editorial comment: Older monographic resource.](#)
- Evangelischer Gnaden-Strom, das ist: Sechs evangelische Historien, begrieffen im 2., 3. und 4. Cap. Johannis. ...
- [Editorial comment: Older monographic resource.](#)
- LXX. disputationes theologicæ; ...
- [Editorial comment: Older monographic resource.](#)
- 1610 中国国界线画法标准样图(1:400万)
- 900句开口篇
- 한글 dBASE III plus 1.1H
- For notated music resources and  
For sound recordings:**
- The title proper can include statements about the key, numbering, date of composition, and medium of performance, when the title, exclusive of these statements, consists of the type of composition. [Otherwise such statements are regarded as other title information.](#)
- Examples*
- 1620 String quintet no. 1, A major, op. 18
- Klavierkonzert Nr. 5, Es-Dur
- Sinfonia 1 (1970)
- Sonate en ré majeur, opus 3, pour violon
- Scherzo for two pianos, four hands

降B作品第，大调第一弦乐五重奏\_K174\_号

~~Otherwise such statements are regarded as other title information.~~

**1.1.3.6** ~~The title proper can include~~ **When** a statement of responsibility, the name of a publisher, or details **information** relating to other descriptive elements (e.g. edition statement) ~~when such information is~~ linguistically an integral part of the title, **it is included in the title proper.**

1630

*Examples*

Marlowe's plays

Revai Nagy lexicon

~~Newcomb-Engelmann's Populäre Astronomie~~

Report of the Expert Group on Special Care for Babies

Lettres inédites d'Anatole France à Paul Grunebaum-Ballin

~~Lettere edite ed inedite di Felice Orsini, G. Mazzini, G. Garibaldi e F.D. Guerrazzi  
intorno alle cose d'Italia~~

Pocket volume of selections from the poetical works of Robert Browning

The post-humous works of Robert Hooke

1640

~~Lucidario in musica di alcune oppenioni antiche, et moderne con le loro oppositioni, &  
resolutioni~~

~~Le premier volume de messire Jehan Froissart lequel traicte des choses dignes de  
memoire aduenues tant es pays de France~~

Cinema-Ed Bureau films for the year

University of California publications in classical archaeology

Willing's press guide

~~Rapport de gestion de la Banque nationale suisse~~

La **r**Route Shell

Mundy's map of the twin cities Edmonton & Strathcona

1650

~~Mozarts Klavierkonzerte~~

Fantasien über Gedichte von Richard Dehmel für Klavier op. 9

Charles Aznavour présente ses plus grands succès

The Penguin book of Italian madrigals

The vocal score and libretto of The merry widow

The Esso student's business game

~~The Sunday Times guide to the modern movement in the arts~~

Adventure games of Derek Tyne

- Galaxy Inc.'s guide to spreadsheets
- Joe Lynn's payroll system
- 1660 Bruce Mitchell on dimensional analysis
- ~~Monsieur Bossu's treatise of the epicke poem~~
- The compact edition of the Oxford English dictionary
- 朗文常用英文词根词典
- 鲁迅全集

### For moving images:

Even when the credits are linguistically connected with the title, credits for performer, director, producer, presenter, etc., that precede or follow the title are not considered as part of the title proper.

#### Examples

- 1670 Star wars  
*Editorial ~~note~~comment:* Title frame reads: Twentieth Century Fox presents Star wars
- Thief  
*Editorial ~~note~~comment:* Title frame reads: Thief, with James Caan

**1.1.3.7** The title proper can consist of a common title and a dependent title, with or without a dependent title designation.

#### Examples

- Internationale Quartär-Karte von Europa. Blatt 8, Magnitogorsk
- Crecer como hijos de Dios. Libro del catequista
- 1680 Nueva enciclopedia Larousse. Suplemento
- Example for older monographic resources*
- ~~Föreläsningar i fortification, / af Mårten Sturtzenbecher ... Första delen. 1. om fältverk~~

## 1.1.4 Choice of title proper

### 1.1.4.1 Resources with one prescribed source of information

**1.1.4.1.1** When two or more titles in the same language and/or script appear on the prescribed source of information, the title proper is selected by reference to the typography of titles on the prescribed source of information, or, if there is no typographical distinction, the sequence of titles on the prescribed source of information. If the typography or sequence does not provide the basis for a clear choice, the most comprehensive title is selected as the title proper.

1690

**For older monographic resources:**

The first title appearing on the prescribed source of information is selected as the title proper.

**For continuing resources:**

When the title appears in full and in the form of a set of initials or an acronym, the full form is chosen as the title proper and the initials or acronym is given as other title information (see 1.4.3).

**1.1.4.1.2** When the titles are in different languages ~~and/or~~ scripts (i.e. parallel titles, see 1.3), the title proper is the title in the language and ~~of~~ script of the content ~~of~~ of the main part of the resource.

1700 When this criterion cannot be applied, the title proper is selected by reference to the typography of titles on the prescribed source of information or, if there is no typographical distinction, the sequence of titles on the prescribed source of information.

**1.1.4.2 Resources with more than one prescribed source of information**

**1.1.4.2.1** When a resource has more than one prescribed source of information, as in the case of a multi-language or multi-script resource with a prescribed source of information in each language or script, the title proper is selected from the prescribed source of information that is in the language and ~~of~~ script of the content of the main part of the resource.

**1.1.4.2.2** When this criterion cannot be applied (either because the resource has no language or because its content is presented equally in ~~two or~~ more than one languages or scripts), the title proper is selected:

1710 **For printed resources or resources having the characteristics of a printed book (including microreproductions):**

from the right hand (recto) of two facing title pages or from the first of two or more title pages on recto pages.

~~In the case of~~ For tête-bêche or back-to-back resources where text and/or prescribed sources of information in two different languages ~~and/or~~ scripts are presented on separate pages with equal status, each at the “front” of the book with respect to one of the covers. the choice of title proper is at the discretion of the cataloguing agency. The title not chosen as title proper is given as a parallel title (see 1.32.2). A note explaining the ~~tête-bêche~~ format may be given in area 7.

1720 **For older monographic resources:**

from the right hand (recto) of two facing title pages or from the first of two or more title pages on recto pages, unless the first was clearly intended to be cancelled. A letterpress title page is to be preferred to an engraved title page.

**For cartographic resources,  
~~For~~ multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, ~~and~~ still and moving images, and  
~~For~~ electronic resources:**

from the first of two or more sequentially presented sources of information.

### 1.1.4.3 Resources with two or more works with a collective title

- 1730 When a resource contains two or more individual works and bears a collective title as well as the titles of the individual works on the prescribed source of information, the collective title is chosen as the title proper. The titles of the individual works may be given in area 7 ([see 7.7.2](#)).

#### Examples

##### Three notable stories

*Note:* Contents: Love and peril / the Marquis of Lorne. To be or not to be / Mrs. Alexander. The melancholy hussar / Thomas Hardy

##### Musik aus Frankreich

*Note:* Contents: Hirtenweise ; Sarabande / Jean François Dandrieu. Der Kuckuck ; Rigaudon / Louis-Claude Daquin. Minuetto / François-Joseph Darcis. Allegro ; Siciliano / Antoine Dauvergne

1740

##### Songs of the Beatles

*Note:* Contents: Yellow submarine ; Yesterday ; Maxwell's silver hammer

##### Disneyland

*Note:* Contents: Tomorrowland ; Fantasyland ; Frontierland ; Adventureland ; Main Street, USA

##### Dansons avec le Ry-Co jazz

*Note:* Contents: Bolingo habiba : cara cara (24 min, 45 s). Liwa ya tata : boléro (3 min, 30 s). Bina charanga : charanga (3 min, 10 s). M'paugi ya munu : cha-cha-cha (3 min)

1750

*Editorial comment:* Minutes and seconds recorded according to ISO 31-1:1992, *Quantities and units. Part 1, Space and time*

##### Winter games

*Note:* Contents: Hit the slopes ; Hit the ice

##### Finance directions

*Note:* Contents: Mortgages / B. Hardy. Loans / A. Martin-Smith. Retirement / R.T. Coutts

##### 조경래 문학상 수상 작품집

*Note:* Contents: 유형의 땅 ; 인간의 문 ; 메아리 메아리

### For older monographic resources:

- 1760 The title proper can include the titles of the individual works, or the titles of the individual works may be given in area 7, with their omission from the title proper being indicated by the mark of omission.

#### Examples

The spinning wheel's garland, containing several excellent new songs ...

*Note:* Contents listed on title page as: I. The good housewife's coat of arms. II. The spinning-wheel's glory. III. The taylor disappointed of his bride. IV The changeable world.

P. Virgilii Maronis Opera omnia ...

*Note:* Contents listed on title page as: Bucolica, Georgica, Aeneis; Ciris et culex

- 1770 ~~\_\_\_\_\_ or~~  
 P. Virgillii Maronis Opera omnia: Bucolica, Georgica, Aeneis; Ciris et culex; / ...  
 Tractatus sex....  
 Note: Contents listed on title page as: 1. De electione Romani regis. 2. Paratitla recessuum imperii. 3. Comment: ad L. 5. §. 14. D. commodati. 4. De origine solduriorum. 5. De fundamentis juris publ. & politicae. 6. Apologia pro orthodoxis Germaniae Jctis contra D. Gasparum Manzium  
 or
- 1780 Tractatus sex. 1. De electione Romani regis. 2. Paratitla recessuum imperii. 3. Comment: ad L. 5. §. 14. D. commodati. 4. De origine solduriorum. 5. De fundamentis juris publ. & politicae. 6. Apologia pro orthodoxis Germaniae Jctis contra D. Gasparum Manzium. / ...  
 Heures chrétiennes, ou Occupations saintes, ...  
 Note: Contents listed on title page as: I. Les veritez chretiennes dans les Epitres & les Evangiles dominicales, plusieurs passages de l'Ecriture sainte, et l'Histoire de la passion. II. Les louanges chretiennes dans les cantiques spirituels, les hymnes & les psaumes de l'eglise. III. Les instructions chretiennes dans le Petit catechime de feu Martin Luther, les symboles de la foi, & la confession d'Augsbourg. IV. Les prieres chretiennes tant publiques que particulieres. V. Les psaumes de David, nouvellement traduits selon la version allemande
- 1790

#### 1.1.4.4 — Resource with two or more works without a collective title

If on a resource lacking a collective title, one work is the predominant part of the resource, its title is considered as the title proper and the titles of the other works are given in area 7 (see 7.7.1).

If no one work is the predominant part of the resource, see 1.1.5.2.1 for the transcription of the titles of the works.

#### 1.1.4.5 **4** Resources without any title

- 1800 **1.1.4.5.1** — When a resource bears no title, a title is devised and recorded in square brackets. The title thus supplied should be concise, reflecting the area and/or the subject of the resource, in the language and script of the resource, or for a resource having no language, the language and script chosen by the cataloguing agency. A note is added in area 7 to explain that the title was supplied by the cataloguer (see 7.1.1.2).

#### Examples

[Phantom jet fighter landing at R.A.F. Leuchars, July 1971]

[Computer and information science technical reports, University of Florida]

[Mining claims in parts of Gloucester and Restigouche counties, New Brunswick, Canada]

[Coast of Maine from ~~Owls Head~~ **Rockland Harbor** to Penmaquid Point]

- 1810 [Carte de la lune]

~~[Mining claims in parts of Gloucester and Restigouche counties, New Brunswick, Canada]~~

[北陵志略]

[記日]

~~A note is added in area 7 to explain that the title was supplied by the cataloguer.~~

### 1.1.4.65 Resources as **that are** part of, or supplement to, another resource

1820 **1.1.4.65.1** When a section, supplement, part, etc., has a title or a designation insufficient to identify it without the inclusion of the common title, the title proper of the resource consists of a common title and a dependent title designation and/or a dependent title (i.e. a common title, a section designation and/or a section title; the title of the main resource and the non-distinctive title of a supplement or insert; the title of the main series, a subseries designation and/or the non-distinctive title of a subseries; the title of the multipart monographic resource and the non-distinctive title of the part described, etc.). The common title may also be given in area 6.

#### *Examples*

Advanced calculus. Student handbook

Histoire du peuple anglais au XIXe siècle. Épilogue

Ordnance Survey of Great Britain one inch to one mile map. Seventh series. Sheet 145, Banbury

Italian secular song, 1606–1636. Florence

1830 The German pre-classics. Series A, George Philipp Telemann

Mix and match games. Module 1, Letters

IEE proceedings. A

Acta Universitatis Carolinae. Philologica

Geographical abstracts. C, Economic geography

Kits for tots. Bimonthly filmstrip additions

Art of advocacy. Structured settlements

OSHA compliance manual. Application of key OSHA Topics

采矿设计师手册. 4, 矿山机械卷

企业管理基础. 教师手册

1840

#### *Example for older monographic resources*

~~Die Missionsgeschichte späterer Zeiten, oder Gesammelte Briefe der katholischen Missionare aus allen Theilen der Welt : ein wichtiger Beytrag zur Natur-Länder- und Völkerkunde, vorzüglich aber zur christlichen Erbauung. Der Briefe aus Ostindien erster Theil~~

**For continuing resources:**

When describing a supplement or an insert/inset with a dependent title, the title of the main continuing resource is also given in area 7 (see 7.2.4.95).

~~When describing a subseries with a dependent title, the title of the main series is also given in area 6.~~

- 1850 **1.1.4.65.2** When a supplement, insert, part, etc., of a multipart monographic resource can be identified without the inclusion of the common title, the title proper is the individual title of the supplement, insert, part, etc. The common title is given in area 6.

*Examples*

Mining and minerals

*In area 6:* (The law of South Africa ; vol. 18)

Bathymétrie de la terminaison sud de l'arc insulaire des Nouvelles-Hébrides

*In area 6:* (Contribution à l'étude géodynamique du Sud-Ouest Pacifique ; H.V. III-1)

Ernani

*In area 6:* (The works of Giuseppe Verdi. Series I, Operas = Le opere di Giuseppe Verdi. Sezione I, Opere teatrali ; vol. 5)

1860

Art music from the Far East

*In area 6:* (Musical sources)

U.S. grain sales and shipments

*In area 6:* (GSR agricultural surveys)

社会科学ジャーナル

*In area 6:* (国際基督教大学学報 ; 2B)

**For continuing resources:**

When supplements and inserts are described under an independent title, the common title is given in area 7 (see 7.2.4.5).

*Example*

*Advances in physics*

*Note:* Supplement to: Philosophical magazine – ISSN 0031-8086

1870

- 1.1.4.65.3** When the common title or title of the main resource is linguistically an integral part of the title of the supplement, part, etc., the title proper consists of the integrated statement of both titles.

*Examples*

Supplement to Hain's Repertorium bibliographicum

Geological basis for Vegetation of Southwest Africa

*Editorial comment:* Vegetation of Southwest Africa is the title of the main resource.

Superfluous hair, from Mail order madrigals

1880

More graphics for Imagine that!

Der ander Theil deß Formularij, zum Tractat von Commissarien vnd Commissionen  
Camerae Imperialis gehörig, in sechs Bücher abgetheilt

#### 1.1.4.6.4 Series designation

For serials, any number or other information relating to a chronological designation is not transcribed as a dependent title but is given in area 3 (see 3.3.9).

*Example*

On the title pages:

Nuovo archivio veneto. Ser. 2 (1891–1900)

Nuovo archivio veneto. Ser. 3 (1901–)

1890

*Title proper:* Nuovo archivio veneto

### 1.1.5 Transcription

**1.1.5.1** The title proper is transcribed from the prescribed source of information exactly as to wording, but not necessarily as to capitalization or punctuation (see also [A.7](#)).

*Examples*

Elements of mineralogy

A view of Sir Isaac Newton's philosophy

~~To Sir Richard Hill, Bart.~~

Abstract of an Act of Parliament, 27 George 2d, 1754

~~I am a jolly huntsman| My voice is shrill and clear~~

1900

*Note:* The title is taken from the opening lines of the poem

~~Sir, With submission, I have found out ways and means to add fifty thousand pound per annum for ever to the Crown~~

*Note:* The title is taken from the opening lines of the text

To the inhabitants of London and its environs. Awake! Arise! or be forever fall'n!

~~The following was, as nearly as we could collect, the words and circumstances attendant on the proposal for peace~~

~~Unto the right honourable the Lords of Council and Session, the petition of the Convenor and nine trades of Dundee~~

Varias antiguidades de Portugal

1910

By the King, a proclamation for a general fast

~~Der verkannte Werth des saechsischen bergbanes und desselben gute Sache~~

The unabashed librarian

*Editorial comment:* Title appears as The U\*N\*A\*B\*A\*S\*H\*E\*D librarian

Nouvelle carte des pays du Marché commun

La Camargue

Carte de pollution des eaux superficielles de Languedoc-Roussillon par les détergents anioniques

A new and exact map of the Dominions of the King of Great Britain on ye continent of North America

1920

一般动力学（动力学、振动与控制）最新进展

*Editorial comment:* Title appears as: 一般动力学[振动与控制、动力学]最新进展。

*Exceptionally*, a very lengthy title proper may be abridged in the middle or at the end, if this can be done without changing the meaning of the title, without loss of essential information and without introducing incorrect grammar. In abridging a title proper, ~~never omit any~~ **none** of the first five words (the first six if the first word is an article) **is omitted**. Omissions are indicated by the mark of omission.

### For older monographic resources:

1930

~~Information such as a statement of responsibility not linguistically part of the title proper, or edition statement, series statement, publication, printing, distribution, etc., information, date or price appearing at the head of the title page or preceding the title proper on a title page substitute is transcribed in the appropriate area, and its position indicated in area 7.~~

Information pertaining to the title and appearing on the prescribed source of information before the title by which the work is commonly identified is included without inversion in the title proper in the description even when the typography indicates the subsidiary nature of such information.

#### *Examples*

Quę contineant duodecim ęneidos libri ... P Virgilij Maronis

Hereafter foloweth a litel boke called Colyn Cloute

1940

Pious invocations, devices, announcements (including epigrams and dedications) are not included unless they constitute the only title or appear to be part of the title proper by typography or sense.

#### *Example*

Hauptschluessel der teutschen vnd italiaenischen Sprache

*Editorial comment:* The title is preceded by the invocation A.M.A.D.

### For continuing resources:

Obvious typographical errors are corrected when transcribing the title proper, and the title as it appears on the continuing resource is given in area 7. In case of doubt whether the spelling of a word or words is correct, the spelling is transcribed as found.

#### *Examples*

1950

Housing starts

*Note:* Title appears on vol. 1, no. 1 as Housing sarts

but

Lakeland librarian [sic]

*Editorial comment:* Title appears as Lakeland lib\*arian.

If the title includes a date, name, number, etc., that varies from issue or part to issue or part, or from iteration to iteration, this date, name, number, etc., is omitted. This omission is indicated by the mark of omission, except when it occurs at the beginning of the title.

*Examples*

- 1960 Report on the ... Conference on Development Objectives and Strategy  
La sidérurgie française en ...  
IFLA CD ...  
*Editorial comment:* On disc~~k~~ label: IFLA CD 2001.
- Frommer's Washington, D.C., on \$ ... a day  
*Editorial comment:* On the title page: Frommer's Washington, D.C., on \$35 a day.
- The annual report of Governor ...  
*Editorial comment:* On the title page: The annual report of Governor Rhodes. The name of the governor changes with each specific term of Office.
- 1970 Tagungsbericht der Österreichischen Gesellschaft für Gefäßschirurgie  
*Editorial comment:* On the title page: 2. Tagungsbericht der Österreichischen Gesellschaft für Gefäßschirurgie.

**For serials:**

If the title proper includes any statement that mentions an earlier title, title absorbed, etc., that may or may not be grammatically linked to the rest of the title, such a statement is not transcribed as part of the title. The mark of omission is not given. Relationships with other resources are given in area 7 ([see 7.2.4](#)).

*Examples*

- The serpentine muse  
*not* The serpentine muse, incorporating the ASH newsletter  
*Note:* Absorbed: The ASH newsletter
- 1980 International gas report  
*not* International gas report, including World gas report  
*Note:* Absorbed: World gas report

**1.1.5.2 Resource~~s~~ without a collective title**

~~1.1.5.2.1 Resource with two or more works without a collective title~~

- When the resource comprises two or more works without a collective title (see 1.1.4.4~~3~~) the titles of the individual works are given in the order indicated by the typography of titles on the prescribed source or sources of information or, if there is no typographical distinction, the sequence of titles on the prescribed source or sources of information. Edition statements associated with individual titles are transcribed with the titles. A linking word or phrase between the titles of the works by the same author as given on the prescribed source of information is retained. (For works by different authors, see 1.5~~4~~.5.11.2.)
- 1990

For resources where text and/or preferred sources of information in two different languages or scripts are presented on separate pages with equal status, each at the “front” of the book with respect to one of the covers, the choice of title proper is at the discretion of the cataloguing agency. The title not chosen as title proper is given as a parallel title (see 1.2.2). A note explaining the format may be given in area 7.

*Examples*

The double-dealer ; Love for love ; The way of the world ; The mourning bride

Flash and filigree ; and, The magic Christian

La petite hutte ; suivi de, Lorsque l'enfant paraît

Romeo and Juliet overture ; and, Capriccio italien

2000

~~Meditation : op. 90 ; Klänge der Stille : op. 91~~

Infancy ; Childhood

~~Dixit Dominus : RV594 ; Stabat mater : RV621 ; Gloria in D major : RV588 ...~~

Electronic writing ; Functional grammar ; Verbal communication ...

初吻；绿化树；男人的一半是女人

Le Western / textes rassemblés et présentés par Henri Agel, Nouvelle édition.  
Évolution et renouveau du western (1962–1968) / par Jean A. Gili

An examination of Dr. Burnet's theory of the earth ... / by J. Keill, The second edition corrected ... . To the whole is annexed A dissertation on the different figures of the coelestial bodies, &c ... / by Mons. de Maupertuis

2010

My very first prayer time book / by Mary Fletcher ; illustrations by Treyer Evans,  
Revised edition. Now I lay me down to sleep / text and pictures by Rex Catto

When the number of individual works is very large, the first three titles may be given, followed by the mark of omission. The complete contents may be given in area 7.

**For older monographic resources:**

The titles of the individual works are given in the order indicated by the sequence of titles on the title page. ~~When the resource contains several title pages, the titles on the other title pages are recorded in area 7.~~ When works additional to those named on the title page appear in the resource, the titles of such works are recorded in area 7.

*Examples*

2020

The floures of philosophie ; with The pleasures of poetrie annexed vnto them ...

The serving-man become a queen. Jockey of the green. The lass of Richmond Hill

The humble petition of a beautiful young lady. The Rvnd. Dr B = rk --- y's answer to the young ladies petition

~~Note: Both titles are caption titles on the same page~~

~~When works additional to those named on the title page appear in the resource, whether or not on pages laid out as title pages, the titles of such works are recorded in area 7.~~

- 2030 In the case **If the numeration of a part** of a multipart monographic resource ~~containing the part numeration within~~ **is an integral part of** the title proper, the numeration of the last part is given following the numeration of the first, enclosed in square brackets after a hyphen.

*Examples*

Prima [-decima] egloga della **B**ucolica di Virgilio

~~Note: Titles on leaves e6, f2, g1, h7, m4 verso: Elegia di Bernardo Pulci a Lorenzo de Medeci per la morte di Cosimo. Bernardus Pulcius florentinus de obitu diue Simonette. Francisci de Arsochis senensis carmen bucolicum egloga prima [-iiii] incipit. Bucolica di Hieronymo Beniuione fiorentino. Bucolica di Iacopo Florino~~

~~Quinti Horati Flacci epistolarum liber primus [-secundus]~~

- 2040 Exceptionally, when the title page and the titles of the individual works do not convey the idea of a collection, or when there are many titles contained in such a resource, the title on the title page is quoted as instructed in the first paragraph of 1.1.5.2.1 and the character of the contents is conveyed in area 7. ~~Optionally, the titles of the constituent, individual works are given in area 7.~~

*Examples*

~~Anno Regni Georgii II. Regis ... quinto. At the Parliament begun ... the twenty thirteenth of January, 1731. : being the fifth session of this present Parliament~~

~~Note: A collection of Acts of Parliament enacted in 1732.~~

- 2050 ~~Almanach des dames pour l'année 1830~~  
~~Note: A collection of diverse material. — Contents: Almanach för året efter frälsarens Christi födelse, 1830 ; Vues des divers châteaux en Suède, avec description, 1829 ; Poésies fugitives~~

### 1.1.5.3 Common and dependent titles

#### **1.1.5.3.1 Dependent titles as part of the title proper**

- 2060 ~~In the case of a resource with~~ **If** a title proper ~~consisting~~ **consists** of a common title and a dependent title, the first element transcribed is the common title, which is followed by a dependent title designation, or a dependent title, or both. The dependent title is linked directly to its common title (for cases in which other title information ~~or a statement of responsibility~~ must be interposed, see 1.4.3.4.6, 1.5.5.12). **A** ~~d~~ **Dependent title(s)** appearing on the resource but not on ~~the~~ **a** prescribed source of information ~~are~~ **is** given in square brackets.

*Examples for continuing resources*

*Sections:*

Acta biologica. Protozoa

Études et documents. Série C

Journal of polymer sciences. Part A, General paper

*Section with subsections:*

Analele Universității București. Seria științe sociale. Estetică

Pubblicazioni dell'Università cattolica del Sacro Cuore. Contributi. Serie 3a, Varia

2070

*Supplements:*

Dansk periodicafortegnelse. Supplement

La lettre du maire. Textes et documents

The Baker Street journal. Christmas annual

*Subseries:*

Collection Armand Colin. Section de philosophie

Studia religiosa Helvetica. Series altera

Les sources inédites de l'histoire du Maroc de 1530 à 1845. Première série, Dynastie Saadienne

Encyclopedia of archaeology. Part 2, History and discoveries

2080

**1.1.5.3.2 Series designations as part of the numbering**

For serials, any number or other information relating to a chronological designation is not transcribed as a dependent title but is given in area 3 (see 3.3.8).

*Example*

Nuovo archivio veneto

In area 3: Ser. 2, v. 1 (1891)-ser. 2, v. 20 (1900) ; ser. 3, v. 1 (1901)-ser. 3, v. 42 (1921)

Editorial comment: Title not transcribed as Nuovo archivio veneto. Ser. 2, or Nuovo archivio Veneto. Ser. 3

**1.1.5.4 Displayed text without a title ~~proper~~**

2090

When the resource has a displayed text but no title ~~proper~~ (as in the case of some broadsheets, some posters, wallcharts, etc.), the text is transcribed either in full or in an abridged form as the title proper.

Omission of complete phrases or sentences is not indicated; abridgement of phrases, sentences, or words is indicated by the mark of omission.

The order of statements in the transcription is determined by reference to the typography and the layout of the statements on the resource. Important parts of the content of the text, such as the names of products or organizations and the names, places and dates of events, are retained.

Additional information on these or any other aspect of the content may be given in area 7.

Punctuation is at the discretion of the cataloguing agency, except that combinations of symbols and spacing that have a special function ~~within this area of the ISBD outline~~ in ISBD descriptions are to be avoided.

- 2100 *Examples*
- Emprunt national 1920 – Souscrivez – Banque de Paris et des Pays-Bas
- Tales of wonder, no. 3 – The horror in the telescope, by Edmond Hamilton  
*Note:* Transcription of text from enlarged reproduction of magazine cover
- 'Comment trouvez-vous ce petit vin-là ...'  
*Note:* Caption title abridged
- Court cases 1969 ... by counties in southeastern Connecticut
- I am a jolly huntsman| My voice is shrill and clear  
*Note:* The title is taken from the opening lines of the poem
- For older monographic resources:**
- 2110 Omission or abridgement is indicated by the mark of omission. The order of statements in the transcription is determined by the sequence of information on the resource.

#### 1.1.6 Variant titles

~~Variant titles (other than parallel titles, see 1.3) not selected as title proper are treated as other title information when they appear on the prescribed source of information. Variant titles appearing elsewhere on the resource may be given in area 7.~~

##### *Examples*

- ~~Die Sage von den Nibelungen : Nibelungenlied~~
- ~~Voyage to Venus : Perelandra~~
- ~~The devils : The possessed~~
- 2120 Concerto op. 7,7 : Konzert A-Dur für Streichorchester
- Sinfonie Nr. 3 : Eroica
- 第三交响曲 : 英雄
- ~~Barbara~~  
~~*Note:* Sleeve title: Barbara, l'aigle noir~~
- For older monographic resources:**
- ~~Variant titles and original titles in the language of the title proper (other than parallel titles, see 1.3), not selected as title proper are treated as other title information when they appear on the title page. Variant titles appearing elsewhere on the resource are given in area 7.~~
- 2130 *Examples*
- ~~Hodoegus : Igazsagra vezerlö kalauz~~

~~Seculum Davidicum redivivum : the divine right of the revolution-  
scripturally and rationally evinced and applied~~

~~*Editorial comment:* The English title is by typography clearly subsidiary to the Latin one~~

~~Phiála sanctorum ... Modlitby nábožné ...~~

~~*Editorial comment:* The Biblical reference "Apocal.5" is omitted~~

#### **For continuing resources:**

2140 Variant titles (other than parallel titles, see 1.3) not selected as title proper, whether appearing on the prescribed sources of information or in other parts of the resource, are given in area 7 (see 7.1.1.3).

#### **For cartographic resources:**

Variant titles (other than parallel titles, see 1.3) not selected as title proper may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.1.3).

#### **For electronic resources:**

File names not selected as title proper (see 1.1.1) may be given in area 7 when they appear on the prescribed source of information.

### **1.1.7.6 Changes in the title proper**

Changes in the title proper may involve making a new description (see 0.A.2.46, 7.1.1.65).

2150 **For serials:**

A new description is made if a major change in the title proper occurs (see 0.2.4).

If a minor change in the title proper occurs, a note on the change is made if considered important to users of the catalogue (see 7.1.1.6.1).

When a hitherto dependent title of a subseries becomes independent, the subseries is described under the independent title that has become its title proper. In this case the title of the main series is given in area 6 and the subseries designation, if any, as the numbering within the series.

#### *Examples*

2160 ~~Studia latina Upsaliensia~~  
~~*In area 6:* (Acta Universitatis Upsaliensis)~~

~~British journal of applied physics~~  
~~*In area 6:* (Journal of physics ; D)~~

~~De puiterveense Helleveeg~~  
~~*In area 6:* (Toneelspeelen ; t. 6)~~

**For supplements and inserts/insets:**

When the hitherto dependent title of a supplement or an inset becomes independent, the supplement or inset is described under this independent title that has become its title proper. The title of the main continuing resource is given in area 7 (see 7.2.4.8).

**For integrating resources:**

A new description is not made and the title proper is replaced in the existing description with the new title. The earlier title is given in area 7 (see 7.1.1.6.2).

**For multipart monographic resources:**

If a change in the title proper occurs, a note on the change is made if it is considered important to users of the catalogue. A new description is not made.

2170



## 1.2 General material designation<sup>19</sup>

### 1.2.1 Introductory note

The purpose of the general material designation is to indicate, in general terms and at an early point in the description, the class of material to which the resource belongs.

2180 The general material designation is optional, but its inclusion is useful in integrated catalogues or bibliographies (i.e. a catalogue that contains records for more than one type of resource):

#### *Examples*

La mer [Notated music] ; Khamma ; Rhapsody for clarinet and orchestra / Claude-Debussy

La mer [Sound recording] ; Khamma ; Rhapsody for clarinet and orchestra / Claude-Debussy

**1.2.2** — If given, the general material designation is given immediately after the title proper. It is given in the language and script chosen by the cataloguing agency.

#### *Example*

2190 Les trois mousquetaires [Printed text]

**1.2.3** — When the resource comprises a primary component with a subsidiary component(s) not of the same general material category (e.g. a resource in printed form accompanied by a sound disc or a map, a score accompanied by a sound disc, a filmstrip accompanied by a descriptive leaflet, a sound disc accompanied by a leaflet and a wallchart, an electronic resource accompanied by a manual and a wallchart), the general material designation refers only to the primary component.

#### *Examples*

Examining documents [Visual projection]

*Note:* Slides with accompanying sound, teacher's guides, workbooks and quiz-questions

2200 E-Z math [Electronic resource]

*Note:* Software with accompanying teacher's guides, student manuals and flash card

**1.2.4** — When the resource comprises components belonging to two or more general material categories, no one of which is predominant (e.g. a collection of teaching materials including a sound recording, filmstrips and wallcharts), the general material designation *Multimedia resource* or its equivalent in another language and/or script may be used as appropriate (see definitions in Glossary).

### 1.2.5 Resource without a collective title

When the resource comprises two or more works without a collective title (see 1.1.4.4), the general material designation, if given, is given after the first title.

<sup>19</sup> The general material designation is being considered further for revision. Proposals for change will be considered by the ISBD Review Group.

*Examples*

- 2210 ~~Follia [Notated music] ; Bewegungen / Klaas de Vries. Muziek II / Peter Jan-  
Wagemans~~
- ~~A Shropshire lad [Sound recording] ; The banks of green willow ; Two English idylls /  
George Butterworth. Variations on a theme of Frank Bridge, op. 10 / Benjamin-  
Britten ; Academy of St. Martin in the Fields ; directed by Neville Marriner~~
- ~~Building economics [Electronic resource] ; Regulatory technology / Hiram Merritt.  
Construction standards / Theodore McGoldrick~~
- ~~Tax writer [Electronic resource] ; Managing income ; Taking stock / Donald Gaudreau~~
- 中华人民共和国国歌 [Sound recording] / 田汉词 ; 聂耳曲. 国际歌 / 欧仁·鲍迪埃词 ;  
比尔·狄盖特曲

2220

## 1.3.2 Parallel title(s)

### Introductory note

**1.2.1** A parallel title consists of a title in another language and/or script than the title proper and presented as an equivalent of the title proper on the prescribed source(s) or sources of information. When a parallel title is linguistically linked to another part of the description, it is not treated as a parallel title.

**1.3.1** A resource may have one or more parallel titles.

A parallel title can take the same various forms as the title proper (see 1.1.3).

### Examples

- 2230 European journal of cancer [Printed text] = Journal européen de cancérologie = Europäische Zeitschrift für Cancerologie  
 International map of natural gas fields in Europe [Cartographic resource] = Carte internationale des champs de gaz naturel en Europe  
 Alles in allem [Printed text] = Tout compte fait  
 Новости систематики высших растений [Printed text] = Novitates systematicae plantarum vascularium  
 Die Schweiz aus der Vogelschau [Cartographic resource] = La Suisse vue à vol d'oiseau = La Svizzera a volo d'uccello = A bird's eye view of Switzerland
- 2240 英法汉小词典 [Printed text] = A pocket English-French-Chinese dictionary = Dictionnaire anglais-français-chinois de poche  
 歌舞伎 [Printed text] = Kabuki  
 아리랑 [Sound recording] = Arirang

~~When a parallel title is linguistically linked to another part of the description, it is not treated as a parallel title.~~

**1.3.2.2** When on the prescribed source of information there are titles in more than one language and/or script, the each title(s) not chosen as title proper (see 1.1.4.1.2, 1.1.4.2) may be transcribed as a parallel title(s). Parallel titles are included when necessary for identification or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue.

### Examples

- 2250 Album for the young [Notated music] = Album für die Jugend  
 Herfra til evigheden [Motion picture] = From here to eternity  
 Beyond horizons [Electronic resource] = Allende los horizontes  
 세계를 간다 [Videorecording] = Video world tour guide

**1.2.3** ~~In the case of~~ **For** tête-bêche **or back-to-back** printed textual resources where text and title pages in two different languages and/or scripts are presented on separate pages with equal status (see 1.1.4.2.2), the title not chosen as title proper is given as a parallel title.

**1.3.3** ~~———— A parallel title can take the same various forms as the title proper (see 1.1.3).~~

~~When a statement of responsibility, a statement of other title information, or a statement relating to the publication, production, distribution, etc., area can be linguistically linked to a parallel title, it is transcribed as part of the parallel title.~~

2260

*Examples*

~~Ἰνστιτούτα Θεοφίλου Ἀντικλήσσορος = Institutiones iuris ciuilis in graecam linguam per Theophilum Antecessorem olim traductae ac fusissime planissimeque explicate~~

~~Νόννου Πανοπολίτου Διονυσιακά = Nonni Panopolitae Dionysiaca : nunc primum in lucem edita, ex bibliotheca Ioannis Sambuci Pannonij~~

**1.3.2.4** The original title in a language other than that of the title proper appearing on the prescribed source of information and not linguistically linked to other descriptive elements (for example, as an alternative title (see 1.1.3.4); as part of other title information (see 1.4.1); as part of a statement of responsibility (see 1.5.3.4); or as part of an edition statement (see area 2)) may be treated as a parallel title.

2270

*Examples*

Loser wins [~~Printed text~~] = Les séquestrés d'Altona

Tétralogie [~~Notated music~~] = Der Ring des Nibelungen

Alexandri Aphrodisiensis in Sophisticos Aristotelis elenchos commentaria =  
Ἀλεξάνδρου Ἀφροδισιέως ἀποσημειώσεις εἰς τοὺς σοφιστικὸς ἐλέγχους

The original title in a language other than that of the title proper that does not appear on the prescribed source of information may be given in area 7 (see 7.2.4.1).

*Example*

Das Zeitalter der Atomkraft [~~Printed text~~]

~~Note: Translation of: The era of atomic power~~

2280

~~Editorial comment: Original title on verso of title page~~

For the original title in the language of the title proper, see 1.4.3.1.

**1.3.2.5 Transcription**

**1.3.2.5.1** If a parallel title appearing on the prescribed source of information is given, it is transcribed exactly as to wording, but not necessarily as to capitalization and punctuation. When a statement of responsibility, a statement of other title information, or a statement relating to the publication, production, distribution, etc., area can be linguistically linked to a parallel title, it is transcribed as part of the parallel title.

*Examples*

Breathless [~~Videorecording~~] = À bout de souffle

2290

Pièces de clavecin [~~Notated music~~] = The complete harpsichord suites

French colonies in America [~~Visual projection~~] = Colonies françaises d'Amérique

History of the French language [~~Electronic resource~~] = Histoire de la langue française

*Exceptionally*, a parallel title may be abridged. Omissions are indicated by the mark of omission.

The instructions in 1.1.5.1 are followed with regard to abridging lengthy parallel titles, omitting dates, numbers, etc., and the transcription of obvious typographical errors.

**1.32.5.2** When a prescribed source of information bears more than one parallel title, these titles, if given, are transcribed in the order indicated by the typography of statements on the prescribed source of information or, if there is no typographical distinction, by the sequence of statements on the prescribed source of information.

2300

*Examples*

Majaladda xeerka [~~Printed text~~] = Majallat al-qānūn = Law quarterly review

Swiss financial year book [~~Printed text~~] = Schweizerisches Finanz-Jahrbuch = Annuaire financier suisse = Annuario finanziario svizzero

Le nozze di Figaro [~~Notated music~~] = Die Hochzeit des Figaro = The marriage of Figaro

Composizioni per liuto [~~Notated music~~] = Lute compositions = Lautenstücke

Quattro concerti per l'organo ed altri stromenti [~~Sound recording~~] = Vier Orgelkonzerte = Four organ concertos = Quatre concertos pour orgue

Snow White and Red Rose [~~Electronic resource~~] = Blancanieves y Rosaraja = Schneewittchen und Rosenroth

2310

**For older monographic resources:**

When a prescribed source of information bears more than one parallel title, these titles, if given, are transcribed in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information. Any other information pertaining to the title and statement of responsibility area, between a title proper and a parallel title, or between parallel titles, is transcribed in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information and is preceded by the appropriate prescribed punctuation.

*Example*

2320

Joh. Amos Comenii Orbis sensualium pictus trilinguis, hoc est Omnium fundamentalium in mundo rerum & in vita actionum pictura et nomenclatura Latina, Germanica & Hungarica : cum titulorum juxta atq[ue] vocabulorum indice = Die sichtbare Welt in dreyen Sprachen, Das ist Aller Vornehmsten Welt-Dinge und Lebens-Verrichtungen Vorbildung und Lateinische, Deutsche und Vngarische Benamung : sampt einem Tittel- und Wörter-Register = A' Látható világ háromféle nyelven, az-az Minden derekassab ez világon lévő dolgoknak és az életben való cselekedeteknek le-ábrázolása és Deák, Német és Magyar megnevezése : A' fellyül való írásoknak és szóknak laystromával

2330 **1.3.2.5.3** Parallel titles appearing on sources of information not selected as the prescribed source of information may be given in square brackets in area 1 or may be given in area 7. Parallel titles appearing elsewhere on the resource may only be given in area 7.

#### 1.3.2.5.4 Resources without a collective title

When the resource comprises two or more works without a collective title (see 1.1.4.4.5.2), and when each or any of the individual works has a parallel title or titles, ~~the any parallel title(s), if that is given, is (are)~~ given following the titles to which ~~they apply~~ **it applies**.

##### *Examples*

The enticing products of France [~~Visual projection~~] = Les produits séduisants de la France ; Grape harvesting in Languedoc = La vendange en Languedoc

2340 Du er ikke alene [~~Motion picture~~] = You are not alone ; Opname = In for treatment

Sur le mariage [~~Printed text~~] = Über die Ehe ; Lessing ; Freud et la pensée moderne = Freud in der modernen Geistesgeschichte ; Mon temps = Meine Zeit

De l'autre côté du miroir et de ce que Alice y trouva [~~Printed text~~] = Through the looking glass and what Alice found there ; La chasse au Snark = The hunting of the Snark

#### **For older monographic resources:**

When the resource comprises two or more works without a collective title (~~see 1.1.4.4~~), and when each or any of the individual works has a parallel title or titles, the parallel titles are given in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the resource.

2350 When there is one prescribed source of information applying to the whole resource, the parallel titles are given in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information. When there is no prescribed source of information applying to the whole resource, but works contained in it have their own prescribed sources of information that are used collectively as a single source of information, the parallel titles are given in the order indicated by the sequence of information on each prescribed source of information.

##### *Example*

2360 Ταδε ενεστιν εν τωδε τω βιβλιω. Λουκιανου. Φιλοστράτου Είκονες ; του  
αύτου Ἡρωικά ; του αύτου Βίοι σοφιστων. Φιλοστράτου Νεωτέρου  
Είκωνες Καλλιστράτου Εκφάσεις = Qve hoc volvmine continentvr.  
Luciani Opera. Icones Philostrati ; eiusdem Heroica ; eiusdem Uitae  
sophistarum. Icones Iunioris Philostrati. Descriptiones Callistrati ...

Any other information pertaining to the title and statement of responsibility area that may intervene between a title of a work and its parallel title, or between parallel titles, if given, is transcribed in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information and is preceded by the appropriate prescribed punctuation.

*Example*

2370

Directio methodica processus iudicarii iuris consuetudinarii inclyti Regni Hungariae / per M. Joannem Kithonich de Koztanicza ... = Rövid igazgatas a' nemes Magyar Orszagnak es hozzá, tartozó Részeknek szokott törvény folyasirol / melyet deákbol magyar nyelvre fordított Kaszoni Janos

**1.32.5.5 Parallel common titles and dependent titles-**

~~In the case of a resource with a~~ **If the** title proper **is** made up of **a** common title(s) and **a** dependent title(s) **or titles**, ~~the~~ **any** parallel common title(s) and ~~the~~ parallel dependent title(s), **if that is** given, ~~are~~ **is** transcribed following the common title and dependent title.

*Examples*

2380

Godišen zbornik na Zemjodelsko-šumarskiot fakultet na Univerzitetot vo Skopje.  
Zemjodelstvo [~~Printed text~~] = Annuaire de la Faculté d'agriculture et de sylviculture de l'Université de Skopje. Agriculture

Dansk periodicafortegnelse. Supplement [~~Printed text~~] = The Danish national bibliography. Serials. Supplement

中国动物志. 昆虫纲. 第四十六卷, 膜翅目. 茧蜂科(四). 窄径茧蜂亚科 [~~Printed text~~] =  
Fauna sinica. Insecta. Vol. 46, Hymenoptera. Braconidae (IV). Agathidinae

**1.32.5.6 Changes in the parallel title in continuing resources and multipart monographic resources****For serials and  
For multipart monographic resources:**

2390

If a parallel title is added, omitted, or changed on subsequent issues or parts, a note of such changes is given in area 7 (see 7.1.3) when considered important to users of the catalogue.

**For integrating resources:**

If a parallel title is added, omitted, or changed on subsequent iterations, the description is changed to reflect the latest iteration and the earlier parallel titles are given in area 7 (see 7.1.3) when considered important to users of the catalogue.



### 1.4.3 Other title information

#### Introductory note

Other title information consists of a word or phrase, or a group of characters, appearing in conjunction with and subordinate to the title proper, a parallel title or titles of individual works contained in the resource. Other title information can include variant titles on the preferred source of information not chosen as the title proper.

2400

#### Examples

Basse vallée de l'Aude, exploitation des aquifères, risques de pollution [~~Cartographic resource~~] : situation en 1972

Edgar Degas [~~Printed text~~] : pastels, lavis, gouaches, esquisses

Les plaideurs [~~Printed text~~] : comédie

Motor road map of South-East England [~~Cartographic resource~~] : showing trunk and other classified roads

Bilder einer Ausstellung [~~Notated music~~] : zehn Stücke für Klavier

2410

Klavierkonzert in A, KV 414 [~~Notated music~~] : Ausgabe für Klavier, 2 Violinen, Viola und Violoncello

Petrushka [~~Sound recording~~] : revised version, 1947

WWW.hr [~~Electronic resource~~] : Croatian homepage since 1994 / editor in chief Gordan Gledec

Le Louvre [~~Electronic resource~~] : peintures & palais

Léonard de Vinci [~~Motion picture~~] : géant de la Renaissance

Dynamics of a molecule in a cage [~~Motion picture~~] : CH<sub>4</sub> in NaA Zeolite

Abbado in Berlin [~~Videorecording~~] : the first year

Almageste [~~Videorecording~~] : voyage céleste sur ordinateur

Royalists and puritans [~~Graphic~~] : 1635-1660

2420

Sibilla Frigia [~~Graphic~~] : vidi leccelso idio che fragellare

アジア語楽紀行 [~~Printed text~~] : 旅するタイ語

語楽紀行アジア [~~Videorecording~~] : 語タイする旅

김여행느 오지체험 [~~Videorecording~~] : 삼척 내미로 마을

#### For continuing resources:

~~For continuing resources other than updating looseleaves, other title information is omitted from the description unless considered important to users of the catalogue, or it may be abridged. If omitted from the description, other title information may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.3).~~

2430 ~~When the title proper consists only of the name of a corporate body (see 1.1.3.2), and when in such cases additional information on the nature or content of the resource would be useful, this information may be given as other title information in square brackets when appearing on the resource, and in area 7 when taken from outside the resource (see 7.1.3).~~

*Example*

~~Société d'études de la province de Cambrai [Printed text] : [bulletin]~~

**For updating looseleaves:**

~~Other title information is included when necessary for identification or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue. Other title information consisting solely of words relating to the currency of the contents is not included.~~

2440 **1.4.3.1** ~~The original title of a work in the same language as the title proper is treated as other title information when it appears on the prescribed source of information (see also 1.1.6).~~

*Example*

~~Die Sage von den Nibelungen [Printed text] : Nibelungenlied~~

Variant titles (other than parallel titles) not selected as title proper but found on the same source as the title proper, including the original title in the language of the title proper, are treated as other title information. Variant titles appearing elsewhere on the resource may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.1.3).

Examples

Die Sage von den Nibelungen : Nibelungenlied

Voyage to Venus : Perelandra

The devils : The possessed

2450 Concerto op. 7,7 : Konzert A-Dur für Streichorchester

Sinfonie Nr. 3 : Eroica

第三交响曲 : 英雄

but

Barbara

Note: Sleeve title: Barbara, l'aigle noir

**1.4.3.2** A statement of other title information can include a statement of responsibility, the name of a publisher, or details relating to other descriptive elements (e.g. an edition statement) when such a statement is linguistically an integral part of the other title information.

2460 Any information appearing as other title information that includes one of the ~~required~~ mandatory elements (e.g. a statement of responsibility) is included either as other title information or elsewhere in the ~~record~~ description. Additional other title information is included when necessary for identification or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue.

*Examples*

In search of light ~~[Printed text]~~ : the broadcasts of Edward R. Murrow, 1938–1961

- 2470 The psychology of second language learning [~~Printed text~~] : papers from the Second International Conference of Applied Linguistics, Cambridge, 8–12 September 1969
- Heil Harris! [~~Printed text~~] : a novel based on the television series “The Avengers”
- Le encicliche sociali di Leone XIII e Pio XI [~~Printed text~~] : testo latino e traduzione italiana della “Rerum novarum” e della “Quadragesimo anno” con riferimenti ad altri documenti pontifici
- The greenwood tree [~~Printed text~~] : newsletter of the Somerset and Dorset Family History Society
- Esquisse géologique de la Thakkola, Népal central [~~Printed text~~] : missions géologiques du C.N.R.S.
- Black holes [~~Electronic resource~~] : Sidney Owen's space games
- Motor road map of South-East England [~~Cartographic resource~~] : showing trunk and other classified roads
- 21世纪的信息资源编目 [~~Printed text~~] : 第一届全国文献编目工作研讨会论文集

#### **For older monographic resources:**

- 2480 ~~Recording information in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information may also result in an alternative title or details of appendices or other supplementary matter (see also 1.5.4.4) being given as other title information.~~

#### *Examples*

- 2490 ~~Les pommes de terre, considérées relativement à la santé & à l'économie [~~Printed text~~] : ouvrage dans lequel on traite aussi du froment & du riz~~
- ~~Discours sur la nécessité de l'étude de l'architecture [~~Printed text~~] : dans lequel on essaye de prouver combien il est important pour le progrès des arts que les hommes en place en acquièrent les connoissances élémentaires~~
- ~~An exposition vpon the Prophet Ionah [~~Printed text~~] : contained in certain sermons, preached in S. Maries Church in Oxford~~
- ~~Théâtre de Pierre Corneille [~~Printed text~~] : avec des commentaires et autres morceaux intéressans~~

### **1.3.3 Special cases of other title information**

#### **1.3.3.1 Initials and acronyms**

- 2500 ~~1.4.3~~ **If the expanded form of a title proper that consists of a set of initials or an acronym and an expanded form appears on the prescribed source of information, the expanded form is treated as other title information when the expanded form appears on the prescribed source of information.**

*Examples*

ISBD(CM) [~~Printed text~~] : international standard bibliographic description for cartographic materials

SPSS [~~Electronic resource~~] : statistical package for the social sciences

When the expanded form is treated as the title proper (see also 1.1.3.3, [1.1.4.1.1](#)), the set of initials or the acronym present on the prescribed source of information is treated as other title information.

*Example*

Cahiers de l'Institut de linguistique de Louvain [~~Printed text~~] : CILL

**For continuing resources:**

2510 When the title proper consists of or includes a set of initials or an acronym (see also 1.1.3.3), and an expanded form is available from a source other than the prescribed source of information, the expanded form is not treated as other title information, but it may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.1.4).

*Example*

~~Collection GAP~~ [~~Printed text~~]

*Note:* Expanded form of title: ~~Collection clés de l'amélioration personnelle~~

**1.4.3.4.2 Incomplete or ambiguous titles**

When the title is incomplete or ambiguous it may be completed by additional information supplied from the content of the resource. This addition, enclosed in square brackets, is treated as other title information.

2520 *Examples*

Kauheat karnevaalit [~~Printed text~~] : [opiskelijaliike Tampereen Yliopistossa]

Stephen Bone [~~Printed text~~] : [an exhibition catalogue] 8th–31st October, 1986

I våra hus [~~Printed text~~] : [dikter]

Vegetation [~~Cartographic resource~~] : [in Botswana]

Département de l'Yonne [~~Cartographic resource~~] : [carte routière]

Florida [~~Cartographic resource~~] : [tourist map]

Street map of Flagstaff, Arizona [~~Cartographic resource~~] : [walking tours]

[Société d'études de la province de Cambrai](#) : [bulletin]

**1.4.3.4 Transcription**

2530 **1.4.3.4.1** If a statement of other title information is given, it is transcribed following the title to which it applies (see also 1.4.4.6, 1.4.4.7, 1.4.4.8).

**1.4.3.4.2** If a statement of other title information is given, it is transcribed exactly as to wording, but not necessarily as to capitalization or punctuation. *Exceptionally*, other title information may be abridged.

When abridging other title information, ~~do not omit any~~ **none** of the first five words (the first six words if the first word is an article) **is omitted**. Omissions are indicated by the mark of omission.

**For continuing resources:**

For continuing resources other than updating looseleaves, other title information is omitted from the description unless considered important to users of the catalogue, or it may be abridged. If omitted from the description, other title information may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.3).

2540

The instructions in 1.1.5.1 are followed with regard to abridging lengthy other title information, omitting dates, numbers, etc., and transcribing obvious typographical errors.

**For updating looseleaves:**

Other title information is included when necessary for identification or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue. Other title information consisting solely of words relating to the currency of the contents is not included.

**1.43.4.3** A statement of other title information appearing on the prescribed source of information before the title proper may be transcribed following the title proper when this is linguistically or otherwise possible. When this is not possible, the statement may be given in area 7 ~~(see 7.1.3)~~.

2550

*Examples*

~~"Je roule sans accident!" [Printed text]~~

~~Note: At head of title: "Un professionnel de l'auto vous dit ..."~~

~~Tam-Tam [Notated music] : aus dem Repertoire von Nico Palermo~~

~~Editorial comment: "Aus dem Repertoire von Nico Palermo" appears at the head of the title page.~~

~~Women's track and field [Visual projection]~~

~~Note: At head of title: Here are your color slides ...~~

**For older monographic resources:**

Other title information appearing on the preferred source of information before the title proper is transcribed before the title proper.

2560

~~For the transcription of other title information preceding the most prominent title on the prescribed source of information, see 1.1.5.1.~~

~~An alternative form of title that begins after other title information is treated as other title information.~~

*Example*

~~A Christian funeral. [Printed text] : A brief essay on that case, what should be the behaviour of a Christian at a funeral? : Or, some directions how to regulate a funeral by the rules of religion;~~

~~Editorial comment: punctuation of the original retained~~

2570 **1.43.4.4** When a prescribed source of information bears more than one statement constituting other title information, these statements, if given, are transcribed in the order indicated by the typography of

statements on the prescribed source of information or, if there is no typographical distinction, the sequence of statements on the prescribed source of information.

### Examples

2580

Spirit of an age [~~Printed text~~] : New Zealand in the seventies : essays in honour of W.B. Sutch

Distribution of principal kinds of soils [~~Cartographic resource~~] : orders, suborders and great groups : National Soil Survey classification of 1967

~~6 succès d'Elvis Presley~~ [~~Notated music~~] : album : piano, chant et guitare

Animal stories [~~Sound recording~~] : dramatized readings : a recorded anthology

The Hammons family [~~Sound recording~~] : a study of a West Virginia family's traditions : from the Archive of Folk Song

Offshore oil drilling [~~Electronic resource~~] : data analysis : from Neel Oil Research Council

联邦调查局档案 [~~Printed text~~] : FBI : 帝国之中的帝国 霸权之上的霸权

オールドファッション : 普通の会話 : 東京ステーションホテルにて

문화재를 배움시다 [~~Electronic resource~~] : 중요무형문화재

천국의 계단 : 그리고 다시는 울지 않았다 : 최인호장편소설

### For older monographic resources:

2590

If a statement of other title information is given, it is transcribed in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information. This may result in an alternative title or details of appendices or other supplementary matter being given as other title information (see also 1.4.4.4).

A Christian funeral : a brief essay on that case, what should be the behaviour of a Christian at a funeral? : or, some directions how to regulate a funeral by the rules of religion

### 1.4.3.4.5 Resources without a collective title

2600

**1.4.3.4.5.1** When a resource has no collective title (see 1.1.4.4.5.2), and when there are statements of other title information relating to one or more of the titles of individual works present, these statements, if given, are transcribed following the titles to which they apply.

### Examples

Youth [~~Printed text~~] : a narrative ; Heart of darkness ; The end of the tether

Le chevalier du guet [~~Notated music~~] : chanson folklorique française ; Qui frappe ici ? : Louisiane

Leonardo da Vinci [~~Visual projection~~] : a pictorial biography ; The Medici : power and patronage in Renaissance Florence

- 2610 Special effects [~~Electronic resource~~] : morphing and warping ; 3-D modeling : generic primitives and other basic tools
- Some effects of geographical factors in combat simulations [~~Electronic resource~~] : presentation / Zvonimir Bratun. Model Horus as a training method in Slovenian Armed Forces : presentation ; Model Horus as a training method in Slovenian Army / Dušan Marincic

Meditation : op. 90 ; Klänge der Stille : op. 91

Dixit Dominus : RV594 ; Stabat mater : RV621 ; Gloria in D major : RV588 ...

#### For older monographic resources:

~~These s~~Statements, if given, of other title information are transcribed in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information. This applies even if the other title information relates to more than one work.

#### Examples

- 2620 Les Akanças [~~Printed text~~] : prologue mélo-dramatique, en un acte et en prose ; suivi d'Des Espagnols dans la Floride : pantomime en trois actes et à spectacle
- Vortigern [~~Printed text~~] : an historical tragedy, in five acts ... ; and Henry the Second : an historical drama

**1.43.4.5.2** A statement on the prescribed source of information constituting other title information and relating to more than one work by the same author, composer, etc., if given, is transcribed following the titles of the works to which it applies. For notated music and sound recording resources, if the statement would normally be part of the title proper (see 1.1.3.5), it is given as other title information. Otherwise, for example, if the works by one author, composer, etc., are not consecutive, the statement may be given in area 7.

2630

When the relationship between the statement constituting other title information and the titles of the individual works is not clear, brief explanatory words may be added enclosed in square brackets. Alternatively, the statement of other title information may be given in area 7.

#### Examples

- Endstation Sehnsucht [~~Printed text~~] ; Die Glasmengerie : zwei Theaterstücke
- Eight variations in G major K. 24 [~~Notated music~~] ; Seven variations in D major K. 25 : for piano
- Lied auf dem Dach [~~Notated music~~] ; Tafelmusik ; Ausklang : für großes Orchester
- Pow! [~~Electronic resource~~] ; Zap it : two adventure games / Rick Held
- 2640 Die grosse Liebe ; Wie sie starben : [beide umfassen] Dichter- und Frauen-Porträts

**1.43.4.5.3** A statement on the prescribed source of information constituting other title information and relating to all the works in a resource, although they are by different authors, composers, etc., may be given in area 7.

~~1.4.4.5.4~~ When the relationship between the statement constituting other title information and the titles of the individual works is not clear, brief explanatory words may be added enclosed in square brackets. Alternatively, the statement of other title information may be given in area 7.

*Example*

~~Die grosse Liebe [Printed text] ; Wie sie starben : [beide umfassen] Dichter und Frauen-Porträts~~

2650 **1.4.3.4.6 Common and dependent titles**

When the title proper consists of a common and a dependent title (see 1.1.5.3), the statement of other title information referring to the title proper, if given, is given following the title proper as a whole. Individual statements of other title information, if given, are given following the title(s) or titles to which they apply. In case of doubt, a statement of other title information may be given following the title proper.

*Examples*

~~Stock selection. Portfolios [Electronic resource] : money management~~

~~Jigsaw puzzles [Visual projection] : a visual survey. Children's art : a decade of examples~~

2660 Bibliographie de la France. Biblio [Printed text] : journal officiel du livre français paraissant tous les mercredis. 1ère partie, Bibliographie officielle : publications reçues par le Service du dépôt légal

~~Periodica polytechnica [Printed text] : contributions to international technical sciences published by the Technical University of Budapest. Transportation engineering~~

~~Publications of the Institute. Historical studies. Series III, Renaissance Europe [Printed text] : texts and commentaries~~

~~In case of doubt, a statement of other title information may be given following the title proper.~~

**For older monographic resources:**

2670 When the title proper consists of a common title and a dependent title (see 1.1.5.3), individual statements of other title information, if given, are given in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information.

**1.4.3.4.7 Parallel titles and parallel other title information**

**1.4.3.4.7.1** When a prescribed source of information bears one or more parallel titles and other title information in more than one language and/or script, each statement of other title information, if given, follows the title to which it is linguistically related.

Statements of other title information that do not apply to the title proper or to a parallel title(s) may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.3).

*Examples*

On tour [Printed text] : 10 British jewellers in Germany and Australia = Auf Tournee : zehn britische Goldschmiede in Deutschland und Australien

- 2680 12 millions d'immigrés : feuille de lutte des travailleurs immigrés en Europe = 12 milhões de imigrados : folha de luta dos operários imigrados na Europa
- Security : information and administrative management = Sécurité : gestion de l'information et gestion administrative
- Kleine Meditationen [~~Notated music~~] : für Streichtrio and Harfe = Short meditations : for string trio and harp
- Klavier-Quintett [~~Notated music~~] : Forellen-Quintett = Piano quintet : Trout quintet = Quintette avec piano : Quintette "La truite"
- Apocalypse de Jean [~~Sound recording~~] : lecture = Apocalyps [sic] of John : a reading
- Vienna [~~Electronic resource~~] : hotel and tourist guide = Wien : Hotel- und Reiseführer
- 2690 La Birmanie : images du bouddhisme vivant = Burma : images of living Buddhism
- Les manuscrits datés [~~Printed text~~] : premier bilan et perspectives : Neuchâtel, 1983 = Die datierten Handschriften : erste Bilanz und Perspektiven : Neuenburg, 1983
- Mein erster Sor [~~Notated music~~] : Sammlung leichter Gitarrensoli = My first Sor : selection of easy guitar-solos = Il mio primo Sor : raccolta di facili assoli per chitarra
- 挑战黑客 [~~Printed text~~] : 网络安全的最终解决方案 = Hacker proof : the ultimate guide to network security

#### For older monographic resources:

Each statement of other title information, if given, follows the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information.

- 2700 *Example*

La Didone abbandonata [~~Printed text~~] : dramma per musica da recitarsi in St. Pieterburgo nel giorno [blank space] febraro 1766. nel Imperial teatro per commando di Sua Maestà Imperiale Catarina II. / La musica è del rinomato signor Baldassara Galuppi, direttore della Musica, e Maestro di Cappella di Sua Maestà Imperiale, e della Ducal Cappella di San Marco in Venezia = Didon abandonnée : drame [sic] en musique qui doit etre représenté sur le Theatre impériale de St. Petersbourg le [blank space] fevrier 1766. par ordre de Sa Majesté Impériale Catherine II.

- 2710 **1.43.4.7.2** When a prescribed source of information bears one or more parallel titles, but the statement of other title information is in only one language and ~~one~~ script, the other title information, if given, is given after the last parallel title transcribed.

#### Examples

Brecht heute [~~Printed text~~] = Brecht today : Jahrbuch der Internationalen Brecht-Gesellschaft

Le rossignol [~~Notated music~~] = The nightingale = Die Nachtigall : conte lyrique en trois actes

Priče iz davnine [~~Electronic resource~~] = Tales of long ago = Märchen aus Urväterzeiten : izbor

- 2720 | Veliki česko-hrvatski rječnik [~~Printed text~~] = Česko-chorvatský slovník : za praktičnu i školsku upotrebu
- Carmina Burana [~~Sound recording~~] = ブラーナ・カルミナ : cantiones profanae
- 신용춘의 국악세계 [~~Sound recording~~] = Korean traditional music world of Shen Longchun : 통소 단소 연주곡

**1.43.4.7.3** When a parallel title combines in itself the contents of both the title proper and other title information, the other title information in the language of the title proper, if given, is transcribed following the title proper and before the parallel title

*Examples*

- 2730 | Verbände und Gesellschaften der Wissenschaft [~~Printed text~~] : ein internationales Verzeichnis = World guide to scientific associations
- Année 1812 [~~Notated music~~] : ouverture = 1812 overture
- Romeo i Julija [~~Electronic resource~~] : ljubavna priča = Romeo and Juliet's love story

**For older monographic resources:**

The other title information is given in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information.

**1.43.4.7.4** When there is no parallel title, but statements of other title information appear on the prescribed source of information in more than one language and/or script, the statement in the language and/or script of the title proper may be given. When this criterion does not apply, the first statement appearing on the prescribed source of information may be given. The other statements may also be given.

- 2740 | *Examples*
- Jugoslavija [~~Printed text~~] : hotel and tourist guide = Hotel- und Reiseführer
- L'Europe laitière [~~Printed text~~] : annuaire international des produits laitiers = internationales Jahrbuch der Milchprodukte = international directory of dairy products
- ~~Swiss cycling journal [~~Printed text~~] : officielles Organ / Schweiz, Radfahrer-Bund SRB = organe officiel / Fédération cycliste suisse = organe ufficiale / Federazione ciclistica svizzera~~
- Nunc dimittis [~~Notated music~~] : Graduale für vier Stimmen, zwei Violinen, zwei Hörner und Basso continuo = graduale for four voices, two violins, two horns and basso continuo
- 2750 | Astérix [~~Graphic~~] : calendar = calendrier = Kalender = calendario

**For older monographic resources:**

~~The other title information is recorded in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information. The first statement of other title information appearing on the prescribed source of information may be given. Parallel statements of other title information may also be given.~~

**For notated music resources:**

2760 When the title consists of a generic term for type of composition (see 1.1.3.1) and there is no parallel title, and statements about key, numbering, date of composition, and medium of performance appear on the prescribed source of information in more than one language ~~and/or~~ script, the statement in the language and ~~or~~ script of the generic term is given as part of the title proper, following the term for type of composition. When this criterion does not apply, the first statement appearing on the prescribed source of information is given. The other statements may also be given.

*Examples*

Adagio et allegro molto, cor, trombone et orchestre ~~[Notated music]~~ =  
horn, trombone, and orchestra = Horn, Posaune und Orchester

Sonate für Violine and Klavier in h ~~[Notated music]~~ = for violin and piano  
in b

2770 **1.4.3.4.8** A statement of other title information appearing on the resource, but not on the prescribed source of information, is given following the title proper or parallel title to which it applies, enclosed in square brackets, when necessary for identification or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue. ~~Normally~~ Otherwise, such a statement, ~~if given, is~~ may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.3).

*Example*

Civitas ~~[Printed text]~~ : [Monatsschrift des Schweizerischen Studentenvereins = revue mensuelle de la Société des étudiants suisses = rivista mensile della Società degli studenti svizzeri]

**1.4.3.4.9 Changes in other title information in continuing resources and multipart monographic resources**

2780 **For serials and  
For multipart monographic resources:**

If other title information has been recorded in the title and statement of responsibility area and that information changes on subsequent issues or parts, ~~the~~ any variation(s) ~~are~~ is specified in area 7 when considered important to users of the catalogue (~~see 7.1.3~~). *Alternatively*, a note that the other title information varies may be given (~~see 7.1.3~~), or the change may be ignored.

**For integrating resources:**

2790 If the other title information is recorded in the title and statement of responsibility area and that information changes on later iterations, the description is changed and a note is made of the change when considered important to users of the catalogue (see 7.1.3).



## 1.5.4 Statements of responsibility

**Mandatory**

### ~~Introductory note~~

A statement of responsibility consists of **one or more** name(s), phrase(s), or group(s) of characters relating to the identification and/or function of any persons or corporate bodies responsible for or contributing to the creation or realisation of the intellectual or artistic content of a work contained in the resource described.

2800 **1.5.4.1.** Only statements naming persons and/or bodies with principal responsibility are required. Subsequent statements of responsibility are included when necessary for identification or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue.

A statement of responsibility is not constructed when there is no such statement on the resource (~~see 1.5.5.2~~).

2810 **1.5.4.2** A statement of responsibility can relate to such entities as:

- writers, composers, performers, graphic artists, choreographers, arrangers, cartographers, programmers, principal investigators, animators, etc., whose work is embodied in the resource, whether directly (e.g. author of text, editor, compiler, translator, illustrator, engraver, cartographer, composer, arranger, choreographer), or indirectly (e.g. author of the novel on which a film script is based, author of the work on which the software is based, adapters of an already existing work), whether in the same medium as the original or in another;
- collectors of various data, persons responsible for the direction of a performed work; organizations, or individuals or corporate bodies sponsoring the work of any of the above (with intellectual and not merely financial sponsorship), producers of a popular music recording.

In principle such responsibility is vested not only in individuals or corporate bodies having a significant role in the creation, production or realisation of the work, but also in those whose role is comparatively minor (e.g. historical consultants) but who are nevertheless named on the prescribed source of information. Statements relating to individuals or corporate bodies judged to have a minor role may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.4).

2820 **~~For older monographic resources:~~**

~~In an academic disputation, the name of the praeses or promoter is treated as a statement of responsibility, unless it is linguistically linked to the title proper or other title information (see also 1.5.5.5 and 1.5.5.9).~~

#### *Example*

~~Nosographiæ anhelantium pars prior, / quam ... in Academia Basiliensi sub praesidio ... domini Theodori Zuingeri, philos. & medic. doct. pract. profess. Reipubl. Basil. Archiat. ad D. 24. octobr. Ann. MDCCXIV ... defendere conabitur author Joh. Rodolphus Lavaterus Tigurino — Helvetius.~~

2830

*but*

~~Hanc dissertationem juridicam de pactis nudis svb praesidio ... Dn. Johan-  
Helvici Sinolt cognom. Schützen J.U.D. consilarii Hasso Darmstadini  
... in hâc almâ Ludoviciana jurium professoris ordinarii ... publicae  
disquisitioni in auditorio Jctorum submittit ad diem 21. Aprilis.  
Johannes Abrahamus Widmann Ratisponensis. A. & R. ....~~

#### **For updating looseleaves:**

~~Statements relating to persons who are editors of updating looseleaves are recorded as statements of responsibility when considered important to users of the catalogue.~~

*Example*

2840

~~/ compiled and edited by Malcolm Evans and Martin Standord~~

#### **For motion pictures and similar resources:**

For motion pictures and similar resources having numerous and complex statements of responsibility, the names of production companies and individuals such as producers, directors, or others having some degree of overall responsibility for the work are recorded in area 1. Individuals who have specific responsibilities may also be recorded in the statement of responsibility when in the context of a particular film, or particular type of film, they have a major creative role (e.g. ~~the~~ cinematographers, writers of screenplays or animators of animated films). Persons or corporate bodies whose contributions to such a work are comparatively minor, purely technical, or related only to a segment of the work, may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.4) or omitted.

2850

#### **For electronic resources:**

In addition to the entities identified above, a statement of responsibility for an electronic resource can relate to entities named as developers and designers, whose work involves the creation of the content of the resource or its realisation (e.g. game designer). Included also are entities having specific responsibilities in the context of a particular resource or particular type of resource (e.g. project directors of survey data, video director).

#### **1.5.4.3 A statement of responsibility can take various forms: Forms of the statement of responsibility**

2860

**1.5.4.3.1** ~~It~~ A statement of responsibility can consist of the one or more name(s) of person(s) or corporate body or bodies, with or without a linking word or short phrase indicative of the role of the person or corporate body (see also 1.5.4.3.6).

#### *Examples*

/ Institut géographique national

/ réalisé et publié par les Éditions Grafocarte

/ edited by the Daily Express

/ by S. Hutchinson

/ dedicated by ... Grenville Collins

- 2870 / presented by ... Lewis Morris  
 / John Milton  
 / engraved by Jukes  
 / levée en 1817 par M. Givry  
 / surveyed and drawn by E.M. Woodford  
 / reproduced by W.H. Barrell  
 / dressée par Ernest Grangez  
 / compiled by the Ministry of Housing and Local Government  
 / 胡昌平著  
 / 国家图书馆图书采选编目部编  
 / 鈴木玲子著  
 / 홍이섭 지음

- 2880 **1.54.3.2** A statement of responsibility<sup>#</sup> can consist of a phrase without a name or designating an unnamed group when such a phrase describes an intellectual contribution or is otherwise significant.

*Examples*

- / by Pär Lagerkvist ; translated from the Swedish  
 / Erich Kästner ; für den Gebrauch in dänischen Schulen vereinfacht  
 / compiled and edited by the graduating class  
 / extracted from a chart drawn in 1785 ; with introductory commentary by the composer  
 / by Geoffrey Burgon ; text taken from the Chester mystery plays and mediaeval poems  
~~/ A.F. Barescotti ; réduction violon-piano~~  
 2890 ~~/ von Richard Wagner ; Klavierauszug für Pianoforte allein~~  
~~/ Giuseppe Verdi ; Ausgabe für gemischten Chor und Klavier~~  
 / by a group of teachers representative of primary grades  
 / Dieter Kendrick ; with spoken commentary by various artists  
 / by a team of programmers and teachers  
 / Arden Wilson ; with graphics by the author  
 / aus dem Englischen ins Deutsche übersetzt  
 / 南京市玄武区业余作者集体创作

- 2900 **1.54.3.3** A statement of responsibility<sup>#</sup> can include a noun or noun phrase as well as a name(s) or names when such a phrase is indicative of the role of the person or corporate body. Other nouns or noun phrases are normally treated as other title information (see 1.4).

*Examples*

- / selection and catalogue by Katherine Michaelson
- / the author John Milton
- / text by the Central Intelligence Agency ; maps by Rand McNally ; fruit symbols designed and drawn by Joseph A.W. Kislinsky ; surveys and sketches by J.B. Armstrong
- / d'après les travaux de M. Alfred Grandidier
- / piano accompaniments and notes by Claire Liddell
- / Text und Musik, John Lennon
- 2910 / research and text by Colin Barham
- / development and debugging, Philip Goldman

Other nouns or noun phrases are normally treated as other title information (see 1.4).

**1.54.3.4** A statement of responsibility can include details relating to other descriptive elements (e.g. original title, information about the edition of the work translated) when such details are linguistically an integral part of the statement of responsibility.

*Examples*

- / extracted from the Pensées by H.F. Stewart
- / Carson McCullersová ; dramatizace Edward Albee ; z anglického originálu "The ballad of the sad café" přeložili Luba a Rudolf Pellarovi
- 2920 / translated from the second edition, authorized August 10, 1908, with an introduction and notes, by Andrew D. Osborn
- / reduced from the original plan of three inches to one mile and planned to a scale of one inch & half to one mile by Isaac Johnson in June 1800
- / selected and translated from La divina commedia, by J.G. Roman
- / adapted from Alice in Wonderland, by Wilford Hagers
- / traduit en vers latins, sur la troisième édition du texte français, par M l'Abbé Métivier
- / translated & empynted by me William Caxton ...

**1.54.3.5** A statement of responsibility can consist of statements relating to appendices and other supplementary matter when such statements appear on the prescribed source of information (see also 1.54.4.4).

2930

*Examples*

- / with an introduction by Scott Keltie
- / by Fantasies Unlimited ; with descriptive notes by a specially constellated task force
- / principal investigator, Harriett D. Lipetz ; with appended data on entry level job openings compiled by a joint educational task force

- 2940 **1.54.3.6** A statement of responsibility can consist of the name(s) of one or more a corporate ~~body~~  
bodies acting as sponsors of a resource when the corporate ~~body is~~bodies are named on the prescribed  
source of information and the relationship between the sponsor and the resource is explicitly stated (or can  
be expressed by the addition of an appropriate word or short phrase). If the name of a sponsoring body  
~~when its name~~ forms an integral part of the publication, production, distribution, etc., statement (~~±e.g.~~  
prefaced by a phrase such as “published for ...”), it is included in area 4.

*Examples*

- / presented by West Virginia University ; sponsors, Consolidated Gas Supply  
Corporation, West Virginia University College of Engineering, West Virginia Section  
of the American Ceramic Society
- / [sponsored by] Occidental Petroleum Corporation ; made by Sandler Institutional  
Films, Inc.
- ~~/ [sponsored by] Coalition of Religious Groups in America ; conducted by Gallup-  
Organization~~
- 2950 / éditée spécialement par l'Institut géographique national pour le Touring Club de  
France
- / under the patronage of the Royal Scottish Geographical Society

**1.54.3.7** A statement that is not connected with responsibility for the intellectual or artistic content of  
the resource is not considered a statement of responsibility.

Statements such as mottoes, dedications, and statements of patronage or prizes (e.g. “Winner of the  
Tchaikovsky Award, 1971”) may be omitted or given in area 7 (see 7.1.4).

Information such as “with 33 maps”, “with 32 parts”, “accompanying gramophone record”, “with  
accompanying reference manual” may be given in area 5.

For statements connected with such responsibility but present within the other title information, see 1.43.

- 2960 **1.54.3.8** The name of a responsible entity A statement of responsibility that is linguistically an integral  
part of other descriptive elements is transcribed as part of that element and is not repeated as a statement  
of responsibility (see 1.1.3.6, 1.3.2).

*Examples*

~~Sargent conducts Vaughan Williams [Sound recording]~~

~~Yaeger Political Associates on national management policies [Electronic resource]~~

~~The greenwood tree [Printed text] : newsletter of the Somerset and Dorset Family History  
Society~~

When the name of the responsible entity is explicitly repeated on the prescribed source of information in a  
formal statement of responsibility, the name is transcribed as a statement of responsibility.

- 2970 *Examples*

The John Franklin Bardin omnibus [Printed text] / John Franklin Bardin

Allan Knight graphics [Electronic resource] / by Allan Knight

Schubert's songs to texts by Goethe [Notated music] / by Franz Schubert

~~Loto rythmique Martenot [Multimedia resource] / par Maurice Martenot~~

~~Michelin, autoroutes [Cartographic resource] : [de France] / dressé par la Manufacture française des pneumatiques Michelin~~

In addition, if the title proper includes only one part of the name of the issuing body and the other part of the name appears [elsewhere](#) on the prescribed source of information, the latter is given as a statement of responsibility.

2980 *Example*

~~Skifter fra Nordisk institut [Printed text] / Odense universitet~~

**1.54.3.9** When the function of a corporate body whose name appears on the prescribed source of information is not specified and cannot be determined from the resource being described or elsewhere, the name is not given as a statement of responsibility. The name is given instead in area 7 (see 7.1.4).

#### **1.54.4 One or more statements of responsibility**

**1.54.4.1** A single statement of responsibility occurs when the wording on the prescribed source of information shows a single statement. More than one person or corporate body may be named in such a statement, as when they are represented as performing the same function or, although performing different functions, their names are linked by a conjunction.

2990 *Examples*

/ edited by N.G.L. Hammond and H.H. Scullard

/ by Donald Elliott and illustrated by Clinton Arrowood

/ compiled and edited by Richard L. Coulton with the assistance of voluntary aid

/ par L. Meyère et J. Hansen

/ developed by Dale Kahn with Laurie Fenster

*Examples for older monographic resources*

/ by William Whiston, M.A. sometime professor of the mathematicks in the University of Cambridg. and Humphrey Ditton, master of the new mathematick school in Christs' Hospital, London

3000 [Editorial comment: degrees and statements of positions held included for older monographic resources \(cf. 1.4.5.5\).](#)

/ the first by Leonard Lessius, the second by Lewis Cornaro, a noble Venetian: ...

/ first gathered and compiled in Latine by the right famous clerke Maister Erasmus of Roterodame, and now translated into Englyshe by Nicholas Udall

/ with additions by H.N. Ridley and the Rev. T.S. Lea

/ drawn in 1791 ... from the observations made by Fleurieu in 1769 and by Vincente Tofino in 1788

3010 **1.54.4.2** More than one statement of responsibility occurs when the wording shows multiple statements, as when more than one person or corporate body is represented as performing different functions and the statements are not linked by a conjunction.

*Examples*

- / by Rudolf Steiner ; translated by W.B.
- / with preface by Walter Allen ; editor, James Vinson
- / Centre national coopératif agricole de traitement antiparasitaire ; directeur technique, Marcel Bonnefoi
- / by G. Robertson ; engraved by Morris
- / par N. de Fer ; A. Coquart sculpsit
- / by Michael Praetorius ; arranged for orchestra by N.J. Milner-Gulland
- / von Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart ; Klavierauszug, neu revidiert von Wilhelm Kienzl
- 3020 / written by Danny Shapiro ; ported to Motif by Philip Schneider
- / par M. Marmontel, de l'Académie Française ; mit deutschen Noten zum Schulgebrauch und Selbstunterricht herausgegeben
- / 汤显祖著 ; 汪榕培英译 ; 徐朔方笺校
- / チャールズ・バーチ, ジョン・B・コップ著 ; 長野敬, 川口啓明訳
- / 쿨슨 리들 지음 ; 박영신 옮김

**1.54.4.3** The difference between the first and subsequent statements of responsibility is merely a matter of order. It does not imply that the first statement relates to the principal responsibility for a work.

**1.54.4.4** A statement of responsibility relating to appendices and other supplementary matter (see 1.54.3.5), if given, is treated as an additional statement of responsibility following the statement relating to the whole resource or to the main part of the resource.

3030

*Examples*

- / deur Annie Hofmeyr ; en'n geslagregister deur Joh. van der Bijl
- / by C.H.A. Armstrong ; with an appendix on the history and architecture of the fabric by E.R. Arthur
- / attributed to Thomas Cavendish the circumnavigator ; with descriptive text by F.C. Wieder
- / von Johann Christian Bach ; mit Kadenzen versehen von Li Stadelmann

A statement of responsibility relating to appendices and other supplementary matter appearing on the resource but not on the prescribed source of information may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.4).

3040

**For older monographic resources:**

Details of appendices and other supplementary matter are transcribed in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information. Accordingly, such statements appearing before the statement of responsibility or where there is no separate statement of responsibility are treated as other title information (see 1.4.2), and those after a statement of responsibility are treated as subsequent statements of responsibility. When they are taken from elsewhere on the resource, such statements

3050 follow those statements of responsibility that relate to the whole resource or the main part of it, or those that relate to the statement concerned. Supplementary matter should be distinguished from titles of other works given equal prominence with the first work in the resource. These are described according to 1.1.5.2 (and they are recorded in the title and statement of responsibility area only when there is a formal statement referring to them).

*Examples*

/ by James Townley ; with a variety of German notes explanatory of the idioms ... alluded to by John Christian Hüttner

/ by the author of The conduct of the allies ; to which are added the said Barrier-Treaty, with the two separate articles ...

3060 / done into English from the French, with a new original preface upon the same subject, by W. J. ; ~~to which are added, An essay upon Satyr, by Monsieur d'Acier\_ and A treatise upon pastorals, by Monsieur Fontanelle~~

~~/ avtore Petro Ranzano ... nunc primum edita ; vna cum appendice quadam opera Ioannis Sambuci Tirnaviensis, Pan. Adiecta est rerum ad Agriam gestarum anno 1552. brevis eiusdem Sambuci narratio~~

### 1.54.5 Transcription

1.54.5.1 A statement of responsibility is transcribed in the terms in which it appears on the resource.

*Examples*

/ di Leon Battista Alberti Fiorentino ...

/ written by himself

/ Dauide Edguardo Anglo authore

3070 / by one who is neither a knight, nor a member of the House of Commons

/ by \*\*\*\* ...

/ as surveyed in 1822 for the use of the justices in sessions, by W. Ravenshaw

/ dessiné et gravé par R. Hausermann

/ enregistrements de Roberte Hamayon

/ co-ordinated for the Voice of America by Tristram Coffin

/ Tatsuro Suzuki interviewed by Maya Koizumi

/ réalisateur, Claude Barma ; d'après Maurice Druon ; auteur de la musique, Georges Delerue ; directeur de la photo, Pierre Mareschal ; Gilles Behat (Charles IV le bel)<sub>1</sub> ; Jean Deschamps (Charles de Valois)<sub>1</sub> ; Hélène Duc (Mahaut d'Artois)

3080 / Modest Mussorgsky ; in der Instrumentation von Maurice Ravel

/ scriptwriter, Allan S. Mitchell ; consultants, Joan M. Clayton and Simon Randolph

/ Abraham Bosse ; d'après Jean de Saint-Igny

/ developed by TNF Software Arts ; graphics by Larry Blum

/ principal investigators, T. Sheehan, H. Lovett

/ researched and compiled by Art Gump

/ 主办单位, 国家图书馆 ; 主编, 詹福瑞

~~When the statement of responsibility has no linguistic relationship to the title to which it relates, the name of the person or corporate body is given following a diagonal slash.~~

*Examples*

3090

/ Honoré de Balzac

/ Józef Lodowski

/ Home Office

/ Universidad de Salamanca

/ Mozart

/ British Library Bibliographic Services Division

**For updating looseleaves:**

Statements relating to persons who are editors of updating looseleaves are recorded as statements of responsibility when considered important to users of the catalogue.

*Example*

3100

/ compiled and edited by Malcolm Evans and Martin Standord

**For sound recordings and  
For moving images:**

Names of individual members of musical or other ensembles, when present on the preferred source of information, may be given in parentheses following the name of the ensemble. Alternatively, the names may be given in area 7 or omitted.

*Example*

/ Ravel ; Budapest String Quartet (J. Roismann and A. Schneider, violins ;  
B. Kroyt, viola ; M. Schneider, cello)

**For sound recordings:**

3110

~~For sound recordings that have more than one statement of responsibility, the order of these statements in the description should be arranged so that the different categories of responsibility fall in a sequence, i.e. composer(s) of the music, including persons whose improvisatory roles are deemed part of the creative process; author(s) of the text; performers in the following order: soloist(s)/actor(s)/reader(s); chorus; director of the chorus; orchestra; director of the orchestra; director of a dramatic production; producer of a popular music recording.~~

**For continuing resources:**

3120 When the name of a corporate body appears on the prescribed source of information as part of the title proper, parallel title, or other title information in an abbreviated (incomplete) form, or as an acronym or a set of initials, it may be repeated in its expanded form as a statement of responsibility. If the expanded form is available from the resource being described but does not appear on the prescribed source of information, it is given in square brackets; if it is taken from outside the resource, it may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.4).

*Examples*

ALA bulletin [Printed text] / American Library Association

S.B.I.-rapport [Printed text] / udgivet af Statens bygge-forskningsinstitut

Nouvelles du C.C.E. B.N.P. [Printed text] / [Comité central d'entreprise de la Banque nationale de Paris]

3130 A.C.O.A. [Printed text] / [Administrative and Clerical Officers' Association]

**For older monographic resources:**

Omissions may be made in lengthy statements, such omissions being indicated by the mark of omission.

*Example*

/ quam ... in florentissima electorali ad Albim universitate, praeside ... M. Augusto Pfeiffero, Lavvenburgo-Saxone, publico eruditorum examini exponit Martinus Bernhardi Gryphisbergâ Pomeranus, ad diem XXXI. Januar. Anno ... MDCLXIII. ...

3140 **1.54.5.2** A statement of responsibility appearing not on the prescribed source of information but elsewhere on the resource may be transcribed in area 1 enclosed in square brackets or it may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.4). The source of such a statement of responsibility is may be given in area 7. A statement of responsibility taken from outside the resource may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.4) with, if appropriate, the source of such information.

*Examples*

/ [written and planned by Jennifer Vaughan]  
Note: Author statement taken from title page verso

Candide ou L'optimisme  
Note: By Voltaire

/ [Canadian Union of General Employees]

3150 / Johannes Brahms ; [englisches and deutsches Vorwort von Wilhelm Altmann]

/ [per ... F. Leandro delli Alberti]  
Note: Statement of responsibility from title at beginning of text

/ [par feu M. l'Abbé de Bretteville]  
Note: Statement of responsibility from the title page of tome 4

/ [紫式部著]

/ [한국어]공학사편집부 편]

**For older monographic resources:**

Statements of responsibility taken from outside the resource are given in area 7, with the source of such information.

3160

*Example*

Discours sur la creche de N. Seigneur. ...

*Note:* By Ezechiel Spanheim. Source: Holzmann & Bohatta. Deutsches Anonymenlexikon, Bd. 1, S. 409, Nr. 11863

**1.54.5.3** When the names of several persons or corporate bodies are represented in a single statement of responsibility (see 1.5.3.1, 1.54.4.1), the number of names transcribed is at the discretion of the cataloguing agency. Multiple names transcribed may be separated by commas or connected by linking words, as appropriate. If linking words are supplied, they are enclosed in square brackets. Omissions are indicated by the mark of omission and “et al.” (*et alii*) or its equivalent in another script, enclosed in square brackets.

3170

*Examples*

/ by D.M. Chizhikov and V.P. Shchastlivyi

/ by Samuel Devend ... [et al.]

/ Dieter Ahlert, Klaus Peter Franz

/ [автори] Б. Конески, Х. Поленаковиќ... [и др.]

/ National Park Service [and] Soil Conservation Service [and] Texas Agricultural Experiment Station

/ Centre d'expansion Bordeaux Sud-Ouest, Institut national de la statistique et des études économiques, Institut d'économie régionale du Sud-Ouest

3180

/ herausgegeben von der Universität des Saarlandes und der Vereinigung der Freunde der Universität des Saarlandes

/ herausgegeben von Hans Fromm ... [et al.]

/ sculpserunt E.S. Hamersveldt et S. Rogeri

/ Carla Joynes, Lizbeth Beame [for] Deckle & Murphy

/ par Arthur Honegger, Daniel Lesur, Roland Manuel, Germaine Tailleferre ... [et al.]

/ prepared by Albert Kreissinger, Ken Merrill [for] Alpha Unlimited

/ 李伟 ... [等]著

**For older monographic resources:**

Preferably all the names are transcribed.

3190

~~Alternatively to supplying linking words enclosed in square brackets, an explanation is given in area 7.~~

~~Examples~~

~~/made by Geo: Chapman, Ben: Ianson, Ioh: Marston~~

~~/by Mr Briggs ... [et al.]~~

~~Expansions, explanations and corrections of statements of responsibility are given in area 7.~~

~~Example~~

~~/written by W.B. Priest~~

~~Note: W.B. Priest conceals the identity of Laurence Anderton~~

3200

**1.54.5.4** When the names of persons or bodies appear in a statement of responsibility in a less than full form, e.g. in the form of an acronym, the expanded form may be given in area 7 (see 7.1.4).

**For sound recordings and  
For moving images:**

~~Names of individual members of musical or other ensembles, when present on the prescribed source of information, may be given in parentheses following the name of the ensemble. Alternatively, the names may be given in area 7 or omitted.~~

~~Example~~

~~/Ravel ; Budapest String Quartet (J. Roismann and A. Schneider, violins ;  
B. Kroyt, viola ; M. Schneider, cello)~~

3210

**1.54.5.5** Initials indicating membership of societies, academic degrees, etc., and statements of positions held and qualifications following a person's name are transcribed when the initials, etc., are necessary linguistically, or for identification of the person or in establishing a context for the person's activity. In all other cases initials, etc., are not considered part of the statement of responsibility and are omitted (see 1.5.3.7).

**For older monographic resources:**

~~Omissions may be made in lengthy statements, such omissions being indicated by the mark of omission.~~

~~Example~~

~~/quam ... in florentissima electorali ad Albim universitate, praeside ... M.  
Augusto Pfeiffero, Lavvenburgo Saxone, publico eruditorum examini  
exponit Martinus Bernhardt Gryphisbergâ Pomeranus, ad diem XXXI.  
Januar. Anno ... MDCLXIII. ...~~

3220

**1.54.5.6** A statement of responsibility that precedes the title proper on the prescribed source of information is transcribed following the title proper and other title information unless it is linguistically linked to such information (see 1.54.3.8). The original position of the statement of responsibility may be stated in area 7.

*Example*

/ Silvio Belli Vicentino

*Note:* Author's name at head of title page**For older monographic resources:**

3230

The original position of the statement of responsibility is stated in area 7.

**1.54.5.7** A statement of responsibility that includes the name of a corporate body expressed in a hierarchical form is transcribed in the form and order given on the resource.

*Examples*

/ Bibliothèque nationale, Centre bibliographique national

/ Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México, Instituto de Investigaciones Históricas

/ Centre international de dialectologie générale près l'Université catholique de Louvain

/ U.S. Department of Agriculture Forest Service, South-Western Region

/ Air Ministry, Meteorological Office

/ Division of Child Psychiatry, Cambridge Hospital

3240

/ 国立国会図書館書誌部編

/ 국립중앙도서관 자료기획과

**1.54.5.8** When the relationship between a statement of responsibility and a title is not clear, a linking word or short phrase may be added in the language and script of the title page, enclosed in square brackets in area 1, or an explanation concerning the statement of responsibility may be given in area 7.

*Examples*

/ [verse translation by] Robert Lowell

/ [choisis et présentés par] Gilbert Prouteau

/ [collected] by Angus Mackay

/ [gravée par] Ch. Lemas

3250

/ William Shakespeare ; [read by] Sir John Gielgud

*Example for older monographic resources*

/ [edited by] John Finlayson

or

/ John Finlayson

*Note:* Edited by John Finlayson according to ...

**1.54.5.9** If more than one statement of responsibility is given, the order of these statements in the description is that indicated by the typography of the statements on the prescribed source of information or, if there is no typographical distinction, their sequence on the prescribed source of information without taking into account the extent or degree of responsibility implied by the various statements. When the

3260 statements are not taken from the prescribed source of information, they should be given in a logical order, if such an order applies, and enclosed in square brackets.

*Examples*

/ Rudolf Steiner ; [translated by Lady Maitland-Heriot] ; [edited by H. Collison]

/ Mihajlo Velimirovic ; *illustrazioni di Branimir Ganovic* ; [traduzione in lingua italiana a cura del di Mario Sintich] ; [revisione scientifica a cura del di Protogene Veronesi] ; ~~illustrazioni di Branimir Ganovic~~

/ by Suzanne Reynolds ; illustrated by the Studio Brambelli, Milan

/ edited by Michael Harloe ; sponsored by the International Sociological Association Research Committee on the Society of Regional and Urban Development

3270 / by Michael Chisholm ; [for the] Social Science Research Council

/ Hermann Hesse ; translated from the German by Basil Creighton ; [translation] revised by Walter Sorrell

/ [Worte von] Juan Ramón Jiménez ; [Musik von] Mario Castelnuovo-Tedesco

/ Jacques Offenbach ; music adapted and arranged by Ronald Hammer ; new book and lyrics by Phil Park

/ design, Roger Teppe ; programmer, Bob Chompsky ; graphics, Carol Mayer-Lenz

**For older monographic resources:**

When there is more than one statement of responsibility, the statements are transcribed in the order indicated by the sequence of the information on the prescribed source of information.

3280

*Example*

/ by the late ingenious and learned Hollander, Lambert Hermanson ten Kate ; translated from the original French by James Christopher le Blon

When the statements are found in the resource but not on the prescribed source of information, they are given in area 1 enclosed in square brackets, in the order indicated by the sequence of statements on the source of information used, or in a logical order, if such an order applies, when more than one other source of information is used. *Alternatively*, the information is given in area 7.

3290

*Example*

A summarie and true discourse of Sir Frances Drakes VWest Indian voyage / [begun by captaine Bigges] ; [finished by his Lieutenant Maister Croftes] ; [edited by Thomas Cates]

*Note:* Statements of responsibility from Cates's preface

or

A summarie and true discourse of Sir Frances Drakes VVest Indian voyage

*Note:* "Begun by captaine Bigges ... the same being afterwards finished (as I thinke) by his lieutenant Maister Croftes, or some other, I knowe not well who". Edited by Thomas Cates. Statements of responsibility quoted from Cates's preface

3300

When a respondent and praeses are given for an academic disputation, both the names and the words indicative of their function are treated as part of a single statement of responsibility (unless linguistically linked to the title proper or to other title information).

*Examples*

Discursus historico-theologicus de annis ministerii Christi / quem ... in incluta Universitate Altdorfina publico eruditorum examini subiiciunt praeses Isaacus Laurbecchius SS. theol. dd. & respondens Joh. Fridericus Kernius, Schleusinga-Hennebergicus. Ad diem 21. Mai. Anno o.r. M.DCC

3310

but

Consensû Benevolo illustris & gratiosissimi Senatûs Medici in florentissima ad Salam Academia. Præsides ... Johanne Arnoldo Friderici, phil. & med. doct. anatom. chirurg. ac botan. p.p. famigeratissimo, medico provinciali Saxo-Altenburgico ... hanc dissertationem medicam de hydrope tympanite publicæ artis cultorum ventilationi submittit ad diem [blank space] Martii, M.DC.LXXII. ... David Richter, Zittâ Lusatus. Autor

3320

### **For multimedia resources and For electronic resources:**

When the prescribed source of information is composite in character (as in the case of a multipart or multimedia resource having no unifying principal source), the statements of responsibility are given in a logical order. *Alternatively*, the separate parts of the resource may be described following the multilevel method (see Appendix A).

### **For sound recordings and audiovisual resources:**

If there is more than one statement of responsibility, the statements should be arranged so that the different categories of responsibility are given in a logical order. For example, for sound recordings: composers of the music, including persons whose improvisatory roles are deemed part of the creative process; authors of the text; performers in the following order: soloists/actors/readers; chorus; director of the chorus; orchestra; director of the orchestra; director of a dramatic production; producer of a popular music recording.

3330

## **1.54.5.10 Parallel titles and parallel statements of responsibility**

**1.54.5.10.1** When a prescribed source of information bears one or more parallel titles and/or parallel statements of other title information, and also has statements of responsibility in more than one language and/or script, each statement of responsibility, if given, follows the title or other title information to which it is linguistically related.

*Examples*

- 3340 National accounts statistics, 1950–1968 [~~Printed text~~] / Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development = Statistique des comptes nationaux, 1950–1968 / Organisation de coopération et de développement
- Carte minéralogique de l'Afrique [~~Cartographic resource~~] / Organisation des Nations Unies pour l'éducation, la science et la culture [et] Association des services géologiques africains = Mineral map of Africa / United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization [and] Association of African Geological Surveys
- Die Zauberflöte [~~Notated music~~] : für zwei Flöten oder Violinen / W.A. Mozart ; nach einer Ausgabe aus dem Jahr 1792 herausgegeben von Gerhard Braun = The magic flute : for two flutes or violins / W.A. Mozart ; from an edition of 1792 edited by Gerhard Braun
- 3350 Sowjetische Klaviermusik für die Jugend [~~Notated music~~] / herausgegeben von Nikolai Koptschewski = Soviet piano music for young people / edited by Nicolai Kopchevsky = Musique de piano soviétique pour la jeunesse / édité par Nicolas Kopchevski
- Familias norte-americanas [~~Visual projection~~] : los De Stefano / colaborador de educación, Beryl L. Bailey = American families : the De Stefanos / educational collaborator, Beryl L. Bailey
- Swiss cycling journal : offizielles Organ / Schweiz. Radfahrer-Bund SRB = organe officiel / Fédération cycliste suisse = organe ufficiale / Federazione ciclistica svizzera
- 3360 Canadian urban sources [~~Electronic resource~~] : a survey / Canadian Council on Urban and Regional Research = Sources urbaines canadiennes : un aperçu / Conseil canadien de la recherche urbaine
- オーケストラの時の時 / 湯浅譲二 = Time of orchestral time / Joji Yuasa
- 미궁 [~~Sound recording~~] / 황병기 연주 = The labyrinth / by Byungki Hwang

**For older monographic resources:**

The various titles and statements are transcribed in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information.

*Example*

- 3370 Anatomia uteri humani gravidi tabulis illustrata / auctore Gulielmo Hunter ... Reginae Charlottae medico extraordinario, in Academia Regali anatomiae professore ... = The anatomy of the human gravid uterus exhibited in figures / by William Hunter ...

**1.54.5.10.2** When it is not possible to give an appropriate statement of responsibility after each title or other title information, the statements of responsibility, if given, are given together following the last parallel title or parallel other title information.

*Examples*

- 3380 Printing at Gregynog [~~Printed text~~] : aspects of a great private press = Argraffu yng Ngregynog : agweddau ar wasg breifat fawr / Michael Hutchins ; translated by David Jenkins = y cyfieithiad gan David Jenkins
- 8 capriccios [~~Notated music~~] : hegedüre, második hegedii kiséretével = für Violine, mit Begleitung der zweiten Violine / Henryk Wieniawski ; átnézte és ujjrenddel allátta = revidiert und mit Fingersatz versehen von Jenő Hubay

**1.54.5.10.3** When a prescribed source of information bears one or more parallel titles and/or parallel statements of other title information, but the statement of responsibility is in only one language and/or script, the statement of responsibility, *if given*, is given after the last parallel title or parallel other title information transcribed.

*Examples*

- Bibliotecas [~~Printed text~~] = Libraries = Bibliothèques / Ernest Malaga
- 3390 Bieler Jahrbuch [~~Printed text~~] = Annales biennoises / Herausgeber, Bibliotheksverein Biel
- Carte de tapis végétal de la région méditerranéenne [~~Cartographic resource~~] = Vegetation map of the Mediterranean region ... / by P. Lalande ; F.A.O. [and] UNESCO
- Mährische Volkspoesie in Liedern [~~Notated music~~] = Moravian folk poetry in song = Chant sur des poésies populaires moraves / Léoš Janáček
- Svensk kyrkomusik [~~Sound recording~~] = Schwedische Kirchenmusik = Swedish church music / Vokal- und Instrumentalensemble der Rundfunkchor ; Leitung, Eric Ericson
- 3400 Statistique des comptes nationaux, 1969–1985 [~~Electronic resource~~] = National accounts statistics, 1969–1985 / Organisation de coopération et de développement économiques

**For older monographic resources:**

The statement of responsibility is given after the title or statement of other title information with which it is associated.

*Examples*

- Nouum Testamentum seu quattuor euangelioru[m] volumina lingua Hungarica donata / Gabriele Pannonio Pesthino interprete = Wij Testamentum magijar nijeluen
- 3410 Cursus mathematicus, nova, breui, et clara methodo demonstratvs, per notas reales & vniuersales, citra vsum cuiuscunque idiomatis intellectu faciles ... = Cours mathématique, démontré d'une nouvelle, briefve, et claire methode, par notes reelles & vniuerselles, qui peuuent estre entenduës facilement sans l'vsage d'aucune langue ... / par Pierre Herigone, mathematicien
- Frederici Ruischii ... Thesaurus animalium primus ... = Het eerste cabinet der dieren / van Frederik Ruysch

**1.54.5.10.4** When there is no parallel title, but statements of responsibility appear on the prescribed source of information in more than one language and/or script, the statement in the language and/or script of the title proper is given. When this criterion does not apply, the statement indicated by the typography of the statements on the prescribed source of information or, if there is no typographical distinction, the sequence on the prescribed source of information is followed. The other statements may also be given.

3420 *Examples*

Tin statistics [~~Printed text~~] / International Tin Council = Conseil international de l'étain = Consejo Internacional del Estaño

Bibliotheca Celtica [~~Printed text~~] : a register of publications relating to Wales and the Celtic peoples and languages / Llyfrgell Genedlaethol Cymru = The National Library of Wales

Bibliographica belgica [~~Printed text~~] / Commission belge de bibliographie = Belgische commissie voor bibliografie

3430 Europa cantat VI [~~Notated music~~] : Leicester 1976 / au nom de la Fédération européenne des jeunes chorales édité par = im Auftrag der Europäischen Föderation Junger Chöre herausgegeben von = for the European Federation of Young Choirs edited by Willi Gohl

Madame Bovary [~~Videorecording~~] / réalisateur, Jean Marais Renoir; d'après le roman de Flaubert = director, Jean Marais Renoir; after the novel by Flaubert

Directions in tin trade of selected North American countries [~~Electronic resource~~] : statistical survey / International Tin Council = Conseil international de l'étain

#### **For older monographic resources:**

All statements of responsibility are given following the title proper and any other title information.

#### **1.54.5.11 Resources without a collective title**

3440 **1.54.5.11.1** When the resource has no collective title proper (see 1.1.4.4, 1.1.5.2), and when all the individual works have the same statement of responsibility, the statement of responsibility is given after all the titles, parallel titles and statements of other title information.

#### *Examples*

Baby doll [~~Printed text~~] : the script for the film ; Something unspoken ; Suddenly last summer / Tennessee Williams

Fréjus [~~Cartographic resource~~] ; Le Var touristique / Provence Paris publicité

Daily mMail motor road map of London and ten miles round [~~Cartographic resource~~] ; Motor road map of south-east England / Edward Sandford

Fantaisie-Impromptu op. 66 [~~Notated music~~] ; Scherzo op. 31 / Chopin

3450 3. Sinfonie [~~Notated music~~] : "Das Lied von der Nacht" : für Tenor Solo, gemischten Chor and Orchester op. 27 = 3rd symphony : "Song of the night" : for tenor solo, mixed chorus and orchestra op. 27 ; 4. Sinfonie-Concertante für Klavier and Orchester op. 60 = 4th symphony-concertante for piano and orchestra op. 60 / Karol Szymanowski

Duo Nr. 1 G-Dur, KV 423, für Violine und Viola [~~Sound recording~~] ; Duo Nr. 2 B-Dur, KV 424, für Violine und Viola / Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart ; Susanne Lautenbacher, violin ; Ulrich Koch, viola

A survey of spending on foreign language teaching [~~Electronic resource~~] ; Foreign language teaching resources / principal investigator, J.L. Pianko

- 3460 Le Colonel Chabert [~~Printed text~~] ; a-suivi de Honorine ; et de L'interdiction / Balzac  
*Editorial comment: Linking phrases appearing between titles on the prescribed source of information are retained*

### For older monographic resources:

The statement of responsibility is given in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information.

*A statement of responsibility appearing before the titles, if not grammatically linked, is given after the titles, parallel titles and statements of other title information. The original position of the statement of responsibility is given in area 7.*

- 3470 **1.54.5.11.2** When the individual works have different statements of responsibility, each statement is given after the title(s), parallel title(s) and or statement(s) of other title information to which it applies. A linking word or phrase between the titles of the works by different authors as given on the preferred source of information is retained. (For works by the same author, see 1.1.5.2.)

#### Examples

Teorija kredita [~~Printed text~~] : skripta / Milutin Ćirović. Teorija dopunskog kredita : skripta / Vjekoslav Meichsner

Crépuscule en montagne [~~Notated music~~] / S. Sohet-Boulnois. Carillon corse / Georges Lauro

- 3480 The high school cadets [~~Notated music~~] = Kadettenmarsch / Musik, J.P. Sousa ; Bearbeitung, Franz Bummerl. Musik im Blut : Marsch / Musik und Bearbeitung, Hans Kolditz

Fantasy and fugue for orchestra and organ, op. 10 (1963) [~~Sound recording~~] / Wallingford Riegger ; Polish National Radio Orchestra ; Jan Krenz, conductor. Synthesis for orchestra and electronic sound (1960) / Otto Luening ; Hessian Symphony Orchestra ; David Van Vactor, conductor. Nocturne (1958) / Colin McPhee ; Hessian Radio Symphony Orchestra ; David Van Vactor, conductor. Fantasia for organ (1929) / Otto Luening ; Ralph Kneeream, organist

Hybrid imaging [~~Electronic resource~~] : technology and graphic design / April Cubbitt. Art and the machine / Fran Chen. Space art / Jean-Louis Gero ; illustrator, Judy Randall

- 3490 中华人民共和国国歌 [~~Sound recording~~] / 田汉词 ; 聂耳曲. 国际歌 / 欧仁·鲍迪埃词 ; 比尔·狄盖特曲

The authorship of Wuthering Heights / by Irene Cooper Willis. And The structure of Wuthering Heights / by C.P.S.

*A linking word or phrase between the titles of the works by different authors as given on the prescribed source of information is retained. (For works by the same author, see 1.1.5.2.1.)*

**For older monographic resources:**

3500 When the individual works other than supplementary matter (~~see 1.5.4.4~~) are not known to be by the same author, the titles, parallel titles, other title information, and statements of responsibility are recorded in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source of information.

*Examples*

Catonis disticha de Moribus. 2. Dicta insigni Septem Sapientum Graeciae.  
3. Mimi Puliam, sive, Senecae Proverbia, Anglo-Latina. Cato item  
Grammatice interpretatus Latinis & vernaculis vocibus pari ordine, sed  
diversis lineis alternatis. ... / A Carolo Hoolo, A. M. Privatae Scholae  
Grammaticae Institute in Purificum viciculo apud Londinates.  
*Editorial comment:* original punctuation and capitalization retained.

3510 La fauconnerie / de F. Ian des Franchières ... recueillie des liures de M.  
Martino, Malopin, Michelin & Amé Cassian. Avec, Une autre  
Fauconnerie / de Guillaume Tardif ... Plus, La vollerie / de messire  
Artelouche d'Alagona ... D'avantage, un recueil de tous les oiseaux de  
proye, seruans a la fauconnerie & vollerie

**1.5.4.5.11.3** When the individual works have statements of responsibility relating to some but not all titles, each statement is given after **the last of** the title(s) to which it applies.

*Examples*

Godly contemplations for the unlearned, 1575 [~~Printed text~~]; A letter of a Catholike  
man beyond the seas, 1610 / Thomas Owen. The conviction of noveltie, 1632 / R.B.

Jephte ; Le cinque piaghe di Christo / Antonio Draghi. Oratorio di S. Petro piangente /  
Pietro Andrea Ziani

3520 Rhapsody in blue [~~Sound recording~~]; Prelude for piano no. 2 / George Gershwin.  
Symphonic dances from West Side story / Leonard Bernstein

Nuclear disarmament [~~Electronic resource~~]; Politics of peace / principal investigator,  
Thomas Cashdollar. Strategies for defense / principal investigator, Damien Toffel

土佐日記 [~~Printed text~~] / 紀貫之著 ; 郎訳池田弥三. 蜻蛉日記 / 藤原道綱母著 ;  
訳室生犀星

채근담 [~~Printed text~~] / 홍자성 저 ; 조지훈 역. 생활의 발견 / 임어당 저 ; 박일충 역

**For older monographic resources:**

The statements are transcribed in the form and order given on the prescribed source of information.

3530 **1.5.4.5.11.4** When the individual works have their own statement(s) of responsibility and the prescribed source of information shows also **one or more** statement(s) of responsibility applicable to the whole resource, the **statement or** statement(s) of responsibility applicable to the whole resource ~~is (are)~~ given after all other statements, preceded by a space, semicolon, space. The relationship between the last named statement of responsibility and the preceding transcription should be made clear by the addition of a linking word or short phrase, enclosed in square brackets.

If this addition is linguistically impossible or would result in an awkward or cumbersome statement, the relevant portion of the statement of responsibility and/or the explanation, if given, is given in area 7 (see 7.1.4).

*Examples*

- 3540 The white devil ~~[Printed text]~~ ; The duchess of Malfi / by J. Webster. The atheist's tragedy ; The revenger's tragedy / by Tourneur ; [all] edited with an introduction and notes by J.A. Symonds
- Could it be magic ~~[Notated music]~~ / Text und Musik von Adrienne Anderson und Barry Manilow. Komm doch mal rüber / Musik, Dieter Zimmermann ; Text, Charley Nissen ; Klavierbearbeitung [beider Kompositionen], Rolf Basel
- Symphony no. 4 in A major, op. 90 ~~[Sound recording]~~ : Italian / Mendelssohn. Symphony in C major / Bizet ; [both works performed by] National Philharmonic Orchestra ; Leopold Stokowski
- 3550 Spellbinder ~~[Electronic resource]~~ / Tom Leach. The music director / Bob Dithridge. Word magic / Charles Zipf ; editor [of the three works], Glen Furness

~~If this addition is linguistically impossible or would result in an awkward or cumbersome statement, the relevant portion of the statement of responsibility and/or the explanation, if given, is given in area 7.~~

*Example*

- 3560 ~~Andante cantabile [Sound recording] : für Cello und Streicher ; Nocturne : op. 19, für Cello und Streicher / Tschaikowsky. Idyll : für Horn und Streicher / Glasunow. Adagio tragico : op. 21, für Streichorchester / Sinigaglia. An English suite / Parry. Capriol suite / Warlock~~
- ~~Note: René Forest, violoncello (1st-2nd works) ; Anton Hammer, horn (3rd work) ; RIAS-Sinfonietta-Berlin ; David Atherton (last 2 works), Jiri Starek (remainder), conductors~~

**For older monographic resources:**

The **statement or** statement(s) of responsibility applicable to the whole resource ~~is~~ (are) given in the order indicated by the sequence of the information on the prescribed source of information. If the relationship between each person or corporate body and the individual work is not clear, an explanation is given in area 7.

*Example*

- 3570 The natural history of Iceland ... ~~[Printed text]~~ ; to which is added, A meteorological table, with remarks / translated from the Danish original of Mr. N. Horrebow
- Note:* Both works are translated from N. Horrebow

**1.54.5.12 Common and dependent titles**

When the title proper consists of a common title and a dependent title (see 1.1.5.3), statements of responsibility relating to the dependent title are given after ~~the parts of the title proper to which they refer.~~ Statements of responsibility relating to the larger work may be given in area 6 with the common title. ~~In case of doubt or if the statement of responsibility refers to the title proper as a whole, it is given after the dependent title.~~

*Examples*

3580 | Plan d'ensemble au 1:2 000 de la région d'Ile-de-France. Bloc 1-77-29, Bonnières-sur-Seine [~~Cartographic resource~~] / Ministère de l'environnement et du cadre de vie, Etablissement public régional d'Ile-de-France

| Urban and regional references. Supplement [~~Electronic resource~~] / compiled by Canadian Council on Urban and Regional Research

| Teaching geology with computer software. North America [~~Printed text~~] / Bureau of Education

| Bulletin / ~~Faculty of Archaeology~~. Supplement [~~Printed text~~]  
| *Area 6: (Bulletin / Faculty of Archaeology)*

| Publications de la Sorbonne. Série Byzantina [~~Printed text~~] / Centre de recherches d'histoire et de civilisation byzantines

**For older monographic resources:**

3590 | Statements of responsibility are given in the form and order given on the prescribed source of information. In case of doubt or if the statement of responsibility refers to the title proper as a whole, an explanation or comment, ~~if given, is~~ *may be* given in area 7.

**1.5.4.6 Changes in the statement of responsibility in continuing resources and multipart monographic resources****For serials and  
~~For~~ multipart monographic resources:**

3600 | If a person or corporate body recorded in a statement of responsibility is added or deleted on a subsequent issue or part and this change does not require a new description (for serials, see ~~0-A.2.56~~), the name of the later person or body is given in area 7 or a note is made of the deletion (see 7.1.4.1). If the change is only in the presentation of the name of the person or body, a note is made when the change is considered important to users of the catalogue.

**For serials:**

| Major changes in the name in the statement of responsibility (~~i.e. the corporate body~~) in conjunction with a generic title require a new description (see ~~0-A.2.46.2-1~~).

**For integrating resources:**

| If persons or corporate bodies recorded as a statement of responsibility change in subsequent iterations, the description is changed to reflect the latest iteration and the names of earlier persons or bodies are given in area 7 (see 7.1.4.1).

3610

## 2 EDITION AREA

### Introductory note

The edition area includes the edition statement, parallel edition statements, statements of responsibility relating to the edition, additional edition statements, and statements of responsibility following an additional edition statement.

An edition includes all copies of a resource produced from substantially the same original input and issued by the same agency or group of agencies or a person. An edition may be identified by an edition statement on the resource or by information provided by the publisher.

3620 Publication patterns in the country of publication are also considered in deciding if a statement is an edition statement (e.g. in some countries “edition” statements may reflect printing information).

A change in the identity of the distributor does not constitute a change of the edition.

#### **For older monographic resources:**

Not only editions, but also issues, impressions and states of older monographic resources may be given separate descriptions. The stipulations for the edition area may be considered to include information concerning the issue, impression or state being described (see also 0.2.1).

### Contents

- 3630
- 2.1 Edition statement
  - 2.2 Parallel edition statement
  - 2.3 Statements of responsibility relating to the edition
  - 2.4 Additional edition statement
  - 2.5 Statements of responsibility following an additional edition statement

### ~~Recommended punctuation~~ **Prescribed punctuation**

- A. The edition area is preceded by a point, space, dash, space (. –).
- B. Each parallel edition statement is preceded by a space, equals sign, space (= ).
- C. The first statement of responsibility relating to the edition (or following an additional edition statement) is preceded by a space, diagonal slash, space (/ ).
- D. Each subsequent statement of responsibility relating to the edition (or following an additional edition statement) is preceded by a space, semicolon, space (; ).
- 3640 E. An additional edition statement following either an edition statement or a statement of responsibility relating to the edition is preceded by a comma, space (, ).

#### *Examples* **Punctuation patterns**

- . – Edition statement
- . – Edition statement = parallel edition statement
- . – Edition statement / statement of responsibility

3650

- . – Edition statement / statement of responsibility ; second statement of responsibility ; third statement of responsibility
- . – Edition statement / statement of responsibility = parallel edition statement / parallel statement of responsibility
- . – Edition statement, additional edition statement
- . – Edition statement / statement of responsibility, additional edition statement / statement of responsibility

### Prescribed sources:

Information taken from a source other than one of the following prescribed sources is given in square brackets if it is recorded in this area. The preferred order of sources is:

#### For printed textual and notated music resources:

Title page, first page of music, other preliminaries, cover, colophon, ~~cover~~, the rest of the resource-

#### For older monographic resources:

Title page

#### For ~~printed cartographic resources, and-~~ ~~For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and~~ moving images, and electronic resources:

The resource itself, container, accompanying material

#### ~~For notated music resources:~~

~~Title page, other preliminaries, first page of music, cover, colophon, the rest of the resource-~~

#### ~~For electronic resources:~~

~~The resource itself, documentation, other **accompanying material**, container~~

3660

3670

## 2.1 Edition statement

**Mandatory**

### 2.1.1 ~~Introductory note~~

The edition statement consists of a term, phrase or group of characters relating to:

~~A. the copies of a resource formally identified as constituting a named and/or numbered edition;~~

~~or~~

~~B. the copies of a resource in a particular form of presentation having significant differences from other copies in the same form of presentation, whether or not the resource bears any formal statement to this effect; statements indicating a named and/or numbered edition, a reprint, a reproduction or a revision of a resource as a whole.~~

3680

The An edition statement normally includes either the word “edition” (or its equivalent in another language) or a related term together with an ~~ordinal~~ number (“2nd edition”, etc.), or a term indicating difference from other editions (“new edition”, “revised edition”, “standard edition”, “large print edition”, “fourth state”, “May 1970 script”, etc.). A statement that includes the word “edition” or its equivalent is not considered an edition statement when it represents printing information, as is typical in the publication patterns of certain countries.

The An edition statement can also include other phrases that may be linguistically associated, linking the edition to other elements of the description (e.g. original title in a form such as “abridgement of ...”).

3690

When a resource has multiple edition statements relating to parts or pieces of the resource (e.g. an interactive multimedia work), the statement or statements that relate to the resource as a whole are transcribed. When there is no one statement that applies to the resource, the statement or statements may be given in area 7. An edition statement that appears only in the accompanying documentation is not regarded as an edition statement of the resource unless information in the documentation indicates that the statement applies to the resource.

#### Examples

~~— Joint ed.~~

. – 2nd ed.

~~— Reprint ed.~~

~~— Annual cumulated ed.~~

3700

. – 1st Carroll & Graf ed.

. – Revised version

~~— Memorial ed.~~

~~— World Cup ed.~~

. – 3e éd.

. – Ungekürzte Taschenbuchausg.

. – Version avec commentaires en anglais

~~. – Windows 96 ed.~~

. – 修正版

. – 제3판

3710 The following types of statements are considered edition statements:

Geographic edition statements

Examples

. – Northern ed.

. – Overseas ed.

. – Московский вечерний вып.

. – 欧州国際版

. – 서울판

Special interest edition statements

Examples

3720 . – Éd. pour le médecin

. – Managers' ed.

. – 少年版

. – 看護学生版

. – 교사용판

Special format or physical presentation statements

Examples

. – Airmail ed.

. – Braille ed.

. – Large print ed.

3730 . – Library ed.

. – Microform ed.

. – Student software ed.

. – CD-ROM版

. – 축쇄판

Language edition statementsExamples. – English ed.. – Éd. française. – 中英文对照版

3740

. – 日本語版. – 한국어판**For older monographic resources:**

A statement such as “newly printed” should be treated as an edition statement when it appears to imply the existence of an earlier edition and to be associated with the title, but as a part of the publication, ~~printing~~ **production**, distribution, etc., area when it appears to be associated with that area (see 4.1.8). The edition statement may include information concerning the issue, impression or state being described (see also A.2.1). Statements about unchanged impressions of an edition are given as edition statements, or additional edition statements.

3750

Example. – The fifth impression**For notated music resources:**

When the term “edition” is used in order to indicate the version, the arrangement, etc., of a musical work, the statement is given in area 1 (see 1.4~~3~~, 1.5.3.2), even when the term “edition” is used on the resource. When the term “edition” is used in order to indicate the form in which a work is presented in the resource (music format), the statement is given in area 3 (see 3.2.1.1), even when the term “edition” is used on the resource. However, a term denoting vocal range (e.g. Low voice; Ausgabe für hohe Stimme) is treated as an edition statement.

3760

**For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:**

~~For~~ **For** a recorded performance, a statement that appears on the resource and that indicates the edition or version from which the performance is drawn is not regarded as an edition statement, but may be recorded in area 7.

**For electronic resources:**

Related terms such as “version”, “level”, “release” or “update” can indicate an edition statement; however, these terms are sometimes used to indicate major or minor changes in a resource and therefore may not constitute a reliable guide to indicate a new edition.

3770

~~An edition occurs when there are significant differences in the resource, including additions and deletions; a difference in the programming language; changes to upgrade or improve the efficiency of the resource; modifications in the programming language or~~

operating system that allow the resource to be compatible with other machines and operating systems.

Differences that do not constitute a new edition include: a difference in the type of physical carrier (e.g. from disk to cassette) and/or the size of the physical carrier (e.g. 14 cm to 9 cm disk); differences in printer-related file formats (e.g. ASCII vs. PostScript); differences in system-related formats (e.g. IBM vs. Macintosh); differences relating to the character code or to blocking or recording densities; differences in the output medium or display format (e.g. a remote access resource reproduced on floppy disk and optical disc). Normally, differences that do not constitute a new edition do not warrant the creation of a separate bibliographic record, although a cataloguing agency may choose to create multiple bibliographic records. The differences may be given in area 7 (see also 0.2.1).

When the electronic resource has multiple edition statements relating to parts or pieces of the resource (e.g. an interactive multimedia work), the statement(s) that relates (relate) to the resource as a whole is (are) transcribed. When there is no one statement that applies to the resource, the statement(s) may be given in area 7. An edition statement that appears only in the accompanying documentation is not regarded as an edition of the resource unless information in the documentation indicates that the statement applies to the resource.

3780

### 3790 2.1.2 **Transcription**ing the edition statement

The edition statement is given in the terms in which it appears on the resource. It is enclosed in square brackets if it does not appear on ~~the resource~~ **a prescribed source**. Standard abbreviations may be used (see 0.A.6.4). Arabic numerals are ~~substituted for~~ **given in place of** other numerals or spelled-out numbers. Explanatory phrases appended to the edition statement are given when considered necessary for identification of the edition ~~(see 2.3.3)~~.

If the edition statement consists solely or chiefly of symbols or other matter that cannot be reproduced by the facilities available (see 0.A.9.10), the characters are replaced by words or numbers, as appropriate, enclosed in square brackets. An explanation may be given in area 7 (see 7.2).

#### *Examples:*

3800

- . – 4th revised ed.
- . – 1. ed.
- . – 3. Aufl.
- . – Nuova ed.
- . – Sehr veränderte Aufl.
- . – Éd. française
- . – Ungekürzte Ausg.
- . – Deutsche Erstausg.
- . – Neuaufl. der deutschen Originalausg.**
- . – 67th ed., complete with street plan
- . – 5a ed., con un copioso índice alfabético de materias

3810

- . – Novissima ed. (7a), interamente riveduta
- . – Ed. 4
- . – 3. erw. Aufl.
- . – Éd. réduite
- . – Ed. 3-GSGS
- . – [Three stars] ed.

*Editorial comment: Statement appears as: ★★★ ed. Cataloguing agency unable to reproduce stars.*

- . – 2e éd. du recueil noté
- . – Reprint ed.
- 3820 . – Hohe Stimme (Originallage)
- . – Ed. special
- . – Version 3.5
- ~~. – Interactive ed., 1993 version~~
- . – 第 3 版
- . – 復刻版
- . – 버전 2.1

#### Geographic edition statements

##### *Examples*

- ~~. – Northern ed.~~
- 3830 ~~. – Overseas ed.~~
- ~~. – Московский вечерний вып.~~
- ~~. – 國際版歐州~~
- ~~. – 서울판~~

#### Special interest edition statements

##### *Examples*

- ~~. – Éd. pour le médecin~~
- ~~. – Managers' ed.~~
- ~~. – 少年版~~
- ~~. – 看護学生版~~
- 3840 ~~. – 교사용~~

#### Special format or physical presentation statements

*Examples*

- Airmail ed.
- Braille ed.
- Large print ed.
- Library ed.
- Microform ed.
- Student software ed.
- CD-ROM版
- 축쇄판

3850

## Language edition statements

*Examples*

- English ed.
- Éd. française
- 中英文对照版
- 日本語版
- 한국어판

3860

When information pertaining to other elements of the description (e.g. an original title or other information concerning the original work) is linguistically an integral part of the edition statement, it is recorded in the statement.

*Example*

D. Justus Claproths ... braunschweig-lüneburgischen Hofraths, ordentlichen Lehrers der Rechte, ... Theoretisch-practische Rechtswissenschaft von freywilligen Gerichtshandlungen.— Dritte Auflage des vorhin unter dem Titul: Primae lineae iurisprudentiae extrajudicialis erschienenen Werkgens, jezo ins Teutsche übersetzt

**For older monographic resources:**

3870

The exact wording is given when the edition statement is taken from the prescribed source of information. When the edition statement is taken from any other source, standard abbreviations may be used and arabic numerals are substituted for other numerals or spelled out numbers. When the edition statement is not taken from the prescribed source of information, the source of the statement is given in area 7.

*Examples*

- . – The second edition
- . – Newly imprinted and very necessary vnto all youthe

**For continuing resources:**

Statements indicating an insert~~inset~~ or supplement that is included in the resource are transcribed as edition statements.

*Examples*

. – Ausg. mit Supplementen

- 3880 **2.1.3** When no edition statement appears on the resource, although it is known that the resource contains significant changes from previous editions or is a reproduction, a suitable edition statement in the language of the prescribed source of information and in accordance with the provisions of 2.1.2 may be supplied, enclosed in square brackets. Edition numbers should not be supplied, unless it is clear that the resource has a place in a sequence of otherwise numbered editions. An explanation is given in area 7. Alternatively, the information is only given in area 7.

*Examples*

- . – [New ed.]
- . – [3e éd.]
- . – [Reproduction en fac-similé]
- 3890 . – [Rev. ed.]
- . – [With a new appendix]
- . – [Éd. de Grenoble]
- . – [2. Aufl.]
- . – [Apr. 1995 issue]
- . – [Rev. ed., Aug. 1995]
- . – [Version 1.5]
- . – [School ed.]
- . – [增訂稿本]
- . – [영인판]

3900 **For older monographic resources:**

~~When no edition statement appears on the resource, although it is known that the resource contains significant changes from previous issues or significant resetting of type compared to previous editions of the published material, a suitable edition statement in the language chosen by the cataloguing agency and in accordance with the provisions of 2.1.2 may be supplied, enclosed in square brackets. Edition numbers should not be supplied, unless it is clear that the resource has a place in a sequence of otherwise numbered editions. An explanation is given in area 7. Alternatively, the information is only given in area 7.~~

*Examples*

~~. – [With a new appendix]~~

3910

~~— [Rev. ed.]~~~~Note: “Dennemarck” on title page (cf. VD17 1:068283X: “Dennemarck”)~~~~or~~~~Note: Revised edition, “Dennemarck” on title page (cf. VD17 1:068283X: “Dennemarck”)~~**2.1.4 The following Edition statements are not transcribed in the edition area:**

**2.1.4.1** An edition statement that is an integral part of an element in another area (such as title proper or other title information) and has been treated as part as of that element (see 1.1.3.6, 1.43.2) is not repeated in the edition area.

*Examples*

3920

The compact edition of the Oxford English dictionary ~~[Printed text]~~~~not The Oxford English dictionary [Printed text]. – Compact ed.~~~~not The compact edition of the Oxford English dictionary [Printed text]. – Compact ed.~~The compact version of Symphony ~~[Electronic resource]~~~~not Symphony [Electronic resource]. – Compact version~~*Example for older monographic resources*

3930

~~Buquoy quadrimestre iter, progressusq[ue] quo favente numine, ac auspice Ferdinando II. Rom. imp. Austria est conservata, Bohemia subjugata, Moravia acquisita, eademq[ue] opera Silesia sollicitata, Hungariaque terrefacta : accedit appendix progressus, ejusdem generalis, in initio anni 1621. / Authore Constantio Peregrino. — Haec secunda editio Viennensis, editioni primae Brunensi praeferenda est, vtpote authore plenius informato recognita. — Viennae Avstriae : Ex Typographia Gregorii Gelbhaar, Anno M.DC.XXI. [1621]~~

~~Note: Edition and publication statements from colophon~~~~Editorial comment: Edition statement and statement of responsibility “vtpote authore ...” are linguistically linked.~~**For older monographic resources:**

~~When an edition statement or any part of it has been taken from part of the prescribed source of information preceding the title and statement of responsibility, the position of such information is stated in area 7.~~

3940

**For continuing resources:**

a) For serials, statements indicating volume numbering or designation, or chronological coverage (e.g. 1st edition-, 1916 edition-) are given in area 3 (see 3.3).

b) Statements indicating the general or specific class of material when they do not appear on the prescribed source of information. An indication of the type of material is given as a general material designation in area 1 and/or as a specific material designation in area 5 (see 1.2, 5.1).

3950

e) Statements indicating regular revision or frequent updating (e.g. ~~Revised- edition-~~ issued every 6 months)—~~These~~ are treated as frequency rather than edition statements and are given in area 7 (see 7.0.23-7.2.1).

**2.1.4.2** An edition statement ~~or statements~~ associated with one or more works, ~~that is (are) included-~~ ~~on in~~ a resource ~~containing a number of works but lacking a collective title, is (are)-~~ not given in the edition area, but in area 1, with conventional punctuation (see 1.1.5.2).

*Example*

~~Le Western [Printed text] / textes rassemblés et présentés par Henri Agel, nouvelle éd.-  
Évolution et renouveau du western (1962-1968) / par Jean A. Gili~~

~~An examination of Dr. Burnet's theory of the earth ... [Printed text] / by J. Keill, The  
second edition corrected. ... To the whole is annexed A dissertation on the different  
figures of the coelestial bodies, &c ... / by Mons. de Maupertuis~~

3960

~~My very first prayer time book [Visual projection] / by Mary Fletcher ; illustrations by  
Treyer Evans, Revised ed.. Now I lay me down to sleep / text and pictures by Rex  
Catto.~~

~~National flight [Electronic resource] / by Air Flight Inc., 1995 sales ed.. Navigation  
advisor / Interactive Mapping Corporation~~

## 2.1.5 Changes in the edition statement

### For multipart monographic resources:

If an edition statement is added, dropped, or changed on parts subsequent to the first part, a note on such a change is given in area 7 when considered important to users of the catalogue (see 7.2.2).

3970

### For serials:

If an edition statement is added, dropped, or changed on subsequent issues or parts, a note on such a change is given in area 7 when considered important to users of the catalogue (see 7.2.2), unless the addition, deletion, or change is the result of a major change that requires a new description (see ~~0.A.2.46.2-2~~(b)).

### For integrating resources:

If a major change in edition occurs, a new description is made (see ~~0.A.2.46.3-1~~(a)). If a minor change occurs, the description is changed and a note on the change is given in area 7 when considered important to users of the catalogue (see 7.2.2).



## 2.2 Parallel edition statement

3980 A parallel edition statement is an equivalent of the edition statement in another language ~~and~~/or script.

When the prescribed source of information bears edition statements in more than one language ~~and~~/or script, the statement in the language and ~~or~~ script of the title proper is given. When this criterion cannot be applied, the edition statement made prominent by typography or, if there is no typographical distinction, the one appearing first is given. ~~The~~ A parallel statement(s) may also be given.

### *Examples*

- . – Canadian ed. = Éd. canadienne
- . – Students' ed. = Éd. pour les étudiants
- . – 2. preradeno i dopunjeno izd. = 2nd revised and enlarged ed.

### **For older monographic resources:**

3990 When the prescribed source of information bears edition statements in more than one language ~~and~~/or script, the statement appearing first is given. ~~The~~ A parallel statement(s) may be given, and if given, ~~they are~~ it is recorded along with any corresponding statement of responsibility or additional edition statement in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the source.

### *Example*

- . – Troisième édition = The third edition



## 2.3 Statements of responsibility relating to the edition

**Mandatory**

- 4000 **2.3.1** Statements of responsibility relating to the edition can refer to persons or to corporate bodies and can indicate functions such as that of a reviser of a new edition, or can name the person or body responsible for the provision of supplementary matter, of appendices, etc., in a new edition.

### *Examples*

- . – 5th ed. / by C. Ellis
- . – Facsimile ed. / edited, with an introduction, by John Goode
- . – Rev. version 3.3 / programmer, Kate Maggor
- . – Mis à jour / M. Pillot
- . – Revised version / photographer, William P. Gottlieb
- . – 2. izd. / spremno besedo napisal M. Matičetov
- 4010 . – 2nd ed. / with a historical time chart newly devised by M.A. Stuart
- . – 2nd ed. / with a new epilogue by the author
- . – Neuaufl. / herausgegeben und kritisch revidiert von Hans Joachim Moser
- . – 2e éd. / préface de Léon-Arthur Elchinger
- . – 3rd ed. / with supplementary notes and appendices by H.J. Laski
- . – May 1970 script / revised collectively by the Peking Opera Troupe of Peking
- . – 改訂第41版 / 沖中重雄編著
- . – 제7판 / 이은상 편

### *Examples for older monographic resources*

- 4020 ~~. – The second edition / with notes of various authors by Thomas Newton, D.D.~~
- ~~. – The second edition ... / to which is prefixed the life of the author, revised, corrected and enlarged by Mr. des Maizeaux~~

**2.3.2** Statements of responsibility **and details of appendices and other subsidiary matter** relating to the edition being described, or to parts of the edition being described, but not to all editions of the work are given, in accordance with the provisions of 1.54, in the edition area when found on the prescribed source of information. When such statements do not appear on the prescribed source of information, they may be given in area 2 in square brackets or may be given in area 7.

### *Example*

- . – Student version / with new graphics by Gerry Herin

4030 **For older monographic resources:**

Details of appendices and other subsidiary matter relating to the edition being described but not necessarily to all editions of the work are recorded as statements of responsibility relating to the edition, (1) when they are found on the prescribed source of information; or (2) when there is on the resource (e.g. in the preliminaries or the colophon) a formal statement referring to them, provided a person or corporate body is named or otherwise identified as responsible for their creation.

*Examples*

- The fourth edition / with a new epilogue by the author
- Editio altera, ab innumeris erroribus emendata / huic editioni accessere Jacobi Bongarsii excerptiones chronologicae ad Justinii historias accommodatae

4040 When such statements have been transposed from a position preceding an edition statement, this is stated in area 7.

**For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:**

Names of performers contributing to the edition in hand but not to all editions of the work are also included.

*Example*

- . – English language ed. / with commentary spoken by John Parrinder

4050 **2.3.3** — Statements of responsibility relating to the edition being described, but that do not name or otherwise identify a person or corporate body, are given as part of the edition statement (see 2.1.1). Such statements often appear as explanatory phrases and imply responsibility.

*Examples*

- 2nd ed., with a new epilogue
- [New ed.], with epilogue, 1964–1974  
*Editorial comment:* Bracketed portion of edition statement supplied by cataloguer
- 2. Aufl., mit einem Anhang "Neue Etüden und Spielstücke"

**For older monographic resources:**

4060 Statements of responsibility, details of appendices, other subsidiary matter, etc., clearly relating to the edition being described but that do not name or otherwise identify a person or corporate body are given as part of the edition statement (see 2.1.1). Such statements often appear as explanatory phrases.

*Examples*

- The fourth edition, with notes
- A new edition / by Grace Webster, to which is added a life of the author

~~— Второе исправнейшее издание, с карманным атласом~~

**2.3.43** The following statements of responsibility and/or details of appendices or other subsidiary matter relating to the edition are not transcribed in the edition area but given in area 1:

**For older monographic resources:**

~~The following statements of responsibility and/or details of appendices or other subsidiary matter relating to the edition are not transcribed in the edition area:~~

**2.3.4.1a)** ~~s~~Statements of responsibility that clearly relate to the first edition or to all editions of a work ~~are given in area 1.~~

**For older monographic resources:**

~~Statements of responsibility and/or details of appendices or other subsidiary matter that clearly relate to the first published edition or to all published editions of a work are given in area 1.~~

**2.3.4.2b)** ~~s~~Statements of responsibility that do not clearly relate to only one or only some editions of a work ~~are given in area 1.~~

**For older monographic resources:**

~~Statements of responsibility and/or details of appendices or other subsidiary matter that do not clearly relate to only one or only some editions of a work are given in area 1.~~

~~When such information has been transposed from a position following an edition statement, the position of such information is stated in area 7.~~

*Example*

~~An enquiry into the original state and formation of the earth [Printed text] :-  
deduced from the facts about the laws of nature / by John Whitoburst. —  
The second edition, considerably enlarged, and illustrated with plates~~

~~Note: The author's name appears after the edition statement~~

**2.3.54** Parallel statements of responsibility relating to the edition may be given.

**For older monographic resources:**

~~When the prescribed source of information for the edition statement includes parallel statement(s) of responsibility relating to the edition, the parallel statement(s) may be given in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the source.~~



## 2.4 Additional edition statement

**Mandatory**

**2.4.1** An additional edition statement is given\_

4100 1) ~~\_\_\_\_\_~~ when the resource carries a formal statement identifying it as belonging to an edition or impression within an edition, or to an edition that is equivalent to the first named edition, or when the resource has significant differences in content from other impressions of the larger edition to which it belongs.

*Examples*

- . – 3rd ed., repr. with a new pref.
- . – 2nd ed., revised issue
- . – 2nd ed., rev. version
- ~~. – The third edition, reprinted with a new preface~~

or

4110 2) ~~when the resource has significant differences in content from other impressions of the larger edition to which it belongs.~~

*Examples*

- . – 3rd ed., [with an appendix]
- . – English ed., 2nd ed.
- . – World's classics ed., new ed. revised, reset and illustrated
- . – 4th ed. / revised by H.G. Le Mesurier and E. McIntosh, reprinted with corrections
- . – 3rd ed., 2nd (corrected) impression
- . – English full ed., 4th international ed.
- . – Vollständige Taschenbuchausg., 1. Aufl.
- ~~. – The third edition [with an appendix]~~

4120 **2.4.2** Additional edition statements are transcribed in accordance with the provisions of 2.1.2 and 2.1.3.

*Examples*

- . – Amtliche Ausg., 17 Aufl.
- ~~. – Neuaufl. der deutschen Originalausg.~~
- . – Abridged ed., 2nd ed.
- ~~. – Full ed., 4th international ed.~~
- . – 5th ed., 2nd impression, with corrections
- . – Nouvelle impression en facsimilé de la 1re éd. de 1751-1780

4130

. – Interactive ed., 1993 version

- . – 2. ed., con nuova prefazione e aggiunta di tre appendici

**For older monographic resources:**

~~When an additional edition statement (e.g. a statement of reprinting) appears in the context of another area, it is recorded as part of that area. Exceptionally when it appears at the head of the title page, it is transcribed in the edition area. An explanation is given in area 7.~~

*Example*

~~. – "nouvellem[e][n]t i[m]primee a Paris"~~

~~*Editorial comment:* Statement of reprinting given in area 4 as the principal place of publication~~

4140

**2.4.3** Additional edition statements naming an unchanged impression or reissue may be given.*Examples*

- . – 4e éd., 3e tirage
- . – 2nd ed., 2nd printing
- . – 2., unveränderter Neudruck der 3., völlig neubearbeiteten Aufl.
- ~~. – 19.-23. Tsd.~~
- . – Nouvelle éd., revue et augmentée, 70e mille
- . – 3. ed., 4. rist.
- . – Versione italiana, ristampa
- . – 第 2 版, 第 3 次印刷

4150

**For older monographic resources:**

~~Statements about unchanged impressions of an edition are given as edition statements, or additional edition statements.~~

*Example*

~~. – The fifth impression~~

**2.4.4** Parallel additional edition statements may be given.**For older monographic resources:**

~~When the prescribed source of information for the edition statement includes parallel additional edition statement(s), the parallel statement(s) may be given in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the source.~~

4160

## 2.5 Statements of responsibility following an additional edition statement

**Mandatory**

**2.5.1** Statements of responsibility following an additional edition statement are transcribed in accordance with the provisions of 2.3.

### *Examples*

- . – Rev. ed. / with revisions, an introduction, and a chapter on writing, by E.C. White, 2nd ed. / with the assistance of Eleanor Gould Packard
- . – The second edition, reprinted / with a new preface by Dr. Horace Smith
- . – 2nd ed., reissued / with an afterword by the course convener
- . – Version 2.4, corr. / with diagrams by Harry Weeks

4170

**2.5.2** Parallel statements of responsibility following an additional edition statement may be given.

### **For older monographic resources:**

~~When the prescribed source of information for the additional edition statement includes parallel statement(s) of responsibility, the parallel statement(s) may be given in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the source.~~



### 3 MATERIAL OR TYPE OF RESOURCE SPECIFIC AREA

#### Introductory note

4180 This area contains data that are unique to a particular class of material or type of resource. Where information exists for another type of resource, the information that can be assigned to any other area of description ~~will be~~ is so assigned.

The language and/or script of the elements within area 3, the order of the elements, and the prescribed punctuation for the area appear in the stipulations for particular types of resources using the area. ~~Thus far the materials~~ These are cartographic resources (for mathematical data), notated music resources (for statements indicating the ~~special~~ music format), and serials (for information relating to numbering).

When a resource is a combination of materials s and types s of resources s for which area 3 is used (e.g. a map serial) or when multiple scales are given, area 3 is repeatable.

4190 When area 3 is repeated, the occurrence of area 3 that is related to the content of the resource (e.g. scale information for a cartographic resource or notated music format statement) is given first; the area 3 for serials (numbering information) is given last.

#### Examples

- . – Scale 1:250 000 ; universal transverse Mercator proj. – No. 1 (1970)-
- ~~. – Scale 1:650,000 (W 94°3' W 88°49'/N33°1' N 28°55'). – 1981-~~
- . – Scores and parts. – No. 1-
- . – Scales differ. – No. 1-

#### Contents

- 3.1 Mathematical data (Cartographic resources)
- 3.2 Music format statement (Notated music)
- 3.3 Numbering (Serials)

4200



### 3.1 Mathematical data (Cartographic resources)

#### Introductory note

The mathematical data area ~~gives information on~~ includes the statement of scale, statement of projection, and the statement of coordinates, and equinox ~~of~~ for cartographic resources.

#### Contents

- 3.1.1 Statement of scale
- 3.1.2 Statement of projection
- 3.1.3 Statement of coordinates and equinox

#### ~~Recommended punctuation~~ Prescribed punctuation

4210 A. The mathematical data area is preceded by a point, space, dash, space (. –).

~~A~~B. The projection statement is preceded by a space, semicolon, space ( ; ).

~~B~~C. The statements of coordinates and equinox are enclosed in one pair of parentheses ( ( ) ).

~~C~~D. The statement of equinox is preceded by a space, semicolon, space ( ; ).

#### ~~Examples~~ Punctuation patterns

- ~~. – Scale statement~~ Statement of scale
- ~~. – Scale statement~~ Statement of scale ; projection statement
- ~~. – Scale statement~~ Statement of scale ; projection statement (coordinates ; equinox)
- ~~. – Scale statement~~ Statement of scale (coordinates ; equinox)
- ~~. – Scale statement~~ Statement of scale ; projection statement (coordinates)
- 4220 ~~. – Scale statement~~ Statement of scale (coordinates). ~~– Scale statement~~ Statement of scale (coordinates)

#### Prescribed sources

The resource itself.

When the information from the resource itself is insufficient, other sources may be selected according to the following order of preferred sources: container, accompanying material. Information taken from a source other than ~~one of the prescribed sources~~ the resource is given in square brackets if it is recorded in this area.

#### 3.1.1 Statement of scale

#### Mandatory

4230 **3.1.1.1** The scale is given as a representative fraction, expressed as a ratio (1: ). ~~The numeral one (1) is separated from the denominator by a colon (:)~~ There is no space before or after the colon in the ratio. ~~The representative fraction may be preceded by the term~~

“scale” or its equivalent in another language and/or script may be transcribed with the representative fraction.

*Examples*

- . – Scale 1:25 000
- . – Escala 1:100 000
- . – 1:1 000 000
- . – Scale 1:5 000–1:25 000
- . – 縮尺 1:50 000
- . – 축척 1:100 000

4240

**3.1.1.2** When the scale relates only to particular parts of the resource, the part to which it relates is indicated.

*Examples*

- . – Scale 1:3 982 200 at equator
- . – Scale 1:59 304 960 along meridians

**3.1.1.3** A ~~scale statement~~ statement of scale is given when known or calculated, even if the scale is included in area 1.

*Example*

4250

~~France au 1:500 000 / Institut géographique national. – 1:500 000~~  
Title proper: France au 1:500 000

**3.1.1.4** When the representative fraction is computed from a verbal ~~scale statement~~ statement of scale, it is given in square brackets. The verbal expression of the scale may be transcribed following the representative fraction.

*Examples*

- . – [1:7 200]. 1 pouce pour 100 toises
- . – Scale [1:63 360]. 1 inch to 1 mile

4260

**3.1.1.5** When there is no numeric or verbal ~~scale statement~~ statement of scale, the representative fraction is derived from a bar scale, a graticule (i.e. from 1° of latitude that on average is 111 kilometres) or grid, or by comparison with a map of known scale, and is enclosed in square brackets.

*Examples*

- . – [1:1 800 000 env.]  
*Editorial comment:* Representative fraction computed from bar scale.
- . – Scale [ca 1:277 740]  
*Editorial comment:* Representative fraction computed from graticule.

. – 縮尺 [約 1:432 000]

. – 축척 [약 1:100 000]

**3.1.1.6** When the resource is not drawn or constructed to scale, the phrase “Not drawn to scale” or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~ is substituted for a ~~scale statement~~ **statement of scale**.

4270 **3.1.1.7** When the scale of the resource is not given on the resource, the phrase “Scale indeterminable” or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~ is substituted for a ~~scale statement~~ **statement of scale**. The phrase “Scale not given” or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~ may be used when the scale might be determined but the cataloguing agency chooses not to make the determination.

**3.1.1.8** When a vertical scale is appropriate, such as on relief models, this scale is recorded following the horizontal scale. The vertical scale is specified.

*Examples*

. – Scale 1:1 744 080. – Vertical scale [ca 1:96 000]

. – 1:100 000. – Échelle altimétrique 1:100 000

4280 . – 1:1 744 080. – 垂直縮尺 1:96 000

. – 축척 1:100 000. – 수직축척 1:100 000

**3.1.1.9** The scale for celestial charts is expressed as an angular scale in millimetres per degree.

*Example*

. – Scale 88 mm per 1°

**3.1.2 Statement of projection**

**3.1.2.1** The statement of projection may be recorded when present on the resource. When identified from other sources, the statement of projection, ~~if given, is~~ **may be** supplied in square brackets.

4290 **3.1.2.2** The statement of projection consists of the name of the projection. Associated phrases related to the statement of projection may be added. Such phrases usually consist of statements pertaining to properties of the projection applicable only to the resource described (e.g. as regards meridians and parallels). Standard abbreviations may be used.

*Examples*

; proj. conique conforme de Lambert sécante aux parallèles 48° et 77°

; proj. conique conforme de Lambert, parallèles d'échelle conservée 45° et 49°

; proj. de Mercator transverse universelle, ellipsoïde de Clarke 1880

; conic equidistant proj., standard parallels 40° and 21° N

; transverse Mercator proj., 10 000 yards India Zone I grid, Everest spheroid

; azimuthal equidistant proj. centered on Nicosia, N 35°10', E 33°22'

### 3.1.3 Statement of coordinates and equinox

#### 4300 3.1.3.1 Coordinates

**Mandatory**

The coordinates delimit the greatest extent of the area covered and ~~may be~~ **are** recorded when present on the resource, or may be supplied when known and considered important to users of the catalogue.

**3.1.3.2** For terrestrial maps, the coordinates are given in the following order:

~~westernmost extent of cartographic resource (longitude)~~

~~easternmost extent of cartographic resource (longitude)~~

~~northernmost extent of cartographic resource (latitude)~~

~~southernmost extent of cartographic resource (latitude)~~

4310 Longitude and latitude are expressed in degrees (°), minutes (') and seconds (") of the sexagesimal system (360° circle); longitude is always taken from the Greenwich prime meridian.

The degrees, minutes and seconds of longitudes and latitudes are preceded by the appropriate initials for West (W), East (E), North (N) and South (S) or their equivalents in another language ~~and/or~~ script. The two sets of longitude and latitude are separated from each other by a diagonal slash not preceded or followed by a space. Each longitude or latitude is separated from its counterpart by a dash, not preceded or followed by a space.

#### *Examples*

(E 79°–E 86°/N 20°–N 12°)

(E 110°30'–E 120°30'/N 25°15'–N 22°10')

(E 15°00'00"–E 17°30'45"/N 1°30'12"–S 2°30'35")

4320 (W 74°50'–W 74°40'/N 45°5'–N 45°00')

(W 0°2'37"–E 0°0'35"/N 44°5'30"–N 43°45'00")

Maps of other celestial bodies, such as the Earth's moon, may have coordinates recorded as appropriate to the given celestial body's coordinate system.

~~Coordinates may be recorded as decimal degrees. Coordinates given in decimal degrees for locations east of Greenwich and north of the equator are expressed as positive numbers and may be preceded by a plus sign. Locations west of Greenwich and south of the equator are expressed as negative numbers and are preceded by a minus sign. The plus or minus sign is not included, but each coordinate is preceded by W, E, N or S or their equivalents in another language and/or script, as appropriate.~~

#### *Example*

4330 (W 95.15°–W 74.35°/N 56.85°–N 41.73°)

#### 3.1.3.3 Right ascension and declination

For celestial charts, the right ascension of the centre of the chart, or the right ascensions of the western and eastern limits of the area covered by the chart, and the declination of the centre of the chart, or the declinations of the northern and southern limits of the area covered, are given as coordinates.

The right ascension is designated by “RA” or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~, followed by the hours, and, when necessary, minutes and seconds of the twenty-four hour clock.

4340 The declination is designated by “Decl.” or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~, followed by the degrees (°) and, when necessary, minutes (′) and seconds (″) of the sexagesimal system (360° circle), using a plus sign (+) for the northern celestial hemisphere and a minus sign (-) for the southern celestial hemisphere.

The right ascensions and declinations are separated from each other by a diagonal slash not preceded or followed by a space. When two right ascensions and two declinations are given, each right ascension or declination is linked to its counterpart by the word “to” or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~.

### **3.1.3.4 Equinox**

When coordinates are given, the statement of equinox may also be given. The equinox is expressed as a year preceded by “equinox” or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~. A statement for the epoch is added when it is known to differ from the equinox, and both are separated with a comma; the epoch is designated by “epoch” or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~.

#### *Examples*

4350 (RA 16 h 30 min to 19 h 30 min/Decl. -16° to -49° ; equinox 1950, epoch 1948)

(RA 16 h/Decl. -23° ; equinox 1950)

(RA 2 h/Decl. +30° ; equinox 1950)

(RA 2 h 00 min to 2 h 30 min/Decl. -30° to 45° ; equinox 1950)

(ゾーン+30° ; 分点1950)

(존 + 40° ; 분점 1948)

For charts centred on a pole, the declination limit is indicated.

#### *Example*

(Centred at South Pole/Decl. limit -60°)



4360 **3.2 Music format statement (Notated music)****Mandatory****Introductory note**

Area 3 for notated music resources includes the music format statement and parallel music format statements. The music format statement ~~indicates the special music format of a resource, distinguishing it from other formats~~ is a term or phrase representing the physical form of presentation of a notated music resource. Details of the physical units of the resource are given in the physical description area (see 5.1).

**Contents**

- 3.2.1 Music format statement
- 3.2.2 Parallel music format statement

4370 **~~Recommended punctuation~~ Prescribed punctuation**

**A.** The musical format statement is preceded by a point, space, dash, space (. –).

**B.** Each parallel music format statement is preceded by a space, equals sign, space (=).

**Prescribed sources**

The resource itself, with the following preferred order of sources: title page, ~~other preliminaries~~, first page of music, other preliminaries, cover, colophon, the rest of the resource. Information taken from a source other than ~~one of the prescribed sources~~ the resource is given in square brackets if it is recorded in this area.

**3.2.1 ~~Music format statement~~ Transcription**

4380 **3.2.1.1** The music format statement is given in the terms in which it appears on the resource. Explanatory phrases added at the end of a music format statement are included when they are considered important to users of the catalogue. Further explanations may be given in area 7 (see 7.3.1~~2~~).

*Examples*

- . – Full score
- . – Orchester-Partitur
- . – Partitur mit untergelegtem Klavierauszug
- . – Score and set of parts
- . – Partition, reproduction du manuscrit de l'auteur
- . – Miniature score
- . – Partitur [und Solostimme]

4390 **3.2.1.2** When no music format statement appears on the resource, a suitable statement may be supplied, enclosed in square brackets, in the language ~~of~~ and script of the title page proper or in the language and ~~of~~ script chosen by the cataloguing agency.

*Example*

. – [Partition et parties]

~~. – Partitur [und Solostimme]~~

**3.2.2 Parallel music format statement**

When a resource bears music format statements in more than one language and/or script, the statement appearing first is given as the music format statement. ~~The **A** parallel statement(s) may be given. If these are **it is** not given, no indication is made of the omission.~~

4400

*Example*

. – Jászópartitúra = Playing score

### 3.3 Numbering (Serials)

**Mandatory**

#### ~~Introductory note~~

The numbering area consists of the numbers and/or dates of coverage of the first and/or last issue or part ~~of a serial~~ bearing the title proper given in area 1. ~~For integrating resources, such information usually is not applicable.~~

4410 The dates given in area 3 may or may not ~~be identical~~ **coincide** with the dates of publication given in area 4.

~~When the description is being made from an intermediate issue or part, numbering of the first and/or last issue or part may be given in area 3, enclosed in square brackets. If a source of the numbering of the first and/or last issue or part is not available, any information about the first and/or last issue or part may be given in area 7 (see 7.3.3.2). The area is omitted if a source of the numbering of both the first and last issues or parts is are not available. When the description is not based on the first and/or last issue or part, information about the issue or issue(s) or part or part(s) used is given in area 7 (see 7.9.4).~~

Numbering data other than that relating to the first and/or last issue or part may also be given in area 7 (see 7.3.3.1, 7.3.3.4).

#### ~~Recommended punctuation~~ **Prescribed punctuation**

4420 **A.** ~~The numbering area is preceded by a point, space, dash, space (. –).~~

**AB.** A hyphen (-) after the number and/or date of the first issue or part of the serial links this numbering to the number and/or date of the last issue or part of the serial, or indicates that the serial is continuing. If only the number and/or date of the last issue or part is given, the number and/or date is preceded by a hyphen (-).<sup>20</sup>

**BC.** When there is an issue or part number and a date, the date is enclosed in parentheses ( ( ) ) after the number unless the number is a division of the date (see 3.3.3).

**CD.** The second and each subsequent system of numbering used in the same issues as the first one is preceded by a space, equals sign, space (=).

4430 **DE.** ~~The number of the first issue or part of a~~ **A** new sequence of numbering ~~that does not include a statement of the new sequence~~ is preceded by a space, semicolon, space (;).

~~E. The designation of each new sequence of numbering is preceded by a space, semicolon, space (;), and its numbering is preceded by a comma, space (,).~~

#### ~~Examples~~ **Punctuation patterns**

**.–** Date of the first issue or part–date of the last issue or part

<sup>20</sup> When the numeric or chronological designation of the first or last issue or part given in area 3 includes a hyphen, a double hyphen (--) without a space on either side may be substituted for the hyphen that links the numeric or chronological designation of the first and last issues or parts or that indicates that the serial is continuing.

4440

- ~~.- Date of the first issue or part-~~
- ~~.- Number of the first issue or part-number of the last issue or part~~
- ~~.- Number of the first issue or part-~~
- ~~.- Number of the first issue or part (date of the first issue or part)-number of the last issue or part (date of the last issue or part)~~
- ~~.- Number of the first issue or part (date of the first issue or part)-~~
- ~~.- -number of the last issue or part (date of the last issue or part)~~
- ~~.- Number of the first issue or part-number of the last issue or part = other number of the first issue or part-other number of the last issue or part~~
- ~~.- Number of the first issue or part-number of the last issue or part ; number of the first issue or part using a new sequence of numbering-number of its last issue or part~~
- ~~.- Number of the first issue or part-number of the last issue or part ; statement of the new sequence, number of its first issue or part-number of its last issue or part~~

### Prescribed source

4450

The resource itself, ~~authoritative sources such as national bibliographies. Information taken from a source other than one of the prescribed sources is given in square brackets if it is recorded in this area.~~

### 3.3.1 ~~Recording the numbering statement~~ **Transcription**

**3.3.1.1** Numbering data are given in the form ~~and order~~ as they appear on the issue or part, except that arabic numerals are ~~substituted for~~ **given in place of** other ~~numbers~~ **numerals** or spelled-out ~~numerals~~ **numbers**. These are given with the designation of issue or part, if any, or equivalent in a standard abbreviated form **and in hierarchical order**. **If a number or date on the issue or part includes more than one number, month, year, etc., separated by a hyphen, a slash is used in place of the hyphen to avoid confusion with the hyphen that separates the designations of the first and last issues.**

#### *Examples*

4460

- ~~.- Bd. 1-~~
- ~~.- Vol. 1-~~
- ~~.- Pt. 1-~~
- ~~.- 15 Jan. 1970-~~
- ~~.- Mai 1972-~~
- ~~.- 1916 ed.-~~
- ~~.- 2e trimestre 1973-~~
- ~~.- 1969-~~
- ~~.- 1. köt.-~~
- ~~.- 1974 febr.-~~
- ~~.- 1980/1981-~~

- 4470 . – 1999/2000-  
*Editorial comment: Designation appears on issue as: 1999-2000.*
- . – Aug./Sept. 1970-  
*Editorial comment: Designation appears on issue as: August-September 1970.*
- . – No. 1/2-  
*Editorial comment: Designation appears on issue as: Number 1-2.*

Incomplete, inaccurate, or misspelled data are completed or corrected by inserting the missing element(s) information or by giving the correct version, enclosed in square brackets (~~see also 0.9~~).

*Examples*

- . – [19]76-
- 4480 . – Vol. 1 ([19]83)-
- . – 1986 [i.e. 1968]-
- . – Vol. 20 [i.e. 21] (1846)-

**3.3.1.2** Dates not of the Gregorian calendar are recorded as given on the ~~prescribed~~ source of information. The equivalent dates of the Gregorian calendar are added in square brackets if they do not appear on the ~~serial~~ resource.

*Examples*

- . – 1353 [1979]-
- . – No 1 (22 haha 85 E.P. [27 oct. 1957])-
- . – No 1 (3 niv. an 6 [23 déc. 1797])-
- 4490 **3.3.2** When the issues or parts of a serial are identified by only a number *or* a date, the numbers ing or dates of the first issue or part ~~are~~ is recorded.

*Examples*

- . – Vol. 1-
- . – Bd. 1-
- . – 1925-
- . – 15 Jan. 1970-
- . – Mai 1972-
- . – 1916 ed.-
- . – 2e trimestre 1973-
- 4500 . – 1号-
- . – 제1호-

**3.3.3** When the issues or parts of a serial are identified by a number *and* a date, both these elements that appear on the first issue or part are recorded. The number precedes the date.

*Examples*

- . – Vol. 1, no. 1 (Jan. 1971)-
- . – Vol. 1 (1960)-
- . – 1号 (昭和21年1月)-
- . – 제1권 제1호 (1980년 1월)-

However, when the number is a division of the date, the number is generally given after the date.

4510

*Examples*

- . – 1971, no. 1 (Jan. 1971)-
- . – 1967, no. 1-
- . – [19]85, 1-

*Editorial comment:* Numbering appears on issue as 1-85.

**3.3.4** When a serial is a continuation of one or more other serials (see [7.2 A.2.6](#)), the number and/or date given is that of the first issue or part ~~that bears the new title proper~~ of the new serial.

*Examples*

- . – Bd. 5 (1957/63)-
- . – 6 (1963)-

4520

**3.3.5** When there are designations in more than one language and/or script on the issue or part, the designation appearing in the language and/or script of the title proper ~~or, if this criterion does not apply, the first,~~ is given in area 3; if this criterion does not apply, the first is given. The parallel designations may also be given.

*Examples*

- . – Vol. 20-
- or*
- . – Vol. 20- = T. 20- = Bd. 20-
- . – 1976, broj 1 (1 siecenj = 1 jan)-

4530

**3.3.6** When the numbering system on the issue(s) or part(s) being described source ~~the numbering system~~ contains more than one numeric and/or chronological designation in different calendars, all the numbers and designations are given in area 3.

*Examples*

- . – Bd. 1, Nr. 1 (Frühling 1970)- = Nr. 1-
- . – Vol. 6, no. 2- = Vol. 13, no. 3 (Mar. 1969)-
- Editorial comment:* Each issue continues the numbering of the two predecessor titles.
- . – No 1 (13 sept. 1797 = 27 fruct. an 7)-
- . – 11卷 1号 (1958)- = 101号 (1958)-

. – 17권 6호 (1989)- = 130호 (1989)-

- 4540 **3.3.7** When describing a serial that has ceased publication, the number and/or date of the last issue or part is given following the number and/or date of the first issue or part. If the number and/or date of the first issue or part is not known, only the number and/or date of the last issue or part is given.

*Examples*

. – Vol. 1, no. 1 (Jan. 1971)-vol. 5, no. 12 (Dec. 1975)  
 . – Bd. 1-Bd. 70  
 . – 1936-1965  
 . – 1971, no. 1 (Jan. 1971)-1975, no. 12 (Dec. 1975)  
 . – [19]85, 1-[19]93, 3  
 . – Bd. 5 (1957/63)-Bd. 6 (1964/70)  
 . – Bd. 1, Nr. 1 (Frühling 1970)-Bd. 6, Nr. 3 (Winter 1975) = Nr. 1-Nr. 24

- 4550 . – -årg. 38, n:r 4 (26. mars 1892)  
 . – No 188 (22 oct. 1796 = 1er brum. an 5)-no 500 (4 sept. 1797 = 18 fruct. an 5)  
 . – No 1 (15 clinamen 77 E.P. [6 avr. 1950])-no 28 (1er absolu 85 E.P. [8 sept. 1957])  
 . – Vol. 1, pt. 1 (Dec. 1989)  
*Editorial comment: Only issue published.*  
 . – 1卷1号 (大正8年4月)-36卷2号 (昭和30年2月)  
 . – 1호 (1988년 7월)-30호 (1990년 12월)

- 4560 **3.3.8** When a serial adopts a new sequence of numbering but a new description is not required (see A.2.7) the title proper does not change, the numbering of the first sequence is given followed by the numbering of the new sequence. Normally, the serial carries a designation, such as “new series”, “second series”, etc., to indicate that a new sequence of numbering, not a new serial, is intended. The statement-designation of the new sequence, if any, is given, followed by a comma and precedes its numbering.

*Examples*

. – Bd. 1 (1962)-Bd. 6 (1967) ; n.F., Bd. 1 (1968)-  
 . – Vol. 1, no. 1 (Jan. 1941)-vol. 4, no. 5 (May 1950) ; n.s., vol. 1, no. 1 (June 1950)-vol. 2, no. 12 (May 1952)  
 . – Vol. 1, no. 1 (Mar. 1950)-vol. 4, no. 5 (Aug. 1954) ; Dec. 1954-  
 . – Vol. 1 (1921)-vol. 19 (1939) ; n.s., vol. 1 (1946)-vol. 30 (1975) ; vol. 50 (1976)-  
 . – Vol. 1, no. 1 (Nov. 23, 1936)-vol. 73, no. 25 (Dec. 29, 1972) ; vol. 1, no. 1 (Oct. 1978)-

- 4570 . – 31 Mar. 1961-26 Sept. 1969 ; year 1, no. 1 (1 Oct. 1969)-  
 . – T. 12, 40/41 (jan.-juil. 1962)-t. 27, 103 (dec. 1977) ; nuova serie, 1-/2 (sett. 1978)-  
 . – 1-v. 101 ; new ser., v. 1-

~~3.3.9~~ — When describing a subseries or a supplement/inset with a dependent title (see 1.1.5.3), the numbering of the subseries or of the supplement/inset is given in area 3. The numbering in the main series is given in area 6, or if this does not apply, a note on the numbering relating to the main series or to the main resource is given in area 7 (see 7.3.3, 7.6.3).

*Example*

Dunántúli tudományos gyűjtemény. Series geographica

*In area 3:* . – 31. sz. –

*In area 6:* . – (Dunántúli tudományos gyűjtemény ; 58. sz. –)

4580

**3.3.10** In describing a facsimile reproduction or other photographic reproduction, ~~the elements of area 3 are~~ the numbers and/or dates of the original serial are given.

**3.3.10 No designation on first issue or part**

If the first issue or part of a serial is available but lacks any numbering, ~~but~~ and subsequent issues or parts define a designation pattern, numbering is supplied for the first issue or part based on that pattern. If information about designations of subsequent issues or parts is not available, *[No. 1]*- (or its equivalent in the language of the title proper) or a chronological designation for the first issue or part is given as appropriate.

*Examples*

4590

. – [Pt. 1]-

*Editorial comment:* Subsequent issues numbered Part 2, Part 3, etc.

. – [No. 1]-

. – [1968]-

*Editorial comment:* An annual report for which a chronological designation is more appropriate.

. – [第1号 1 第号]-

. – [1□]-

## 4 PUBLICATION, PRODUCTION, DISTRIBUTION, ETC., AREA

### Introductory note

4600 The publication, production, distribution, etc., area includes the place of publication, production and/or distribution; the name of publisher, producer, and/or distributor; the date of publication, production, and/or distribution; the place of printing or manufacture; the name of printer or manufacturer; and the date of printing or manufacture. The elements are defined in the glossary.

4610 The ~~term~~ phrase “publication, production, ~~or~~ distribution, etc.” is intended to cover all types of publication, production, distribution, issuing and release activities connected with resources. Area 4 is also used to record data connected with the physical manufacture of the resource, but these are distinguished from the publication, production, distribution, etc., activities, although both may be executed by the same person or body. When a person or body combines the activities of publication, production, distribution, etc., with those of physical manufacture or when it is uncertain whether the person or body is responsible for publication, production, distribution, etc., or for physical manufacture alone, the statement is treated as one relating to publication, production, distribution, etc.

~~In the context of applying the ISBD, all remote access electronic resources are considered to be published.~~

#### For older monographic resources:

The modern functions of publisher, bookseller, printer and distributor are often undifferentiated in older monographic resources. ~~In the stipulations that follow, the name and location of the printer are given equal status to those of the publisher, bookseller or distributor.~~ Unless otherwise indicated, the terms “place of publication, printing production, and/or distribution, etc.” and “name of publisher, printer, etc. producer and/or distributor” are used to refer to the location and name of a publisher, bookseller, printer or distributor.

#### For reproductions:

4620 ~~The publication or production statement is that of the resource being described. In describing a facsimile or other photographic, micrographic, or digitised reproduction, the publication or production statement of the reproduction is given in the publication, production, distribution, etc., area. The publication or production statement of the original is given in area 7 (see 7.2.4.2).~~

#### *Examples*

~~— London : London Topographical Society, 1898~~

~~Note: Facsimile reproduction. Originally published: London : R. Walton, [1654]~~

~~— New York : Lea Pocket Scores~~

4630 ~~Note: Facsimile reproduction. Originally published: Leipzig : Breitkopf & Härtel, 1881~~

~~— New York : Johnson Reprint Corp., 1971~~

~~Note: Facsimile reproduction. Originally published: Boston : Houghton, Mifflin, 1881~~

### Contents

#### 4.1 Place of publication, production and/or distribution

4.2 Name of publisher, producer and/or distributor

~~4.3 Statement of function of distributor~~

4.4.3 Date of publication, production and/or distribution

4.5.4.4 Place of printing- or manufacture ~~or engraving~~

4.6.4.5 Name of printer, or manufacturer ~~or engraver and (for older monographic resources) and/or other printing information~~

4.7.4.6 Date of printing or manufacture

4640

~~Recommended punctuation~~ **Prescribed punctuation**

**A.** The publication, production, distribution, etc., area is preceded by a point, space, dash, space ( . – ).

**B.** A second or subsequent place is preceded by a space, semicolon, space ( ; ), unless a linking word or phrase is given.

**C.** Each name is preceded by a space, colon, space ( : ) unless in the case of second or subsequent publishers, producers, distributors, etc., a linking word or phrase is given.

4650 **D.** Parallel information is preceded by a space, equals sign, space ( = ).

~~**E.** A supplied statement of function of a distributor is enclosed in square brackets ( [ ] ).~~

~~**F.**~~ **E.** The date is preceded by a comma, space ( , ).

~~**G.**~~ **F.** A hyphen (-) after the date of publication of the first issue or part or the first iteration of an integrating resource links this date to the date of the last issue or part or the last iteration of the resource, or indicates that the resource is continuing.

~~**H.**~~ **G.** The place of printing or manufacture, name of the printer or manufacturer and date of printing or manufacture (for older monographic resources, when recorded as a statement distinct from the publishing statement) are enclosed in one pair of parentheses ( ( ) ). Within the parentheses the same punctuation is used as in B, C and ~~F.~~ **E.**

4660 Elements in this area can be repeated in any pattern that is appropriate to the resource being described.

~~Examples of such patterns are:~~

**Punctuation patterns**

- . – Place of publication or production : name of publisher or producer, date
- . – Place of publication or production : name of publisher or producer ; place of publication or production : name of publisher or producer, date
- . – Place of publication or production ; place of publication or production : name of publisher or producer, date (place of printing or manufacture : name of printer or manufacturer, date)
- . – Place of publication or production : name of publisher or producer, date ; place of distribution : name of distributor ~~{function}~~, date
- . – Place of publication or production ; place of publication or production : name of publisher or producer, date (place of printing or manufacture ; place of printing or manufacture : name of printer or manufacturer, date)
- . – Place of publication or production = parallel statement of place of publication or production : name of publisher or producer, date

4670

- 4680
- . – Place of publication or production : name of publisher or producer = parallel statement of place of publication or production : parallel statement of name of publisher or producer, date
  - . – Place of distribution : name of distributor ~~[function]~~, date (place of printing or manufacture : name of printer or manufacturer, date)
  - . – Place of publication or production : name of publisher or producer, date (place of printing or manufacture : name of printer or manufacturer)
  - . – Place of publication or production : name of publisher or producer : name of publisher or producer, date
  - . – Place of distribution : name of distributor ~~[function]~~, date
  - . – Place of publication : name of publisher ; place of production : name of producer, date ; place of distribution : name of distributor ~~[function]~~, date

### Prescribed sources

4690 Information taken from a source other than one of the following prescribed sources is given in square brackets if it is recorded in this area. However, if the different elements of this area are present on different sources of information, it may be necessary to combine these elements from the different sources.

The preferred order of sources is:

#### For monographic printed textual and notated music resources:

Title page, first page of music, other preliminaries, cover, colophon, ~~cover~~the rest of the resource.

#### For older monographic resources:

4700 Title page (unless the title page is discounted in the case of certain non-roman resources defined in 0.4.2.1). The colophon is a secondary prescribed source. If there is no title page and no colophon, or if the information for any element does not appear on the title page or in the colophon, the order of choice for a title page substitute is: half title, other preliminaries, caption title, docket title, running title, incipit, explicit, opening words of the main text, opening words of the resource, closing words of the main text, closing words of the resource.

Information in each element taken from a colophon or another prescribed source in the order of preference is accounted for in area 7. Information in each element not taken from a prescribed source for that element is given enclosed in square brackets if it is transcribed in this area.

#### ~~Form and order of presentation~~

4710 The publication, printing, distribution, etc., information is transcribed in the form in which it appears on the resource. Transcription is done using one of alternatives A and B, explained below.

It is not recommended that cataloguing agencies implement parts of alternative A with parts of alternative B on a single bibliographic record. However, libraries may find that

different groups of materials within their collections lend themselves best to one alternative or the other.

Single stipulations or examples in area 4 will only apply in either alternative A or alternative B. Such stipulations and examples are marked with “A” or “B”, respectively. Rules or examples that apply to both alternatives are marked with “A & B”. Every A, B or A & B designation is valid for the stipulations or examples that follow until there is a new A, B or A & B designation. The prescribed punctuation in examples may not apply to treatment according to alternative B, even if the main focus of a rule does, e.g. a rule about supplying information enclosed in square brackets. A number of stipulations for A concern specific elements of area 4. For alternative B, the general guidelines below should be consulted instead, if no particular B stipulation is specified.

4720

### *Alternatives*

**A.** Transcription is carried out according to the form of the resource, using prescribed punctuation between elements and with elements being repeated enclosed in square brackets if necessary. An exact quotation may be provided in area 7 if necessary for identification.

4730

#### *Example*

— At Dovay : 1617. By [P. Auroi for] John Heigham, [1617]

*Editorial comment:* Publication, printing, distribution, etc., statement reads: “At Dovay, 1617. By John Heigham”

**B.** Transcription is carried out according to both the form and order on the resource, retaining original punctuation. Prescribed punctuation between elements is added only when it can be done without distorting the original and when it is clear that the different roles of place of publication place of printing, publisher printer apply. Information taken from a colophon is preceded by “[Colophon:]”, or its equivalent in another language or script.

4740

Alternative B is designed to give guidance to those cataloguing agencies that wish to reflect the phrasing of the original resource more exactly and in a simpler manner. It is assumed that agencies applying exact recording will always create authority forms and/or supply standardized or controlled forms for the different elements of area 4 (including the date in arabic numerals).

#### *Examples*

— At Dovay, : 1617. By [P. Auroi for] John Heigham

*Editorial comment:* Original punctuation retained, date of publication printing not repeated

— A Toulouse : par Jean Boude, 1680. Jouxte la copie imprimée à Paris ...

4750

— Stockholm, ; Upsala, ; Carlstad, ; Westerås und ; Örebro. : Bei Em. Bruzelius., 1821. ([Colophon:] Upsala, : gedruckt bei Em. Bruzelius., 1821.)

*Editorial comment:* Original punctuation recorded and prescribed punctuation added; **publishing and printing statements clearly distinguishable**

In most cases the roles and functions of the different parts of the publication, printing, distribution, etc., statement do not conform to the modern categories of place of publication or printing, publisher or printer etc., but are rather integrated or unclear.

*Examples*

- 4760
- London printed, Dublin reprinted
  - Stockholm, 1776. Trykt hos Henr. Fougst, r. af k.w.o. kongl. boktryckare
  - Sold by T. Richardson in London
  - In Venetia apresso di Ciotti. [Colophon:] In Venetia, M.DC.XXI. Nella Stamperia dio Gio Battista Ciotti
  - Printed in the year M.DCC.XLIV. and sold at the pamphlet-shops in London and Westminster
  - London: printed by John Bell, British Library, Strand, bookseller to His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales. MDCCLXXXIX.
- 4770
- Getruckt zu Franckfurt am Main, im Jar M.D.LXVI. [Colophon:] Getruckt zu Franckfurt am Main, bey Georg Raben, in verlegung Sigmund Feyrabends vnd Simon Hüters, als man zalt nach Christi geburt tausent, fünffhundert, sechss vnd sechtzig Jar
  - Bruxellae M.DC.XXIII. Cum gratia et priuilegio [Colophon:] Lovanii, typis Henrici Hastenii. M.DC.XXIII
- Editorial comment:* Original punctuation recorded, no prescribed punctuation added; **publishing and printing statements not separable**

**For continuing resources:**

The resource itself.

- 4780
- For cartographic resources, and  
For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images, and electronic resources:**

The resource itself, container, accompanying material.

**For notated music resources:**

Title page, other preliminaries, first page of music, cover, colophon.

**For electronic resources:**

The resource itself, documentation, other accompanying material, container.



## 4.1 Place of publication, production and/or distribution

**Mandatory**

4790 **4.1.1** The place of publication, production and/or distribution is the name of the place associated on the prescribed source of information with the name of the publisher, ~~or producer (or principal publisher or producer if more than one name appears)~~ or distributor (see 4.2). If no publisher, producer or distributor is named, it is the place from which the resource was issued or distributed.

### ~~For older monographic resources:~~

~~**A & B.** \_\_\_\_\_ The place of publication, printing, distribution, etc., is the name of the most prominently indicated (generally first named) place in which the resource is published, etc., as named on the resource.~~

### *Examples*

- . – London
- 4800 . – Baltimore
- . – Москва

~~**A.** When the information is taken from a source other than the title page (or the colophon of a single sheet resource), this source is recorded in area 7.~~

### *Examples*

~~. – Coloniae [Printed text] : ex aedibus Quentelianis, anno d[omi]ni, MDXXXI., [1531]~~

~~*Note:* The publication statement is taken from the colophon~~

~~**B.** When the information is taken from a source other than the title page or colophon, the source is recorded in area 7.~~

4810 *Example*

~~. – [Colophon:] Coloniae, ex aedibus Quentelianis. Anno d[omi]ni, MDXXXI.~~

~~*Editorial comment:* original punctuation is retained, prescribed punctuation is not added.~~

**4.1.2** If the information appearing on the prescribed source of information is known to be incorrect, a correction may be supplied in square brackets (see ~~0.9~~[A.8](#)) and/or an explanation given in area 7 (see 7.4.1).

### *Examples*

4820 . – Dublin  
*Note:* Known to be published in Belfast

- . – Paris [i.e. Leiden]  
*Editorial comment:* Known to have been published in Leiden.

~~. – London  
*Note:* Published in Agen~~

**For older monographic resources:**

**A & B.** If the information appearing on the resource is known to be fictitious or incorrect, a correction is supplied, enclosed in square brackets following the abbreviation *i.e.*, and an explanatory note is given in area 7. *Alternatively*, only the note is given.

*Examples*

4830

~~. – Paris [i.e. Leiden]~~~~Note: The place of publication is false; published at Leiden~~

. – London [i.e. Agen]

Note: Published at Agen

or

. – London

Note: Published at Agen

4840

~~. – Printed overseas, in Europe, within two furlongs of a Bouncing Priest [i.e. East Molesey]~~~~Note: The place of publication is fictitious; identified as East Molesey in STC (2nd ed.)~~

or

~~. – Printed overseas, in Europe, within two furlongs of a Bouncing Priest~~~~Note: Printed at East Molesey~~

. – Tripilo [i.e. Dublin]

Note: The place of publication is fictitious; identified by the Huntington Library as Dublin

or

. – Tripilo

Note: The place of publication is fictitious; identified by the Huntington Library as Dublin

4850

. – Zippelzerbst gedruckt durch Flachslanden [i.e. Leipzig : Johann Heinrich Ellinger]

Note: The place and publisher are fictitious; publisher identified by the publisher's device (VD17 23:321271P)

**4.1.3** When more than one place is associated with the name of a single publisher, producer or distributor, the place made more prominent by typography or, if there is no typographical distinction, the place name that appears first is given. If there is no typographical distinction and the places do not appear in sequence, the place considered most important to users of the catalogue is given.

**For older monographic resources:**

~~A.~~ When there are two or more places of publication, ~~printing~~ **production**, ~~and/or~~ distribution, ~~etc.~~, and when the second and subsequent places are linguistically separate from the name of the publisher, ~~printer~~ **producer**, ~~and/or~~ distributor, ~~etc.~~, all are recorded in the order **indicated by the sequence** in which they appear on the prescribed source.

4860

*Examples*

. – London ; York

**A & B.**

. – A Lausanne & se trouve à Paris

**4.1.4** A second or subsequent place may be given.

*Examples*

. – London ; Chicago

. – Köln ; Paris

. – København ; Oslo

4870 . – Barcelona ; Lisbon

. – Berlin ; Köln ; Frankfurt am Main

**4.1.5** When a second or subsequent place is omitted, the omission may be indicated by “etc.” or its equivalent in another script, enclosed in square brackets (see also 4.2.4).

*Examples*

. – Wien [etc.]

. – Москва [и др.]

. – London ; New York ; Paris [etc.]

. – Toronto [etc.]

4880 **4.1.6** When the names of more than one publisher or producer are given ([see 4.2.3](#)), the place of publication or production for each publisher or producer is given immediately before the name, unless it is the same as that of the first-named publisher or producer.

*Examples*

~~. – New York : Columbia Records ; Harper & Row~~

. – New York : Columbia University ; Boston : Computer Research Institute

. – Paris : Gallimard ; Julliard

**4.1.7** When both a publisher or producer and a distributor are given ([see 4.2.5](#)), the place of distribution is given if it differs from the place of publication or production.

*Examples*

. – Washington, D.C. : Smithsonian Institution ; New York : distributed by W.W. Norton

4890 . – Washington, D.C. : U.S. Bureau of the Census ; Rosslyn, Va. : distributed by  
DUALabs

. – Boulder : East European Monographs ; New York : Columbia University Press  
[distributor]

**4.1.8** The place of publication, production and/or distribution is given in the orthographic form and grammatical case in which it appears on the resource.

*Examples*

- . – V Praze
- . – Frankfurt am Main
- . – Pestini
- . – Torino

4900

**For older monographic resources:**

~~A. The place of publication, printing, distribution, etc., is transcribed in the form given on the source.~~

*Examples*

- ~~. – Frankfurt am Main~~
- ~~. – Pestini~~
- ~~. – Augustae Taurinorum~~
- ~~. – Coloniae Allobrogum~~

4910

Prepositions before the name of the place of publication, ~~printing, etc.~~ production and/or distribution etc., are included, as are any accompanying words or phrases associated with the name of the place and not linguistically linked to the name, address or sign of the publisher, printer, etc. Words or phrases that are so linked are transcribed with the name of the publisher, printer, etc. producer and/or distributor (see 4.2.6).

*Examples*

- . – A Lyon
- . – In London
- . – Imprinted at London
- . – Impressum ... Venetiis
- . – Nouvelleme[n]t i[m]primee a Paris
- . – London printed

4920

*Editorial comment:* Publication, ~~printing, etc.~~ production, distribution, etc., statement reads “London printed, in the year 1742”.

When the name of the place of publication, ~~printing, etc.~~ production and/or distribution is taken from within the name of the publisher, printer, etc. producer and/or distributor, it is enclosed in square brackets.

The place or places of publication, production and/or distribution appearing with the name of a publisher, producer and/or distributor are transcribed as part of the name of the publisher, producer and/or distributor and are also given, enclosed in square brackets, as the place or places of publication, production and/or distribution.

- 4930 Examples
- . – [London] : sold by T. Richardson in London
  - . – [Bresslaw] : bey Caspar Closemann, Buchhändlern in Bresslaw zubefinden
  - . – [London] : Philadelphia printed, London reprinted for C. Dilly
- When the name of the place appears in the text of both statements it is recorded in both places.
- Example
- . – In Fiorenza : stampato in Fiorenza appresso Lorenzo Torrentino  
Note: Statement of printing taken from the colophon
- 4940 When an address or sign of the publisher, printer, etc., is given on the resource, but without the name of the town or district, the name of the town is supplied enclosed in square brackets as the place of publication, production and/or distribution, and the address or sign is included with or as the name of publisher, producer and/or distributor.
- Examples
- . – [London]  
Editorial comment: Publication statement reads: J. Pitts, Printer and Toy Warehouse, 6 Great St. Andrew Street, 7 Dials.
  - . – [Paris]  
Editorial comment: Publication statement reads: à l'enseigne de l'éléphant (the trade sign of a Paris printer).
- 4950 . – [London]  
Editorial comment: Publication statement reads: sold in St. Paul's Churchyard.
- When the place of publication, production and/or distribution appears only as part of another area and is recorded there, or is taken or inferred from the name of publisher, producer and/or distributor, or is known only from information outside the prescribed sources of information for this area (including sources outside the resource), it is given enclosed in square brackets and in a standardized form chosen by the cataloguing agency. An explanatory note may be given in area 7.
- Examples
- . – [Köln]  
Editorial comment: Standardized form of name chosen by a cataloguing agency in Germany.
  - . – [London]  
Note: Shown in the Stationers' register as entered to a London bookseller
  - . – [Bayreuth] : impensis Orphonatrophei Baruthini, [1738] ([Bayreuth] : typis Friderici Eliae Dietzelii)
  - . – [Leipzig] : sumptibus Iohannis Fritzschi, bibl. Lips., [1674]  
([Weissenfels] : literis Johannis Brühlai, Gymn. Weissenf. typogr.)  
Note: Cf. VD17 14:052745K
- 4960

4970

. – [Venetiis] : Academia Veneta

**4.1.9** If it is considered necessary for identification, a ~~qualifier such as~~ the name of a larger place such as a country, state, etc., is added to the place of publication, production and/or distribution. It is preceded by a comma if transcribed from ~~the a~~ prescribed source of information or enclosed in square brackets if ~~transcribed~~ taken from another source.

*Examples*

- . – Washington, D.C.
- . – Cambridge, Mass.
- . – Santiago [Chile]
- . – London [Ontario]
- . – Cambridge [England]
- . – London, Ontario
- . – New Haven [Connecticut]
- . – 府中 [東京]
- . – 고성군 [강원도]

4980

If it is considered necessary for identification, the full address of the publisher, producer or distributor is added to the place name. It is enclosed in parentheses if transcribed from ~~the a~~ prescribed source of information or in square brackets if transcribed from another source. (See also 4.2.8 for addresses given as part of the identification of the publisher or printer for older monographic resources.)

*Examples*

- 4990
- . – London [37 Pond Street, N.W.3]
  - . – St-Bruno-de-Montarville, Québec (1985 La Duchesse)
  - . – Vancouver (571 Howe Street)
  - . – [England] : Glyndebourne Festival Opera, 1977 ; New York (P.O. Box 153, Ansonia Station, New York, N.Y. 10032) : [distributed by] Video Arts International, 1985  
*Editorial comment:* The place where the office of the Glyndebourne Festival Opera is located is not known (see 4.1.4~~5~~12).
  - . – Cupertino, CA (10648 Gascoigne Dr., Cupertino 95014)
  - . – Paris (66, avenue de Versailles, 75016)

**For older monographic resources:**

5000

~~**A & B.** The name of the place of publication, printing, distribution, etc., is followed by the name of the country or similar designation when it appears on the prescribed source. If it is considered necessary for identification, for example, to distinguish the place from others of the same name, a qualifier may be added to the name of the place, enclosed in square brackets.~~

*Examples*

- – Cambridge, Massachusetts  
*Editorial comment:* State appears in source used
- – Cambridge [Mass.]
- – Newport [R.I.]
- 5010 · – Lugduni
- – Lugduni [Batavorum]  
*Editorial comment:* Lyon and Leyden, respectively
- – Londini
- – Londini [Gothorum]  
*Editorial comment:* London, Great Britain and Lund, Sweden, respectively

**4.1.10** If it is considered necessary for identification, an alternative or corrected version of the place name is supplied (see 4.A.89), enclosed in square brackets. The abbreviation “i.e.” is used for corrections (see 4.1.2).

*Examples*

- 5020 · – Christiania [Oslo]
- – Lerpwl [Liverpool]
- – Leningrad [St. Petersburg]
- – Lodnon [i.e. London]
- – Florentiæ [Florence]
- – 江府 [江戸]
- – 황성 [서울]

**For older monographic resources:**

~~A. If it is considered necessary for identification, an alternative or corrected version of an obsolete, Latinized, unused or misspelled place name may be supplied enclosed in square brackets. The abbreviation “i.e.” is used for corrections (see 4.1.2).~~

5030

~~The alternative is given in a standardized form chosen by the cataloguing agency.~~

*Examples*

- – Lodnon [i.e. London]
- – Florentiæ [Firenze]  
*Editorial comment:* Modern form of name chosen by a cataloguing agency in Italy
- – Florentiæ [Florence]  
*Editorial comment:* Modern form of name chosen by a cataloguing agency in the United Kingdom

5040 **4.1.11 Parallel statements of place of publication**

**4.1.11.1** When the name of the place of publication, production and/or distribution appears on the prescribed source of information in more than one language and/or script, the name in the language and script of the title proper is given. If this criterion does not apply, the form of name made prominent by typography or, if there is no typographical distinction, the form of name that appears first, is given.

~~For monographic textual resources,  
For continuing resources,  
For cartographic resources and  
For electronic resources:~~

~~The form of name in the language and script of the title proper is given. If this criterion does not apply, the form of name made prominent by typography or, if there is no typographical distinction, the form of name that appears first, is given.~~

5050 ~~For notated music resources and  
For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:~~

~~The form of name made prominent by typography or, if there is no typographical distinction, the form of name that appears first is given. If neither of these criteria applies, the linguistic form that corresponds to the language of the resource is given.~~

**4.1.12–11.2** Parallel statements may be given. If these are not given, no indication is made of the omission.

5060 *Examples*

- . – Genf = Genève
- . – Bern = Berne
- . – Nueva York = New York

**For older monographic resources:**

~~A.~~ The form of name that appears first is given, followed by the other forms of name in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the prescribed source.

*Example*

~~. – Brussel = Bruxelles~~

~~B. See 4.2.12.1.~~

5070 **4.1.13 Specific stipulation related to the place of publication**

**For older monographic resources:**

~~A.~~ The place(s) of publication, printing, distribution, etc., appearing with the name of a publisher, printer, etc., or as part of an edition statement contained in the statement of publication, printing, distribution, etc., information are transcribed as part of the name of

the publisher, printer, distributor, etc., and are also given, enclosed in square brackets, as the place(s) of publication, printing, distribution, etc.

*Examples*

- [London] : sold by T. Richardson in London
- [Bresslaw] : bey Caspar Closemann, Buchhändlern in Bresslaw-zubefinden
- [London] : Philadelphia-printed, London-reprinted for C. Dilly

5080

When the name of the place appears in the text of both statements it is recorded in both places.

*Example*

- In Fiorenza : Stampato in Fiorenza appresso Lorenzo Torrentino
- Note:* Statement of printing taken from the colophon

When an address or sign of the publisher, printer, etc., is given on the resource, but without the name of the town or district, the name of the town is supplied enclosed in square brackets as the place of publication, printing, etc., element, and the address or sign is included in the statement of publisher, printer, distributor, etc., information.

5090

*Examples*

- [London]  
*Editorial comment:* Publication statement reads: J. Pitts, Printer and Toy-Warehouse, 6 Great St. Andrew Street, 7 Dials
- [Paris]  
*Editorial comment:* Publication statement reads: à l'enseigne de l'éléphant (the trade sign of a Paris printer)
- [London]  
*Editorial comment:* Publication statement reads: sold in St. Paul's Churchyard

5100

When the place of publication, printing, distribution, etc., appears only as part of another area and is recorded there, or is taken or inferred from the name of publisher, printer, distributor, etc., or is known only from information outside the prescribed source of information for this area (including sources outside the resource), it is given enclosed in square brackets and in a standardized form chosen by the cataloguing agency. An explanatory note may be given in area 7.

**B.** When the place of publication, printing, distribution, etc., appears only as part of another area and is recorded there, or is inferred from the name of publisher, printer, distributor, etc., or is known only from information outside the prescribed source of information for this area (including sources outside the resource), it is given enclosed in square brackets and in a standardized form chosen by the cataloguing agency. An explanatory note may be given in area 7.

5110

*Examples***A & B:**

. – [Köln]

*Editorial comment:* Standardized form of name chosen by a cataloguing agency in Germany

. – [London]

*Note:* Shown in the Stationers' register as entered to a London bookseller**A:**

. – [Bayreuth] : impensis Orphonatrophei Baruthini, [1738] ([Bayreuth] : typis Friderici Eliae Dietzelii)

. – [Leipzig] : sumptibus Iohannis Fritzschi, bibl. Lips., [1674] – ([Weissenfels] : literis Iohannis Brühlacii, Gymn. Weissenf. typogr.)

*Note:* Cf. VD17 14:052745K

. – [Venetiis] : Academia Veneta

**B:**

. – Academia Veneta

. – Sumptibus Iohannis Fritzschi, bibl. Lips. [1674] [Colophon:] Literis Iohannis Brühlacii, Gymn. Weissenf. typogr.

*Note:* Cf. VD17 14:052745K*Editorial comment:* Original punctuation recorded, prescribed punctuation not added. There is no need to add full forms of Leipzig and Weissenfels, as they will be added as standardized information anyway.

5120

5130

**4.1.4412** When a place of publication, production and/or distribution does not appear anywhere on the prescribed sources of information, the name of the known city or town is supplied in square brackets. If the city or town is uncertain, or unknown, the name of the probable city or town followed by a question mark is may be supplied in square brackets. The name of the a larger jurisdiction place such as a country, state, etc., may be added. An explanatory note may be given in area 7.

*Examples*

5140

. – [Hamburg?]

. – [Evry]

. – [Paris]

. – [Prague?]

. – [Amsterdam?]

. – [Fawsley?]

. – [Portland, Maine?]

. – [大坂?]

. – [서울]

**For older monographic resources:**

- 5150 ~~A & B. When the place of publication, printing, distribution, etc., is uncertain or unknown, the name of a probable place is given enclosed in square brackets in a standardized form chosen by the cataloguing agency, followed by a question mark. An explanatory note may be given in area 7.~~
- ~~A & B. When the place of publication, printing, distribution, etc., does not appear on the prescribed source of information, but the place of printing is known from information outside the prescribed source of information for this area (including sources outside the resource), it is given enclosed in square brackets in a standardized form chosen by the cataloguing agency. An explanatory note is given in area 7.~~

- 5160 **4.1.1513** When the name of a city or town cannot be determined, the name of the state, province or country is given, according to the same stipulations as are applicable to the names of cities or towns.

*Examples*

- . – Canada  
*Editorial comment:* Known as place of publication; appears on prescribed source.
- . – [Aragon]  
*Editorial comment:* Known as place of publication; appears outside prescribed source.
- . – [Guatemala?]  
*Editorial comment:* Probable, but uncertain, as place of publication.

- 4.1.1614** When no place can be determined, the abbreviation “s.l.” (*sine loco*) or its equivalent in another script is supplied, enclosed in square brackets.

- 5170 *Examples*

- . – [S.l.]
- . – [B.M.]
- . – [出版地不详]
- . – [出版地不明]
- . – [발행지불명]

**4.1.1715 Change of place of publication, production and/or distribution****For older monographic resources:**

- 5180 ~~A & B. If a single bibliographic record **description** is being created for a resource that is either issued in more than one physical part and the place of publication, **printing production, and/or** distribution, etc., information of each part changes during the course of publication, or the resource contains individual title pages with places of publication, **printing production, and/or** distribution, etc., that differ from that pertaining to the whole resource, the place of publication, **printing production, and/or** distribution, etc., statements from the first or earliest part are **is** transcribed and the places of publication, **printing production, and/or** distribution, etc., of the other **part or** part(s) are given in area 7. (See also 4.2.15-13 and 4.4.10.1)~~

*Example*

. – Stuttgart ; Tübingen

*Note:* Vols. 33-40 have variant place of publication statement: Stuttgart;  
Augsburg

5190

**For serials and  
For multipart monographic resources:**

If the place of publication, production and/or distribution changes on subsequent issues or parts, the later place is given in area 7 (see 7.4.2.1) when necessary for identification or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue.

**For integrating resources:**

If the place of publication, production and/or distribution changes on subsequent iterations, the description is changed ~~and~~ **T**he earlier place is given in area 7 (see 7.4.2.2) when necessary for identification or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue.

5200

## 4.2 Name of publisher, producer and/or distributor

**Mandatory**

**4.2.1** The name of the publisher, producer and/or distributor corresponds to the person or corporate body that effects respectively the publication, production and/or distribution or release activities for the resource.

5210 A label name appearing in conjunction with the name of a publisher or production company on resources such as sound discs, cassettes, etc., is not transcribed in the publication, production, distribution, etc., area. It may be given in the series area if the label name is considered to be a series title (see area 6), or in the resource identifier and terms of availability area, if the name is accompanied by a catalogue number (see 8.1.4).

### For older monographic resources:

~~A~~- This element includes the name(s) of the one or more publisher(s), distributor(s), bookseller(s), and (if included on the a prescribed source of information for this element) the printer(s) of the resource, together with associated information concerning places of activity and statements of printing and reprinting.

**4.2.2** The name of the publisher or producer is given directly after the place of publication or production associated with it on the prescribed source of information.

#### *Examples*

- 5220
- . – London : Methuen
  - . – London : Library Association
  - . – Roazhon [Rennes] : Bremañ
  - . – Ташкент : “Фан”
  - . – [London] : Eccles Centre for American Studies
  - . – 東京 : 丸善
  - . – 서울 : 종로서적

5230 **4.2.3** When more than one publisher or producer is named on the prescribed source of information, the name made more prominent by typography or, if there is no typographical distinction, the name that appears first is given. If there is no typographical distinction and the names do not appear in sequence, the name considered most important to users of the catalogue is given (see also 4.2.12.1).

#### *Examples*

~~:-Pictorial Charts Educational Trust~~

~~:-La Nuova Italia~~

~~:-Иээгнэ~~

~~:-Softext~~

*Editorial comment: Publisher's name appears more prominent.*

: BPI Systems  
*Editorial comment: Publisher's name appears first.*

**For older monographic resources:**

~~The name that appears first is given.~~

5240

~~4.2.3~~ When more than one publisher or producer is named on the prescribed source of information,  
 4.2.3 Second and subsequent names of publishers or producers may be given.

*Examples*

- . – London : The Times ; Edinburgh : John Bartholomew & Son
- . – Paris : Institut géographique national ; Clermont-Ferrand : Éd. Parc des Volcans
- . – Paris : le Centurion : Desclée De Brouwer : Éd. du Cerf
- . – London : National Savings Committee ; Edinburgh : National Savings Committee for Scotland
- . – Waterloo [Ontario] : Leisure Studies Data Inc. ; Chicago : National Opinion Research Center
- . – Paris : Éd. Est-Ouest internationales : Éd. Unesco
- . – Madrid : Debate ; Barcelona : Círculo de Lectores
- . – [México, D.F.] : Alfaomega ; León : Everest
- . – Chicago : University of Chicago Press ; Milano : Ricordi

5250

**For older monographic resources:**

~~A.~~ When a resource has more than one publisher, ~~printer~~ **producer**, **and/or** distributor, etc., in a single source, generally all the names performing any function are transcribed in the order **indicated by the sequence** in which they appear. They are separated with prescribed punctuation only when they are not linked by connecting words or phrases.

5260 **4.2.4** When second or subsequent names of publishers or producers are omitted, the omission ~~is~~ **may be** indicated by “etc.” or its equivalent in another script, enclosed in square brackets (see also 4.1.5).

*Examples*

- : Evans [etc.]
- : Payot [etc.]
- : The Times [etc.]
- : Evaporated Milk Association [etc.]
- : American Association of Individual Investors [etc.]

**For older monographic resources:**

~~A.~~ If it is considered that the names are too numerous, the statement may be shortened by omitting all or some of the names after the first. In such cases, the mark of omission is

5270

used and after it, a phrase is supplied enclosed in square brackets to convey the extent of the omission. The number of omitted publishers, ~~printers~~ producers, and/or distributors, etc., is included, and the number of omitted places (if more than one) are included in the supplied phrase (see also 4.2.6). *Alternatively*, the information of what is omitted is given in area 7.

*Examples*

- 5280 : chez Claude Barbin ... Jean Boudot ... George & Louis Josse  
*Editorial comment:* The omissions are of the booksellers' addresses.
- : printed for F.C. and J. Rivington, Otridge and Son, J. Nichols and Co. ...  
 [and 26 others]
- or
- : printed for F.C. and J. Rivington, Otridge and Son, J. Nichols and Co. ...  
*Note:* 26 other publishers mentioned in the imprint
- : printed for James, John and Paul Knapton ... T. Becket ... T. Davies ... W. Jackson in Oxford, and A. Kincaid, and Company, in Edinburgh  
*Editorial comment:* The omissions are of the booksellers' addresses.
- 5290 : printed and sold by J. Newbery and C. Micklewright, also by Mess. Ware, Birt, Astley, Austen, Robinson, Dodsley, and Needham, in London ... [and 8 others in 8 places]
- or
- : printed and sold by J. Newbery and C. Micklewright, also by Mess. Ware, Birt, Astley, Austen, Robinson, Dodsley, and Needham, in London ...  
*Note:* Eight other publishers and places mentioned in the imprint

~~B. Generally, statements of publisher, printer, distributor, etc., appearing on the prescribed sources of information are quoted in full. Omissions may be made in lengthy statements, and in such cases, the mark of omission is used. Information on what is omitted is given in area 7.~~

*Examples*

- 5300 ~~— Edinburgi, Typis Academicis, prostant venales apud C. Elliot, et G. Creech et Londini apud J. Murray.~~  
*Editorial comment:* Full quotation. Original punctuation recorded, prescribed punctuation not added.

**4.2.5** Words or phrases indicating the function (other than solely publishing) performed by the person or body are given. If only the distributor is named, this must be given. When the names of both a publisher or producer and a distributor appear on ~~the a~~ the a prescribed source of information, the name of the distributor may be given. When the name of the distributor appears on any other source ~~or does not appear on the resource~~, it may be given in area 7 (see 7.4.1). ~~If only the distributor is named, this must be given.~~

Examples

- 5310 : published for the Social Science Research Council by Heinemann
- : printed for the CLA by Morriss Print. Co.
- : Boyers : distributed by Calder and Boyars
- : diffusion A. Lecot

- 5320
- : to be sold by Jas. Gardner
  - : distributor G. Schirmer
  - : released by Beaux Arts Co.
  - : produced for Bairnswear
  - : presented by Shell Education Service
  - : distributed by Harvard University Press
  - : privately printed for the Parish Register Section

When the function performed by the distributor is not explicitly stated, a brief word or phrase indicating the nature of the activity may be added, enclosed in square brackets.

Examples

- : Vacation Work [distributor]
- : Technical and Scientific Films : Film Producers Guild [distributor]
- ~~: Inter-university Consortium for Political Research [distributor]~~
- ~~: Europa-Diffusion [distributor]~~

**4.2.6** The name of a publisher, producer or distributor may be given in a shortened form, provided it can be understood and identified without ambiguity.

5330 *Examples*

- : Bietti  
*Editorial comment:* Publisher's name appears as Casa editrice Bietti.
- : Художественная литература  
*Editorial comment:* Publisher's name appears as Государственное издательство Художественная литература.
- : H.M. Gousha  
*Editorial comment:* Publisher's name appears as The H.M. Gousha Company.
- : M. Eschig  
*Editorial comment:* Publisher's name appears as Editions Max Eschig et Cie.

5340 ~~: Invicta~~  
~~*Editorial comment:* Publisher's name appears as Invicta Plastics Ltd.~~

- : Readex  
*Editorial comment:* Publisher's name appears as Readex Microprint Corporation.

~~: Xanara~~  
~~*Editorial comment:* Publisher's name appears as Xanara Technologies.~~

- : Addison-Wesley  
*Editorial comment:* Publisher's name appears as Addison-Wesley Publishing Company.

*but not*

- 5350
- : The Society  
*Editorial comment:* Publisher's name appears as American Chemical Society.

**For older monographic resources and  
For older cartographic resources:**

~~A & B.~~ The names of publishers, printers, distributors, etc., are transcribed in the form in which they appear on the prescribed source of information with necessary preceding words and phrases (see also 4.1.8).

*Examples*

~~A & B.~~

- : chez Augustin Courbé
- : en casa de Guilliemo Roville
- 5360 : na officina de Antonio de Sousa da Sylva
- : par Ian de Tournes pour Antoine Vincent
- : à l'enseigne l'enseigne de l'éléphant

~~A.~~

- : de l'imprimerie de Balleu, se trouve chez Marcilly [et chez] les marchands de nouveautés

*Note:* The two distributor statements are bracketed together following "chez"

~~A & B.~~

- : printed for J. Warner
- 5370 ~~: printed for J. Roberts and A. Dod~~
- : printed for the editor, and sold by him
- : by the widowe of Jhon Mommart
- : printed for the executors of the late widow Kelly

~~A.~~ Qualifications such as “printer to the King” and addresses may be omitted. However, addresses are given when they aid in identifying, dating or localizing the resource.

*Example*

- . – A Rouen : chez Jean Oursel, rue Ecuyere, vis-à-vis la rue du Petit-Puits, à l’Imprimerie du Levant

5380 ~~A & B.~~ Insignificant information in the middle or at the end of the statement of publication, ~~printing, etc.~~ production, distribution, etc., may be omitted. Such omissions are indicated by the mark of omission.

**4.2.7** When the name of the publisher, producer or distributor appears in full in area 1, either the full form may be repeated in area 4, or an abbreviated form may be given there. If a resource is privately printed, the person or body issuing the resource, whether a commercial publisher, a private press, or a person or body for whom the resource was printed, is given as the publisher.

*Examples*

- 5390 ~~Shadow dance / by Henry Clive Mackeson. – London : H. Mackeson  
Statement of responsibility: by Henry Clive Mackeson~~
- ~~Thésaurus de l'armement / Centre de documentation de l'armement. – [Paris] :  
CEDOCAR  
Statement of responsibility: Centre de documentation de l'armement~~
- ~~Liste des périodiques reçus au Centre national des recherches agronomiques. –  
Versailles : C.N.R.A.  
Title proper: Liste des périodiques reçus au Centre national des recherches  
agronomiques~~
- ~~Harlekin : für Klarinette / Karlheinz Stockhausen. – Kürten : Stockhausen  
Statement of responsibility: Karlheinz Stockhausen~~
- 5400 ~~The wonder of new life [Visual projection] / Cleveland Health Museum. – Cleveland :  
Cleveland Health Museum  
Statement of responsibility: Cleveland Health Museum~~
- ~~Fichier de terminologie [Microform] / Québec (Province), Office de la langue française,  
Centre de terminologie. – Québec : O.L.F.  
Statement of responsibility: Office de la langue française, Centre de terminologie~~
- ~~Chemical properties database [Electronic resource] / National Chemical Data Board. –  
Malden, MA : National Chemical Data Board  
Statement of responsibility: National Chemical Data Board~~
- ~~Social science citation index [Electronic resource] / Institute for Scientific Information. –  
[Philadelphia] : Institute for Scientific Information  
Statement of responsibility: Institute for Scientific Information~~
- 5410 ~~. – [Seattle?] : G.B. Schrier  
Statement of responsibility: by Gary B. Schrier  
Note: "Privately printed limited edition"~~
- ~~. – Bel Air, Md. : Jack L. Shagena  
Statement of responsibility: Jack L. Shagena  
Note: "Privately printed by the author"~~
- For older monographic resources:**
- 5420 ~~**A & B.** When the name of the publisher, printer, producer and/or distributor, etc.,  
information appears only in another area and is recorded there, or is known from  
information outside the prescribed sources of information for this element (including  
outside the resource), it is given in the shortest convenient form enclosed in square  
brackets. When the source of information is taken from a source other than the title page,  
this source is recorded in area 7.~~

*Examples**A.*

- . – [Paris] : [Philippe Pigouchet pour Symon Vostre], [25 avril 1500]  
*Editorial comment:* Pigouchet's device is on the title page. The title reads: Ces presentes heures a lusaige du Mans fure[n]t acheuees lan Mil. cincq ce[n]s le xxv jour dapuril pour Symon Vostre ...
- . – [London] : [Francis Barlow], 1605  
*Editorial comment:* End of title reads: illustrated with ... sculptures by Francis Barlow and are to be sold at his house.

5430

*B.*

- ~~. – A Paris, imprimé par l'auteur [P.S. Fournier], rue des Postes & se vend chez Barbou, rue S. Jacques. M.DCC.LXIV.  
*Editorial comment:* The author's name appears in the statement of responsibility on the title page~~

The name of the publisher, ~~printer, producer and/or distributor, etc.~~, is neither abridged because it repeats information nor expanded because it omits in consequence of it repeating or omitting, respectively, information relating to an author as publisher.

5440

*Example*

- . – Trykt udi London : af Frys, Couchman og Collier paa Forfatterens egen Bekostning  
*Editorial comment:* Printed by Frys, Couchman and Collier at the author's own cost; author is Ernst Wolff.

**4.2.8****For older monographic resources:**

~~A. When the name and/or address of the printer appears on the prescribed source of information with or without other names of publishers, printers, distributors, etc., it is given as, or as part of, the name of the publisher, printer, distributor, etc.~~

5450

*Examples*

- ~~: printed and are to be sold by Randal Taylor~~
- ~~: printed by J. and H. Hughs ... and sold by T. Payne~~
- ~~: J. Grundy, printer~~
- ~~: printed and sold at 60, Old Street~~
- ~~: tryckt hos Lars Salvius~~
- ~~: printed, and re-printed by E. Waters~~
- ~~: de l'imprimerie de J. Barbou~~
- ~~: typis exscripsit Joachimus Redanus~~

5460 In some cases the name and/or address of the printer appears on the prescribed source of information without the name, address or sign of the publisher or bookseller. If the latter is known, it is recorded after the name and/or address of the printer following a space, colon, space and enclosed in square brackets.

*Example*

~~:-acheuee de imprimer par maistre nicole de la barre : [chez Jean Petit]~~

~~Note: Statement of printing taken from colophon; the last leaf bears the device of Jean Petit, the bookseller~~

5470 ~~**B.** Generally, the information is transcribed in the order in which it appears on the prescribed source of information. Information that does not appear on the prescribed sources of information may be recorded enclosed in square brackets, or, alternatively it may be recorded in area 7.~~

*Example*

~~[Colophon:]acheuee de imprimer par maistre nicole de la barre~~

~~Note: The last leaf bears the device of Jean Petit, the bookseller~~

#### 4.2.9

#### **For sound recordings and For audiovisual resources:**

5480 A label name appearing in conjunction with the name of a publisher or production company on resources such as sound discs, cassettes, etc., is not transcribed in the publication, production, distribution, etc., area. It may be given in the series area (if the label name is considered to be a series title (see area 6), or in the standard identifier and terms of availability area, if the name is accompanied by a number prescribed as an alternative to a standard number (see area 8).

#### **4.2.10 8 Incomplete Incorrect name of publisher or producer**

~~When the information given on the resource is known to be fictitious or incorrect, a correction may be supplied, enclosed in square brackets (see 0.9) or given in area 7.~~

#### **For older monographic resources:**

5490 ~~**A & B.** When the information given in the resource is known to be fictitious or incorrect, a correction is supplied, enclosed in square brackets, and an explanatory note is given in area 7. When the information given in the resource is known to be fictitious or incorrect, but the source of the correct information cannot be ascertained, the publication, printing, etc., information is recorded and a note is given in area 7 indicating its status.~~

*Example*

~~:- apud Ruardum Phigrum [i.e. E. Griffin]~~

~~Note: Imprint is false; printed in London by E. Griffin~~

~~:- printed for A. Moore~~

~~Note: The bookseller's name in the imprint is fictitious~~

~~A & B.~~ When only the address, sign, or initials of the publisher, ~~printer,~~ **producer and/or** distributor, ~~etc.,~~ appears in lieu of the name, the address, sign, or initials are transcribed as the **name of** publisher, ~~printer,~~ **producer, and/or** distributor, ~~etc.,~~ **statement**. If the **name of the** publisher's, ~~printer's,~~ **producer and/or** distributor's, ~~etc.,~~ **name** can be identified, this name is supplied enclosed in square brackets by filling in the name after the initials or by adding the name before or after the address or sign, as appropriate. An explanatory note is given in area 7.

*Examples*

: [Jean-Pierre Costard] Rue Saint-Jean-de-Beauvais, la premiere porte cochere au dessus du College

*Note:* Costard named as publisher in: ~~Quérard, J.M.~~ La France littéraire / **J.M. Quérard**

: prostant in Coemeterio D. Pauli [apud Abelem Swalle]

*Note:* Publisher named on title page verso

: printed and sold [by John Evans] at No. 41, Long-Lane.

*Note:* John Evans active at this address between 1791 and 1795

5510 : printed by H[umphrey]. L[ownes]. for George Lathum at the Bishops head in Pauls Church-yard

*Note:* Printer's name according to ESTC\_S126474

~~B. Alternatively, only the note is given.~~

*Example*

~~: printed by H. L for George Lathum at the Bishops head in Pauls Church-yard~~

~~*Note:* "H.L." designates Humphrey Lownes according to ESTCS126474~~

**4.2.11 9 Name of publisher, producer **and/or** distributor taken from ~~information~~ **source** outside the prescribed **sources** of information**

5520 When the name of the publisher, producer **and/or** distributor is known from information outside the prescribed **sources** of information (including sources outside the resource), it is given in square brackets and in a form appropriate to the date, script and language of the resource. The source of the information is recorded in area 7.

*Example*

: [Paul Linley and John Flaskett]

*Note:* Publisher taken from Short Title Catalogue

When the name of the publisher, producer **and/or** distributor is uncertain or unknown, the name of a probable publisher or producer (or the names of a number of alternative publishers or producers) is **may be supplied**, followed by a question mark and enclosed in square brackets.

5530 *Example*

: [John Smith?]

**For older monographic resources:**

**An explanatory note of the supplied information is given in area 7.**

*Example*

: printed for the authors use [by Nicholas Okes?]

*Note:* Printer conjectured by Short title catalogue (2nd ed.)

**4.2.42 10 Parallel statements** Name of publisher, producer **and/or** distributor in more than one language and/or script

5540 **4.2.42 10.1** When the name of a publisher, producer **and/or** distributor appears on the prescribed source of information in more than one language and/or script: the form of name in the language and script of the title proper is given. If this criterion does not apply, the form of name made more prominent by typography or, if there is no typographical distinction, the form of name that appears first is given.

~~For monographic resources,  
For cartographic resources,  
For continuing resources and  
For electronic resources:~~

~~The form of name in the language or script of the title proper is given. If this criterion does not apply, the form of name made more prominent by typography or, if there is no typographical distinction, the form of name that appears first is given.~~

5550 **For older monographic resources:**

~~A.~~ The form of name that appears first is given, followed by the other forms of name in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the source.

~~B.~~ The statements are transcribed in the order indicated by the sequence of information on the title page.

*Example*

—: Wytisstené v Kryssstoffa Baumana, w Drazdanech = Gedruckt by  
Christoph Baumann zu Dreßden

5560 ~~**For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images and  
For notated music resources:**~~

~~The form of name made more prominent by typography or, if there is no typographical distinction, the form that appears first is given. If neither of these criteria applies, the linguistic form that corresponds to the language of the resource is given.~~

**4.2.42 10.2** Parallel statements may be given. If these are not given, no indication is made of the omission.

*Examples*

: Galerie nationale du Canada pour la Corporation des musées nationaux du Canada =  
National Gallery of Canada for the Corporation of the National Museums of Canada

: Bundeskanzlei = Chancellerie fédérale

5570 . – Kraków : Polskie wydawnictwo muzyczne = Krakau : Polnischer Musikverlag

- . – Bruxelles : Parlement européen, Direction générale des études = Brussels : European Parliament, Directorate General for Research

#### 4.2.13-11 Printer as substitute for name of publisher, etc.

The name of the printer or manufacturer is not given as a substitute for the name of an unknown publisher, producer or distributor, except for older monographic resources.

However, when a person or corporate body combines the activities of printing or manufacturing and publication, production or distribution, or when the responsibility is uncertain, a named printer or manufacturer is assumed to be also the publisher or producer.

##### *Examples*

- 5580 : Imprimerie nationale  
 : ~~Cuala Press~~  
 : ~~Oxford University Press~~  
 : Institut géographique national  
*Editorial comment:* I.G.N. The institute is both a publisher and a manufacturer.

#### **For older monographic resources:**

When the name and/or address of the printer appears on a prescribed source of information with or without other names of publishers, printers, distributors, etc., it is given as, or as part of, the name of the publisher, printer, distributor, etc.

##### Examples

- 5590 : printed and are to be sold by Randal Taylor  
 : printed by J. and H. Hughs ... and sold by T. Payne  
 : J. Grundy, printer  
 : printed and sold at 60, Old Street  
 : tryckt hos Lars Salvius  
 : printed, and re-printed by E. Waters  
 : de l'imprimerie de J. Barbou  
 : typis exscripsit Joachimus Redanus

In some cases the name and/or address of the printer appears on a prescribed source of information without the name, address or sign of the publisher or bookseller. If the latter is known, it is recorded after the name and/or address of the printer following a space, colon, space and enclosed in square brackets.

- 5600 : acheuee de imprimer par maistre Nicole de la Barre : [chez Jean Petit]  
*Note:* Statement of printing taken from colophon; the last leaf bears the device of Jean Petit, the bookseller

~~**A & B.** When the name of the publisher, printer, distributor, etc., is known from information outside the prescribed source of information for that element (including sources outside the resource), a standardized form chosen by the cataloguing agency is given enclosed in square brackets. The source of the information is recorded in area 7.~~

5610

*Example*

~~. – [London : Paul Linley and John Flaskett]  
*Note:* Publication statement taken from STC (2nd ed.)~~

~~When the name of the publisher, printer, distributor, etc., is uncertain or unknown, the name of a probable publisher followed by a question mark, or of a number of probable publishers, is supplied enclosed in square brackets. An explanatory note is given in area 7.~~

*Example*

~~: printed for the authors vse [by Nicholas Okes?]  
*Note:* Printer conjectured by STC (2nd ed.)~~

5620

**A & B.** When the name of the publisher, distributor or bookseller is unknown, but the name of the printer is known from information outside the prescribed sources of information for this area (including sources outside the resource) it is given enclosed in square brackets. The source of the information is recorded in area 7.

*Examples*

. – [East Molesey] : [Robert Waldegrave]  
*Note:* Statement of publication from STC [Short title catalogue](#) (2nd ed.).

. – [Genève] : [Cramer]  
*Note:* Statement of publication from Bibliothèque nationale catalogue

**4.2.14 12. Name of publisher unknown**

5630

When no name can be given as that of the publisher, producer or distributor, the abbreviation “s.n.” (*sine nomine*) or its equivalent in another script is supplied, enclosed in square brackets.

*Examples*

: [s.n.]  
 : [б.и.]  
 : [出版者不详]  
 : [出版者不明]  
 : [발행처불명]

**For older monographic resources:**

5640

**B.** When no name can be given as that of the publisher, printer, etc., the abbreviation “s.n.” (*sine nomine*) or its equivalent in another script may be supplied, enclosed in square brackets.

## 4.2.1513 Change of name of publisher, producer and/or distributor

### For serials and

### ~~For multipart monographic resources:~~

If changes occur in the name of the publisher, producer and/or distributor on subsequent issues or parts, the name of the later publisher, producer and/or distributor is given in area 7 (see 7.4.2.1) when necessary for identification or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue.

### ~~For older monographic resources:~~

5650

~~**A & B.** If a single bibliographic record is being created for a resource that is either issued in more than one physical part and the publisher, printer, distributor, etc., information of each part changes during the course of publication, or the resource contains individual title pages bearing publisher, printer, distributor, etc., information that differ from that pertaining to the whole resource, the publisher, printer, distributor, etc., information from the first or earliest part is transcribed and the publisher, printer, distributor, etc., information of the other part(s) is given in area 7 (see also 4.1.17 and 4.4.10.1):~~

~~**A.** The parts of a complex statement of publication, printing, distribution, etc., are separated by prescribed punctuation only when they are presented separately in the resource~~

#### *Examples*

5660

~~— Londres [i.e. Paris] : et se trouve à Paris, chez la veuve Duchesne (de l'imprimerie de P. Fr. Gueffier, rue de la Harpe)~~

~~*Note:* Statement of printing from colophon~~

~~— Prostant Pestini : apud authorem et Mauss Bibliopolam (Budae : typis Leopoldi Francisci Landerer)~~

~~**B.** Prescribed punctuation is omitted in a complex statement of publication, printing, distribution, etc., information:~~

#### *Examples*

5670

~~— Impressum Pragae. Sumptibus Joannis Ziegerii bibliopolae Norinbergensis. Apud Joannem Carolum Gerzabek, anno M.DC.XCIV.~~

~~— Francofurti apud Io. Wechelum, impensis Sigis. Feyrerabend. MDLXXXV.~~

~~— Cantabrigiæ, typis Academicis. Impensis Edm. Jeffery, bibliopolæ Cantabr. Prostant venales Londini apud Jac. Knapton, in cœmeterio D. Pauli. MDCCVIII.~~

### For integrating resources:

If changes occur in the name of the publisher, producer and/or distributor on subsequent iterations, the description is changed to reflect the latest iteration. and ~~†~~ The earlier name or name(s) are given in area 7 (see 7.4.2.2) when necessary for identification or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue.

5680

### 4.3 Statement of function of distributor

4.3.1 When the prescribed source of information includes as an integral part of the distribution statement an indication of the function performed by the distributor, the statement is transcribed in full.

*Examples*

: Boyars : distributed by Calder and Boyars

: diffusion A. Lecot

: to be sold by Jas. Gardner

: distributor G. Schirmer

: released by Beaux Arts Co.

: produced for Bairnswear

: presented by Shell Education Service

*: distributed by Harvard University Press*

4.3.2 When the function performed by the distributor is not explicitly stated, a brief word or phrase indicating the nature of the activity may be added, enclosed in square brackets.

*Examples*

: Vacation Work [distributor]

: [A. Colin, distributor]

: Information Insights [distributor]

: Information Canada [distributor]

*: Center for Human Resource Research [distributor]*

: EVR Partnership [distributor]

: Librería Facsímil y Arte [distributor]

: 三弥井書店 [発売]

: 회상사 [보급]

**For older monographic resources:**

This stipulation is not used.



### 4.43 Date of publication, production and/or distribution

***Mandatory***

5710 **4.43.1** The date or date(s) of publication, production or distribution of the resource ~~is~~(are) given.

*Examples*

~~,~~ 1979

~~,~~ 1995

~~,~~ 2002

~~,~~ 1968-2006

~~,~~ 2003-

*Editorial comment: Beginning publication date for online version of *Croatica chemica acta*, which includes issues from vol. 69, no. 1 (1996).*

#### **For older monographic resources:**

5720 **A.** The date of publication or printing of the edition or impression being described is given.

*Examples*

~~,~~ 1614

~~,~~ 1732, reprinted 1734

**B.** Generally, all dates appearing on the prescribed sources of information for the publication, printing, distribution, etc., area, are recorded.

#### **For electronic resources:**

5730 In the case of online services and other online integrating resources (e.g. World Wide Web sites), a note may be given to indicate also the year, month and day that appears on the resource (see 7.9).

**4.43.2** When the same date applies to both publication or production and distribution or to more than one publisher or producer and distributor, it is given after the last name or statement of function.

*Examples*

~~.~~ – New York : Sterling [etc.] ; London : distributed by Ward Lock, 1977

~~—~~ [Paris] : Institut géographique national ; [Châteauroux] : Chambre d'agriculture de l'Indre ; Blois : Chambre d'agriculture du Loir-et-Cher, 1984

~~—~~ Oslo : Musikk huset ; København : Imudico [distributor], 1980

~~—~~ Montreal : National Film Board of Canada ; London : Guild Sound and Vision [distributor], 1968

5740 ~~—~~ Las Vegas, Nev. : Starburst Designs ; San Diego, Calif. : Interactive Data Corp. [distributor], 1994

**4.43.3** If the publication or production date differs from the date of distribution, each date is given after the appropriate name or statement of function.

*Examples*

- . – London : Educational Records, 1973 ; New York : Edcorp [distributor], 1975
- . – Seattle, Wash. : Laser Learning Technologies, 1993 ; Hardwick, Vt. : Optical Transfer [distributor], 1995

5750 **4.43.4** Dates of the Gregorian calendar are given in arabic numerals. Dates not of the Gregorian calendar are given as they appear on the resource with the equivalent date of the Gregorian calendar added in square brackets when it can be established.

*Examples*

- , 1969
- , 5730 [1969 or 1970]  
*Editorial comment:* Jewish calendar.
- , 1398 [1977 or 1978]  
*Editorial comment:* Muslim calendar.
- . – Paris : chez Testu, an IX [1801]  
*Editorial comment:* French Revolution calendar.
- , 光緒8 [1882]  
*Editorial comment:* Chinese regnal year calendar.
- , 단기4289 [1956]  
*Editorial comment:* Korean calendar.

5760

When dates in different calendars appear on a *continuing* resource, all dates are given, separated by a space, equals sign, space.

*Example*

- , an III-~~an IV~~ = 1795-1796

**For older monographic resources:**

5770 ~~A~~-Dates of publication, printing, etc., are transcribed as they appear on the resource, including the day and month, if present. Words and phrases that are grammatically linked to the date, such as “anno” and “printed in the year” are transcribed as part of the date element.

*Examples*

- , 7 July 1766
- , in the year 1742  
*Editorial comment:* Imprint reads: London printed, in the year 1742
- , printed in the year 1742  
*Editorial comment:* Imprint reads: London, printed in the year 1742.

5780

~~B. Dates of publication, printing, etc., are transcribed as they appear on the resource, including the day and month, if present. Prescribed punctuation is not added if it comes in conflict with original punctuation.~~

*Examples*

- ~~— London printed, in the year 1742.~~
- ~~— London, printed in the year 1742.~~
- ~~— Excusum Coloniae Agrippinae, anno M.D.XXXVII. octavo Calendas septembres.~~

5790

~~A. If the date forms part of the place or publisher statement, it is recorded with the statement and also given as the date of publication, enclosed in square brackets. When the date does not appear in the publication, printing, **production**, distribution, etc., area, but has been given in area 1 or area 2, the date is also given as the date of publication, enclosed in square brackets.~~

*Examples*

- , [1744]  
*Editorial comment:* Publication statement reads: Printed in the year M.DCC.XLIV. and sold at the pamphlet-shops in London and Westminster.
- , [1795?]  
*Editorial comment:* Title reads: The circular letter, to the General Baptist churches for the year 1795. By John Marsom, read, approved, and ordered to be printed, by the General Assembly.

5800

~~B. The date is recorded as it appears in the publication, printing, distribution, etc., information on the prescribed sources of information.~~

*Example*

- ~~— Printed in the year M.DCC.XLIV. and sold at the pamphlet-shops in London and Westminster~~

~~When the date does not appear in the publication, printing, distribution, etc., area, but has been given in area 1 or area 2, the date is also given as the date of publication, enclosed in square brackets.~~

*Example*

- , [1795?]  
*Editorial comment:* Title reads: The circular letter, to the General Baptist churches for the year 1795. By John Marsom, read, approved, and ordered to be printed, by the General Assembly

5810

~~A. Days of the month and the names of months that do not appear in the publication, printing, **production**, distribution, etc., area but are known as the date of publication are given together with the year in arabic numerals and in the language **and script** chosen by the cataloguing agency. When the statement of the date of publication is very long, e.g. if it is not given in numerals, it may be formalized. A note is given in area 7, stating the source of the date and including a transcription of the statement, if considered important to users of the catalogue.~~

*Example*

5820 , [18 May 1507]  
*Note:* Colophon reads: Anno gratiae millesimo quingentesimo septimo die  
 vero decimoctavo Maij

or

*Note:* Date from colophon

~~B. The statement of the date of publication is given as it appears on the prescribed sources of information for the area.~~

*Example*

~~[Colophon:] Anno gratiae millesimo quingentesimo septimo die vero  
 decimoctavo Maij~~

5830 ~~A & B.~~ Capital letters appearing apparently at random on a title page or colophon may represent a chronogram and should therefore be left in capital form and not converted to lowercase. Dates taken from a chronogram are given enclosed in square brackets in arabic numerals. A note may be given in area 7 explaining the source of the date and including a transcription of the chronogram.

*Examples*

, [1788]

*Note:* Date given in a chronogram in the title

*Editorial comment:* Title reads: NoMIna CLerI IVnlorIs HVngarICI eX benIgno  
 faVore Caesareo regIo In arCe PosonIensI CoLLoCatI.

5840 , [1694]

*Note:* Date given in a chronogram in the publication statement

*Editorial comment:* Publication statement reads: Hamburgi Typis Thomæ Rossii.  
 – Anno, quo VIX fas SVperI qVæCVnqVe MonetIs proDere nos popVLIs! ...

Dates given in roman numerals are transcribed as they appear, omitting internal spaces.

~~A.~~ The Gregorian year is supplied in arabic numerals enclosed in square brackets.

*Example*

, M.DC.III. [1604]

*Editorial comment:* Imprint date reads: M. DC. III.

~~B. The Gregorian year is not supplied.<sup>21</sup>~~

5850 *Example*

~~, M.DC.III.~~

~~A & B.~~ Dates not of the ~~Christian era~~ **Gregorian calendar**, and statements of the day of publication or printing in terms other than those of the calendar month, are given as found

<sup>21</sup>

It is assumed that the cataloguing agency will supply the Gregorian year in some way in the catalogue record; that is, however, outside the ISBD stipulations in alternative B.

on the resource. The equivalent **date or** date(s) in modern chronology ~~is (are)~~ supplied enclosed in square brackets.

*Examples*

~~, an 6, 1797~~

~~, an VII [1798 or 1799]~~

~~, 5530 [1769 or 1770]~~

5860

, die visitationis Beatae Virginis Mariae 1497 [2 July 1497]

, die natalis Christi 1498 [25 Dec. 1498]

~~, 7144 [1636]~~

, 1507 on the feast of Saint Luke [18 Oct. **1507**]

~~B. Alternatively, the equivalent date(s) in modern chronology is (are) given in area 7.~~

~~A & B.~~ Dates of the Christian era based on commencement of the year on both 1 January and another date are given as found, with a slash between the numerals. The date according to the modern calendar may be added, enclosed in square brackets.

*Examples*

, 1690/1

5870

, 1690/1691 [1691]

, 2/13 Sept. 1750

When the year of publication, printing, etc., found on the resource is based on a calendar year that does not begin 1 January and when the resource is known to have been published in the following year according to the present calendar, the later year is added enclosed in square brackets. Julian calendar dates of the month are not amended. An explanatory note is given in area 7.

*Examples*

, id. Mart. 1502 [15 Mar. 1503]

5880

*Note:* Date according to the Julian calendar corresponds to 15 March 1503 in the Gregorian calendar

, 1641 [1642]

*Note:* Year of publication given according to Lady Day dating

~~B. Alternatively, only the note is given.~~

**4.43.5** When the date that appears on the resource is known to be incorrect or appears in an alternative form, it is given as it appears and the corrected or alternative form is given enclosed in square brackets ~~(see 0.9)~~.

*Examples*

, 1697 [i.e. 1967]

- 5890 , 1905 [i.e. 1950]-1970  
 , 1963 [i.e. 1971]  
 , 1892 [실은 1982]

**For older monographic resources:**

~~**A & B.** When the year of publication or printing is known to be incorrect or appears in an incorrect form, it is transcribed as it appears and a correction is given enclosed in square brackets, preceded by *i.e.*~~

*Examples*

- ~~, DMLII [i.e. 1552]  
 , 1703 [i.e. 1730]~~

- 5900 **A & B.** If a date from the title page has been transcribed as the publication date and evidence for a later date of publication appears in a source other than the title page, that date is supplied enclosed in square brackets as a correction and an explanatory note *is* given in area 7 to indicate that the correction is a differing date of publication and not the correction of a typographical error.

*Example*

- , 1786 [i.e. 1788]  
*Note:* Dedication and preface both dated 1788

~~**B.** Alternatively, only the note is given.~~

**4.43.6** A copyright date is added to the date of publication, production or distribution when considered important to users of the catalogue.

- 5910 *Examples*  
 , 1969, cop. 1937  
 , 1972, cop. 1954  
 , 1995, ©cop. 1993

**For older monographic resources:**

~~**A & B.** A privilege or copyright date may be given in area 7 when considered important to users of the catalogue.~~

*Example*

- , 1720  
*Note:* Privilege statement on page 4 dated 1718

- 5920 **4.43.7** When there is no date of publication, production or distribution on the resource, the copyright date, legal deposit date, or date of printing or manufacture is given in its place. The type of date is indicated.

*Examples*

- 5930 , ©~~cop~~ 1969  
 , 1981 printing  
 , 1986 manufacture  
 , 1960 printing-  
*Editorial comment:* Current continuing resource.  
 , cop. 1970-  
*Editorial comment:* Current continuing resource.  
 , 1977 印刷  
 , 1987 제작  
 , D.L. 2010

**For older monographic resources:**

**A & B.**—When there is no date of publication in the resource, the date of granting of a privilege to print, or copyright date, if known, is given in its place enclosed in square brackets. An explanation is given in area 7.

*Example*

- 5940 , [1719?]  
*Note:* Privilege to print granted in 1719, according to privilege statement on page 4

**For sound recordings:**

“P” (phonogram) dates are transcribed ~~as~~ with the sound recording copyright symbol (©) if available or with the letter “P” in either upper or lower case.

- 5950 , P 1982  
 , ©P 1985-  
*Editorial comment:* Current continuing resource.  
 , p 1975  
*Editorial comment:* Capitalization of the “p” is at the discretion of the cataloguing agency

**For multimedia resources and  
~~For~~ electronic resources:**

When there are multiple copyright dates that apply to various aspects in the production of the resource (e.g. a separate copyright date for the written program, sound production, graphics, and documentation) and there is no date of publication, production or distribution on the resource applying to the resource as a whole, the latest copyright date is given. It does not matter that the date applies only to one aspect of the creation of the resource. (See also 4.43.11.)

*Example*

- 5960 , cop. 1995  
*Editorial comment:* Date is for the written program; other earlier copyright dates are for sound and documentation.

~~4.4.8~~ — A known or estimated date of publication may be given in square brackets before the copyright date or date of printing or manufacture.

*Examples*

~~, [1988], cop. 1927~~

~~, [198-?], cop. 1927~~

- 5970 **4.4.3.9.8** When no date of publication, production or distribution, copyright date or date of printing or manufacture can be ascertained for the resource, an approximate date of publication, production or distribution is given in square brackets. Unknown digits in the date may be indicated by a symbol chosen by the cataloguing agency. Any evidence supporting the approximate date may be given in area 7.

*Examples*

, [1969?]

, [196-?]

, [1560?]

, [ca 1560]

, [not after 21 Aug. 1492]

, [between 1711 and 1715]

, [1727 or 1760]

- 5980 , [16.-]

, [1969?]-

, [196]-

, [ca 1835]-

, [1980 혹은 1981]

**For older monographic resources:**

- 5990 **A & B.** — When no date of publication or printing appears on the resource, but the date can be determined from internal evidence or from reference works, such a date is given enclosed in square brackets. The source of the date is given in area 7. When no date of publication can be ascertained for the resource, an approximate date of publication, printing, etc., is given enclosed in square brackets. Any internal evidence or evidence from reference works supporting the approximate date is given in area 7.

*Examples*

, [1560?]

- 6000
- , [ca 1580]
  - , [ca 1580?]
  - , [not before 1479]
  - , [not after 21 Aug. 1492]
  - , [1727 or 1728]
  - , [between 1711 and 1749]
  - , [between 1711 and 1749?]
  - , [167-]
  - , [167-?]
  - , [16--]
  - , [16--?]

, [1795?]

*Title proper.* The circular letter, to the General Baptist churches for the year 1795.

**4.3.9** The copyright date or date of printing or manufacture may be given after a supplied or estimated date of publication.

6010 *Examples*

, [1988], cop. 1927

, [198-?], cop. 1927

**4.43.10 Resources published in multiple issues, parts, iterations, etc.**

**4.43.10.1** ~~Dates given as~~ **Beginning** ~~dates~~ of publication

**For multipart monographic resources:**

In describing a resource published or issued over a number of years, the dates of the first published volume, part or fascicle issued and the last published volume, part or fascicle issued are both given.

**For older monographic resources:**

6020 **A & B.** When making a single description for a resource consisting of volumes, parts or fascicles published over a number of years, the date of the first published volume, part or fascicle and the last published volume, part or fascicle are both given and connected by a hyphen (see also Appendix A).

*Examples*

~~, 1513-1524~~

~~, MDXIII-MDXXIII [1513-1524]~~

**For serials:**

6030 The dates of publication are the year(s) of publication of the first issue or part and of the last issue or part. They may correspond to the date(s) of coverage given in area 3 and may be identical to those date(s).

When the description is being made from issues or parts other than the first and/or last, the date(s) of publication of the first and/or last issue or part may be given in area 4 enclosed in square brackets if found in a national bibliography or other authoritative source or if they can be readily ascertained (see 4.4.8).

If the date(s) of publication of the first and/or last issue or part are not available, omit them from area 4. In such a case, information about the dates of publication may be given in area 7 (see 7.4.1).

**For integrating resources:**

6040 The beginning date of publication that is given is the year that the integrating resource was first made available, if known. When describing a completed integrating resource, the date when it ceased also is given, if known. Other dates are given in area 7 (see 7.4.2.2).

**For updating looseleaves:**

The beginning date of publication that is given is the year that the edition, revision, etc., was first published. When describing a completed updating looseleaf, the date ceased that is given is the date that appears on the prescribed source of information; if readily available, the date of the last update also is given.

*Example*

~~, 1990-1995 [last updated 1999]~~

~~, 1990-1995 [1999最新更新]~~

6050 ~~, 1997-2000 [2006 최신갱신]~~

**4.4.10.2 — Recording of dates****For continuing resources and  
For multipart monographic resources:**

The date of publication of the first earliest issue, iteration, volume, part or fascicle is given, followed by a hyphen.

*Examples*

, 1969-

~~, 1968-~~

~~, 1995-~~

6060 , 1965-  
In area 3: Vol. 5, no. 7 (July 1963)-

*Editorial comment:* Date of publication differs from date of coverage.

,[1969?]-

,[2004]-

*Editorial comment:* Date inferred from date in area 3

#### **4.3.10.2 Ending date of publication** ~~For completed continuing resources and For completed multipart monographic resources:~~

When describing a completed resource, the dates of publication of the first **earliest** issue, iteration, volume, part or fascicle and the last issue, iteration, volume, part or fascicle are given, separated by a hyphen.

6070 *Examples*

, 1968-1973

, 1513-1524

#### **For updating looseleaves:**

The date of the last update is given if available.

#### Example

, 1990-1995 [last updated 1999]

~~, 1936-1960~~

*In area 3:* Vol. 1, no. 1 (winter 1936) vol. 24, no. 4 (winter 1959-60)

6080 When the first **earliest** issue, iteration, volume, part or fascicle and the last issue, iteration, volume, part or fascicle of the resource are published in the same year, the date of publication is given once.

#### *Examples*

, 1962

*In area 3:* Бр. 1 (17 септ. 1962 г.)-бр. 21 (10 окт. 1962 г.)

, 1989

*In area 3:* Vol. 1, pt. 1 (Dec. 1989)

*Note:* No further issues published

#### **4.43.10.3 First date is Uncertain or unknown dates**

When the description is being made from issues or parts other than the first and/or last, the date or dates of publication of the first and/or last issue or part may be given in area 4 enclosed in square brackets if found in a national bibliography or other authoritative source or if they can be readily ascertained (see 4.3.8).

6090 , [1969?]-

, [2004]-

*Editorial comment:* Date inferred from date in area 3.

If the date or dates of publication of the first and/or last issue or part are not available, they are omitted from area 4. In such a case, information about the dates of publication may be given in area 7 (see 7.4.1).

When describing a completed resource for which the ~~first~~ **earliest** issue, iteration, volume, part or fascicle is not available, the date of publication of the last issue, iteration, volume, part or fascicle is given if known, preceded by a hyphen.

*Example*

6100                   , -1896  
                           ~~In area 3: vol. 47, no. 121 (Aug. 29, 1896)~~

#### **4.4.3.10.4 Irregularities**

Notes about irregularities in the dates of a resource, such as when the lowest numbered part is not the part with the earliest date of publication, may be given in area 7.

~~For multipart monographic resources and  
 For older monographic resources:~~

~~**A & B.** When the order of the publication dates does not correspond to the order of the volume, part or fascicle numeration, the date of each volume, part or fascicle may be given in area 7 in the order of the volume, part or fascicle numeration.~~

6110                   *Example*

~~, 1560-1564  
 Note: Volume 1 published 1561; vol. 2: 1564; vol. 3: 1562; vol. 4: 1560~~

~~For continuing resources:~~

~~Irregularities in the dates of publication of a continuing resource are indicated in area 7 (see 7.4.1).~~

#### **4.4.3.11 Resources comprising one or more works with multiple dates**

**For older monographic resources:**

6120                   ~~**A & B.** When parts of a work resource have individual title pages bearing dates that differ from that of the title page for the whole work resource, these dates are recorded in area 7. However, if one of these dates is a more accurate reflection of the actual date of publication than the date pertaining to the whole resource, it should be given as a correction as instructed in 4.4.3.5.~~

**For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images, and  
 For electronic resources:**

6130                   When copyright dates are given for each work brought together in a resource such as a sound recording or an electronic resource, these dates are not transcribed in the publication, production, distribution, etc., area. They may be given either in a note on the publication, production, distribution, etc., area (see 7.4), or in a contents note (see 7.7); or the multilevel method of description provided in Appendix A may be utilized.

**4.5.4 Place of printing, or manufacture ~~or engraving~~**~~&~~**4.6 ~~————~~ Name of printer, manufacturer ~~or engraver~~**

**4.54.1 & 4.6.1** The place of printing, or manufacture ~~or engraving~~ and the name of the printer, manufacturer ~~or engraver~~ are is given when they it appears on the resource and both the place of publication, production or distribution and the name of the publisher, producer or distributor are unknown.

When the information is taken from outside the resource it is enclosed in square brackets.

*Examples*

- 6140
- . – [S.l.] : [s.n.], 1974 (Manchester : Unity Press)
  - . – [S.l.] : [s.n.], 1980- (Asnières : Kopp et Lahure)
  - . – [S.l.] : [s.n.], 1960 (Paris : impr. Michard)
  - . – [S.l.] : [s.n.], 1970 (London : High Fidelity Sound Studios)
  - . – [S.l.] : [s.n.], 1996 (Seattle : Landmark Data Systems)
  - . – [S.l.] : [s.n.], [1869?] (México : Imp. de Juan Nepomuceno del Vaele [i.e. Valle])
  - . – [出版地不明] : [出版者不明], 1963製作 ([東京] : 鹿島研究所出版会)
  - . – [발행지불명] : [발행처불명], 1997 (서울 : 대광인쇄소)

**For older monographic resources:**

6150 ~~A.~~ The place of printing or manufacture is given in rules in 4.5 & 4.6 apply to those instances where printer and publisher are grammatically separated or distinct.

~~B.~~ In most cases the roles and functions of printers do not conform to the modern categories and can hardly be distinguished from the functions of publishers and distributors. Consequently a separate statement of printing information applies only exceptionally in alternative B (see example under *Form and order of presentation 3*).

6160 ~~A.~~ The place or place(s) of printing and the name(s) of the printer(s) are given are mandatory when they appear on the resource, but not on the a prescribed source of information for the place of publication, printing, etc. production and/or distribution, or name of publisher, printer, etc. producer, and/or distributor elements. When this information does not appear on the resource, but is known and considered important to users of the catalogue, it may be given.

~~B.~~ When this information does not appear on the resource, but is known, it is given, enclosed in square brackets, or, alternatively, it is only given in area 7.

**4.54.2 & 4.6.2** When the place of printing, or manufacture ~~or engraving~~ and the name of the printer, manufacturer ~~or engraver~~ appears on the resource, they it may be given in addition to either one or both of the following: the place of publication, production and/or distribution and the name of the publisher, producer and/or distributor.

*Examples*

- 6170
- . – Stuttgart ; Zurich : Delphin Verlag, 1973 (Yugoslavia)
  - . – London : IFLA Committee on Cataloguing, 1975 (London : Palantype Organisation)
  - . – Leipzig : Breitkopf & Härtel, 1977 (~~gedruckt in Jugoslawien~~)
  - . – Firenze : Scala, 1969 (Siena : Meini)
  - . – Urbana, Ill. : University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, Laboratory for Advanced Supercomputers, 1995 (Tokyo : Zishi)
  - . – Paris : Ministère de l'Intérieur, 1979 (Bourges : Tardy Quercy)
  - . – Buenos Aires : Javier Vergara, 2002 (Barcelona : Liberdúplex)
  - . – London : Chapman and Hall, 1976 (London : Mercury)

**For older monographic resources:**

- 6180
- ~~A. The **place or** place(s) of printing and the name(s) of printer(s) are given in the same way as the **place or** place(s) of publication, ~~printing, etc.~~ **production and/or distribution**, and the name of the publisher, printer, etc.~~

*Examples*

- 6190
- . – A Paris : chez Nyon l'aîné, 1781 ([Paris] : de l'imprimerie de la veuve Thiboust)  
*Note:* Printer named in colophon
  - . – Francofurti : prostat apud Ionam Rosarn, 1616 ([Frankfurt] : [Abraham Scultetus])  
*Editorial comment:* Printer not named in the resource.
  - . – [Parrhisiis] : venales inveniuntur in vico sancti Iacobi apud Leonem Argenteum [Johannem Petit], 1508 (Parrhisiis : impressae in Bellovisu [apud] Johannem Marchant)  
*Note:* Petit's name, the place, date and the statement of printing are taken from the colophon
  - . – Venundatur Parrhisiis : in vico sancti Iacobi sub Leone Argenteo, Jehan Petit, [ca 1509] ([Paris] : [Jean Marchant])  
*Note:* The last leaf bears the device of the printer. Petit's name appears in a device on the title page

~~When the information given on the resource is known to be incorrect, a correction may be added in square brackets (see 0.9) or given in area 7.~~

- 6200
- 4.5.4.3 & 4.6.3** When multiple places of printing, ~~or manufacture or engraving and multiple names of printers, manufacturers or engravers~~ are given, the same punctuation is used as for multiple places of publication, production **and/or** distribution ~~and multiple names of publishers, producers or distributors.~~

*Example*

- . – Budapest : Kossuth Ny. ; Debrecen : Alföldi Ny.

## **4.5 Name of printer or manufacturer**

**4.5.1** The name of the printer or manufacturer is given when it appears on the resource and both the place of publication, production and/or distribution and the name of the publisher, producer and/or distributor are unknown.

When the information is taken from outside the resource it is enclosed in square brackets.

6210 For examples, see 4.4.1.

### **For older monographic resources:**

The name of the printer or manufacturer is given in those instances where printer and publisher are grammatically separated or distinct.

The place or places of printing and the names of the printer or printers are mandatory when they appear on the resource, but not on a prescribed source of information for the place of publication, production, and/or distribution, or name of publisher, producer and/or distributor elements. When this information does not appear on the resource, but is known and considered important to users of the catalogue, it may be given.

6220 **4.5.2** When the name of the printer or manufacturer appears on the resource, it may be given in addition to either one or both of the following: the place of publication, production and/or distribution and the name of the publisher, producer and/or distributor.

For examples, see 4.5.2.

### **For older monographic resources:**

The name or names of a printer or printers is given in the same way as the name or names of the publisher, printer, etc.

For examples, see 4.4.2.

**4.5.3** When multiple names of printers or manufacturers are given, the same punctuation is used as for multiple names of publishers, producers and/or distributors.



## 4.7.6 Date of printing or manufacture

- 6230 **4.7.6.1** When the date of printing or manufacture is given in place of an unknown date of publication, production or distribution (see 4.4.6, 4.4.3.7), it is not repeated here.

### For older monographic resources:

~~A. The date of printing is given as a separate element only when it does not appear on the prescribed source of information for the date of publication, production, and/or distribution area, and when it differs from the that date of publication, printing, distribution, etc.~~

~~B. All dates appearing in the publication, printing, distribution, etc., information on the prescribed source of information are recorded.~~

#### *Example*

- 6240 ~~. – In Firenze apresso i Giunti. MDLXV. Con licenza, et privilegio.  
[Colophon:] In Firenze apresso i Giunti 1566. Con licenza, & priuilegio.  
1566~~

- 4.7.6.2** When the date of printing or manufacture differs from known dates already given (date of publication, production and/or distribution, or copyright date), the date of printing or manufacture may also be given (see also 4.4.6.3.7).

#### *Example*

, cop. 1960 (reprinted 1984)

- 6250 **4.7.6.3** The date of printing or manufacture may be given either as an element following the name of the printer or manufacturer or by itself. In the latter case a word or brief phrase is added to clarify the date.

#### *Examples*

- . – London : Arts Council of Great Britain, 1976 (Twickenham : CTD Printers, 1974)
- . – Harmondsworth : Penguin, 1949 (1968 printing)
- . – London : Hutchinson, 1968 (1971 printing)
- . – Zagreb : Stvarnost, [1977] (Zagreb : Vjesnik, 1976)
- . – Budapest : Akadémiai K., 1977- (Debrecen : Alföldi Ny., 1978- )
- . – Paris : F. Nathan, 1976 (imprimé en 1977)-
- . – Amiens : Association d'étude et de cartographie régionale, 1975 (Amiens : Yvert, 1976)

- 6260 , [1980], p 1973 (manufactured 1979)

~~, [generated] 1996)~~

, 1786 (1788 reprint)

*Note:* Date of reprinting given in the preface

, 1786 ([1788 reprint])

*Note:* Date of reprinting taken from the publisher's archives

**For older monographic resources:**

If the date of reprinting appears on the title page it is recorded as part of the date of publication element (see 4.43.4).

6270 **5 PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION AREA****Introductory note**

The physical description area includes the specific material designation and extent, other physical details, the dimensions, and the accompanying material statement. The elements are defined in the glossary.

The physical resource described is the resource as issued by the publisher. If it is known or ~~considered~~ **believed** that the resource has been modified (e.g. bound or trimmed) subsequent to publication, the information given in area 5 is for the resource as published and the information about the modification is treated as relating to the copy in hand and given in area 7 (see 7.11).

~~For the treatment of alternative types of material occurring within one basic format, see 5.2.8 and 5.3.1.4. For the description of a multimedia resource that has two or more different physical carriers, see 0.2.3.~~

6280 ~~Resources that require special devices in order to be accessed (e.g. audiovisual resources, electronic resources) are products of a constantly changing technology. Adaptations to provide for technological change will be required.~~

**For older monographic resources:**

The purpose of the physical description is to support identification by recording the bibliographic format, the total number and order of sequences of pages or leaves in a resource, and by recording as far as can be established the number of plates and inserts and accompanying material belonging to a resource. Further, it is intended to provide an unambiguous instrument for reference to specific pages or leaves.

6290 ~~The physical description is based on the total number of gatherings and additional leaves in the resource described as it is assumed to have been issued by the publisher. If it is known or considered that the copy on which the description is based has been modified (e.g. bound or trimmed) subsequent to publication, the information given in area 5 is for the resource as published and the information about the modification is treated as relating to the copy in hand and given in area 7 (see 7.11).~~

~~**For cartographic resources:**~~

~~**Atlases are described using the stipulations for monographic resources or for continuing resources, as applicable.**~~

*Example*

~~— 1 atlas (xiv, 226, 192 p.) : chiefly maps ; 37 cm~~

6300 **For electronic resources:**

~~The following provisions describe an electronic resource that is available by direct access, i.e. on a physical carrier, such as a cassette, disk/disc, cartridge or reel, that is designed for the user to insert into the computer or into a peripheral (e.g. a CD-ROM player) attached to the computer. Computer technology is constantly changing, and adaptation to provide for new physical carriers will be required.~~

~~A cataloguing agency may also choose to apply the provisions to an electronic resource that is available by remote access.~~

## Contents

- 6310
- 5.1 Specific material designation and extent
  - 5.2 Other physical details
  - 5.3 Dimensions (for older monographic resources: Format and/or dimensions)
  - 5.4 Accompanying material statement

### ~~Recommended punctuation~~ **Prescribed punctuation**

- A.** The physical description area is preceded by a point, space, dash, space (. –).
- B.** The first statement regarding other physical details is preceded by a space, colon, space ( : ).
- C.** The dimensions statement is preceded by a space, semicolon, space ( ; ).
- D.** Each accompanying material statement is preceded by a space, plus sign, space ( + ).
- E.** Extent, other physical details, and dimensions of accompanying material, if given, are enclosed in parentheses ( ( ) ).

6320

### ~~Examples~~ **Punctuation patterns**

- . – Specific material designation (extent) ; dimensions
- . – Specific material designation (extent) : other physical details statement ; dimensions + accompanying material statement (extent of accompanying material : other physical details of accompanying material ; dimensions of accompanying material)

#### **For older monographic resources:**

The format and/or dimensions statement is preceded by a space, semicolon, space ( ; ).

Dimensions following the format are enclosed in parentheses (( )).

### **Prescribed source**

- 6330 The whole resource.

## 5.1 Specific material designation and extent

### **Mandatory**

It is anticipated that national bibliographic agencies or other cataloguing agencies will determine the exact terms used as specific material designations that are acceptable to their needs and languages. (See Appendix C for recommended terms.)

6340 **5.1.1** The first element of the physical description area names and numbers the physical unit or units constituting the resource, adding other measures of extent as appropriate. The terms used as specific material designations are not prescribed and may be given in terms appropriate to the resource being described and the language of the description. Terms may be abbreviated.

The specific material designation identifies the particular type of material to which the resource belongs and is given in the language chosen by the cataloguing agency.

When none of the specific material designation terms recommended in Appendix C is appropriate, a specific material designation such as “vol.,” “parts,” or “folder” is given.

For printed texts, see 5.1.4.

#### **For printed books:**

6350 For a single part textual resource the extent, i.e. the numbering of the pages, leaves and/or columns given, represents both the specific material designation and the extent of the part (except in the case of a part with irregular pagination, see 5.1.4.1.6; or a looseleaf volume, see 5.1.2).

#### **For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:**

A trade name or other indication of a particular technical system or format is recorded in parentheses after the specific material designation when the use of the resource is conditional upon this information.

#### Examples

- 1 sound cassette (Elcaset)
- 1 videocassette (U-matic)
- 1 videoreel (Ampex 7003)
- 6360 — 1 sound disc (Cook binaural)
- 24 slides (3M Talking Slide)

**5.1.2** The number of physical units constituting a resource is given in arabic numerals with the specific material designation. If the resource is still being issued or the number of units is unknown, the number of physical units is not given when the resource is still being issued. The identification of the specific format of the physical carrier may be given if the name of the format is in common use.

Exception: for printed texts in one volume, the number of physical units is not given. The extent statement consists of the pagination of the volume (see 5.1.4).

*Examples*

- 6370
- . – 36 slides
  - . – 3 stereograph reels
  - . – 1 atlas
  - . – 2 diagrams
  - . – 1 map
  - ~~. – 3 maps on 1 sheet~~
  - ~~. – 1 map on 2 sheets~~
  - ~~. – 20 maps on 2 CD-ROMs~~
  - . – 1 globe
  - . – 2 scores
  - . – 4 parts
- 6380
- . – 1 folder
  - . – 1 ~~broadside~~ broadsheet
  - . – vol.
  - . – 3 vol.
  - . – 2 portfolios
  - ~~. – 6 broadsides~~
  - . – 1 computer disk
  - . – 1 CD-ROM
  - ~~. – 2 photo-CDs~~
  - . – 1 DVD
- 6390
- . – 1 score (37 p.) + 4 parts on 1 CD-ROM
  - . – 2 electronic tape cassettes
  - ~~. – 4 CD-ROMs~~
  - . – 120 no.
  - . – 2 drawings
  - . – 10 postcards
  - . – 3 posters
  - . – 1 photograph

. – 1 microfilm reel

6400 If the number of bibliographic units does not equal the number of physical units, an explanation may be given in area 7, unless the numbering of the physically separate units is given on the second level of a multilevel description (see Appendix A), or in a contents note (see 7.7).

*Examples*

. – 5 vol.

*Note:* Volumes numbered 1, 2A, 2B, 2C, 3

. – 5 vol.

*Note:* 8 vol. in 5

. – 6 vol.

*Note:* The title page of the sixth volume bears the designation "Bde 6-7"

6410 If the specific material designation does not convey an accurate description of the extent of the physical carriers, a compound statement is given.

. – 3 maps on 1 sheet

. – 1 map on 2 sheets

. – 20 maps on 2 CD-ROMs

. – 1 score in 8 vol.

. – 1 atlas in 2 vol.

**For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:**

6420 If equipment of a particular technical system or format is required to use a resource, this information may be recorded in parentheses after the specific material designation.

*Examples*

. – 1 sound cassette (Elcaset)

. – 1 videocassette (VHS)

. – 1 videoreel (Ampex 7003)

. – 1 sound disc (Cook binaural)

. – 24 slides (3M Talking Slide)

**For continuing resources and  
For multipart monographic resources:**

6430 For completed continuing resources and multipart monographic resources the specific material designation is preceded by the number of bibliographic units, using arabic numerals.

The designations are given in their standard abbreviated forms. In the case of continuing resources or multipart monographic resources in progress, or for completed continuing

resources or multipart monographic resources for which the number of bibliographic units cannot be determined, the specific material designation is given by itself.

### For updating looseleaves:

6440 An updating looseleaf that is still in progress is described **by adding** as vol. “(looseleaf)” or using the **an** equivalent terms in the language chosen by the cataloguing agency **to the specific material designation**. An updating looseleaf that has been completed is described as 1 vol. (looseleaf), 2 vol. (looseleaf), etc., as appropriate, or using the equivalent terms in the language chosen by the cataloguing agency.

#### Examples

. – vol. (looseleaf)

*Editorial comment: Publication still in progress.*

. – 3 vol. (looseleaf)

*Editorial comment: Publication complete.*

### For multimedia resources:

6450 For multimedia resources, the contents **components** are named and numbered in succession. Normally, the more important component or components is (are) given first; when this criterion cannot be applied, the alphabetical order of the names of the components is followed.

#### Example

. – 3 filmstrips, 1 map, 13 rocks and minerals, 1 wallchart

#### Alternatively:

**A.a)** The general material designation “multimedia resource” may be used as a specific material designation to provide a very general physical description.

#### Example

. – 1 multimedia resource

or

6460 **B.b)** **A.a)** separate physical description **area** may be given for each component. This method should be used only when the materials are few in number and a full physical description for each component is considered important to users of the catalogue.

#### Examples

. – 3 filmstrips (96 fr.) : col. ; 35 mm. – 1 map : col. ; 25 x 25 cm, folded to 10 x 18 cm. – 13 rocks and minerals ; in container 14 x 9 x 2 cm. – 1 wallchart : col. ; 48 x 90 cm, folded to 24 x 15 cm

### For electronic resources:

The extent of a resource available by remote access may be given when the information is known and considered important to users of the catalogue.

6470 If readily available, the total file size using the appropriate level (bytes, kilobytes, megabytes, etc.) may be given. If given, it is enclosed in parentheses.

*Examples*

- ~~— 1 map (5.2 MB) on 1 CD-ROM~~
- ~~— 3 maps (600 kilobytes)~~

### 5.1.3 Extent

6480 As a further measure of The statement of extent consists of the pieces number of subunits of a resource are specified as appropriate (i.e. the number of pages, leaves, sheets, frames, pieces, etc.), and (where applicable) the playing time (see 5.1.5). This further The statement of extent is given after the specific material designation and enclosed in one pair of parentheses ( ( ) ), except for printed texts in one volume. The statement of extent follows the guidelines in 5.1.4.

*Examples*

- . – 1 folder (6 p.)
- . – 1 portfolio (26 leaves)
- . – 1 flipchart (8 sheets)
- ~~— 1 transparency (4 unattached overlays)~~
- . – 1 filmstrip (44 fr.)
- . – 1 filmstrip (6 double fr.)
- . – 4 filmstrips (220 fr.)
- . – 1 stereograph reel (7 pairs of fr.)

6490 . – 1 score (329 p.)  
. – 1 vocal score (259 p.)  
. – 1 part (32 p.)  
*Editorial comment: A separately published part.*  
. – 1 miniature score (146 p.)  
. – 1 short score (21 leaves)  
. – 1 choir book (240 p.)

~~The pagination of a sheet is given in parentheses when text is printed on both sides, or when it is laid out in pages. When appropriate it is described as a folded sheet (see also 5.1.4.1.5).~~

*Examples*

6500 . – 1 sheet (2 p.)  
~~— 1 sheet ([16] p.)~~  
*Editorial comment: The pages are unnumbered on the resource*

~~Special characteristics of the leaves, sheets, etc., may be recorded in area 7 (see 7.5).~~

*Example*

. – 1 flipchart (6 sheets)

*Note:* Sheets printed on both sides

**For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:**

6510

No distinction is made between numbered and unnumbered sequences of sheets, frames, etc. (i.e. numbers supplied by the cataloguing agency are given without square brackets). For numbered sequences of sheets, frames, etc., the number on the last numbered sheet, frame, etc., of each numbered sequence is recorded, irrespective of whether this total includes any unnumbered sequences (e.g. title frames, end frames and interspersed non-content frames of a filmstrip).

**For transparencies with overlays:**

~~In the case of~~ **For** a set of transparencies with overlays, the presence of overlays is indicated but their number may be omitted.

*Examples*

6520

. – 1 transparency (4 unattached overlays)

. – 12 transparencies (with overlays)

**For filmstrips:**

~~In the case of~~ **For** a set of filmstrips, the statement of frame characteristics should be retained where appropriate even though no statement regarding the number of frames is recorded.

*Example*

. – 3 filmstrips (double fr.)

**For electronic resources:**

The extent of a resource available by remote access may be given when the information is known and considered important to users of the catalogue.

6530

If readily available, the total file size using the appropriate level (bytes, kilobytes, megabytes, etc.) may be given. If given, it is enclosed in parentheses.

*Examples*

. – 1 map (5.2 MB) on 1 CD-ROM

. – 3 maps (600 kilobytes)

*Editorial comment:* Remote access.

## 5.1.4 Pagination statement<sup>22</sup>

### 5.1.4.1 ~~A~~ **Resources** in one physical unit

6540 **5.1.4.1.1** ~~When~~ **If** the leaves in a resource are numbered on both sides, the extent of the resource is described in terms of pages. ~~When the leaves are printed on one side only, this fact may be stated in area 7.~~ **If the leaves are numbered on one side only, the extent of the resource is described in terms of leaves. If the number of pages or leaves gives a false impression of the extent of a resource, this may be explained in area 7 (see 7.5.1).**

*Examples*

80 p.

*Note:* Versos of pages blank

~~When the leaves are numbered on one side only, and each leaf is counted as one unit, the extent of the resource is described in terms of leaves. When the leaves are printed on both sides, this fact may be stated in area 7.~~

*Example*

6550 56 leaves

*Note:* Leaves printed on both sides

**5.1.4.1.2** **If a resource consists of numbered columns instead of pages, t**~~he extent of a resource with more than one column to a page, the columns instead of the pages being numbered,~~ is given in terms of columns. ~~When~~ **If** there are more than two columns to a page, this fact is stated in area 7.

*Example*

. – 831 columns

#### **For older monographic resources:**

The total number of pages or leaves is given, enclosed in square brackets or in area 7.

*Example*

6560 . – 840 columns on [420] p.

*or*

. – 840 columns on [210] leaves

**5.1.4.1.3** The number on the last numbered page, leaf, column, sheet or frame of each numbered sequence is given. Numerals, arabic and roman, are recorded as found on the resource. When the pages or leaves are lettered instead of numbered, the first and last letters are given and are preceded by the word or abbreviation indicating pages or leaves.

*Examples*

. – 328 p.

<sup>22</sup> The term “pagination” is used to designate any sequence of pages, leaves, columns, sheets, frames, etc.

- 6570 . – iv, 328 p.  
 . – 16 leaves, 328 p.  
 . – 328 p., 52 columns  
 . – 32, 328, 40, 16 p.  
 . – P. a-h  
 . – P. A-H  
 . – Leaves A-H  
 . – P. A-H, 128 p.

When the resource contains more than one numbered or lettered sequence of different types (e.g. columns and pages) and the second, etc., sequence continues the numbering or lettering of the preceding sequence, the first and last numbers or letters of the second, etc., sequence are given preceded by the word or abbreviation for pages, leaves or columns.

6580

*Example*

- . – 320 columns, p. 321-400

*Example for older monographic resources*

- ~~. – 320 columns on [160] p., p. 321-400~~

When the numeration in arabic numerals continues that of the roman numerals, the numeration of the whole sequence is given in arabic numerals.

*Example*

- . – 328 p.

*Editorial comment:* a resource with 16 pages numbered i-xvi and 312 pages numbered 17-328.

6590

**For older monographic resources:**

If the numeration in arabic numerals continues that of the roman numerals, the numeration of the whole sequence may be given as shown above in arabic numerals, or alternatively, the arabic and roman sequences may be given.

*Example*

- . – 328 p.

or

- . – xvi p., p. 17-328

6600

**5.1.4.1.4** When the number of the last numbered page, leaf, column, sheet, frame, etc., of a sequence is incorrect, it is given as on the resource. The correct number is given, enclosed in square brackets, with an explanatory note if considered important to users of the catalogue, or the sequences of pagination are given exactly to indicate the source of the error.

*Examples*

. – xiv, 823 [i.e. 328] p.

*Note:* P. 328 misnumbered 823

. – xiv, 832 [i.e. 848] p.

*Note:* P. 161-176 are repeated in the numeration

*or*

. – xiv p., p. 1-176, 161-832 ~~p.~~

*Editorial comment:* An alternative to the previous example.

6610

. – 1 filmstrip (64 [i.e. 46] fr.)

**5.1.4.1.5** Unnumbered sequences of pages or leaves are given only when they constitute the whole or a substantial part of the resource (but see 5.1.4.1.8 for leaves of plates). ~~In this case~~ **If** unnumbered sequences **constitute the whole or a substantial part of the resource, they** are given in the terms used for the numbered sequences as arabic numerals enclosed in square brackets.

*Examples*

. – 329 p.

*Editorial comment:* a resource with 8 unnumbered pages and 329 pages numbered 1-329.

. – iv, [100] p.

*Editorial comment:* a resource containing 4 pages numbered i-iv and 100 unnumbered pages.

6620 ~~When~~ **If** the whole resource is unpaginated or unfoliated,

*either:*

~~1) a)~~ **If** leaves or pages are counted together and the total is given in terms of leaves **(if printed on one side) or pages (if printed on both sides)** in arabic numerals enclosed in square brackets.

*Example*

. – [80] leaves

*or*

~~2) b)~~ **a** An estimate of the number of leaves or pages is made, and the total is given as an approximate number of leaves **(if printed on one side)** or pages **(if printed on both sides)**.

*Example*

6630

. – Ca 400 leaves

**For older monographic resources:**

Any unnumbered page, leaf or column that forms a part of the resource as issued and is not counted as part of a sequence of pagination, ~~foliation or columns~~ is counted according to the term(s) used otherwise to describe the resource. Both blank and printed pages or leaves are counted. The number of such pages, leaves or columns is given in arabic numerals enclosed in square brackets.

*Examples*

. – [8], 328 p.

*Editorial comment:* Extent statement for resource with 8 unnumbered pages and 328 pages numbered 1-328.

Unnumbered pages at the end of a sequence are given in arabic numerals enclosed in square brackets.

*Examples*

. – 93, [3] p.

. – xv, [1], 160 p.

When any such unnumbered page, leaf or column is found within a numbered sequence, the first and last pages, leaves or columns are given for the surrounding material.

*Example*

. – 1-200, [8], 201-232 p.

~~When the whole resource is unpaginated or unfoliated, and column numbering is not used, one of the following methods is used in the following order of preference:~~

~~**A.** Leaves or pages are counted together and the total recorded in terms of leaves or pages in arabic numerals enclosed in square brackets. The register of signatures may also be given in area 7.~~

*Example*

~~. – [80] leaves~~

~~**B.** An estimate of the number of leaves or pages is made and the total is given as an approximate number.~~

*Example*

~~. – Ca 400 leaves~~

~~**A & B.** Both blank and printed pages, as well as blank leaves forming part of the gatherings, are counted. Unnumbered pages in the beginning of a sequence are tacitly inferred.~~

*Examples*

. – 16 p.

*Editorial comment:* Extent statement for resource with 3 unnumbered pages and 13 pages numbered 4-16

. – 328 p.

*Editorial comment:* Extent statement for resource with 8 unnumbered pages and 320 pages numbered 9-328

~~Unnumbered pages at the end of a sequence are given in arabic numerals enclosed in square brackets.~~

*Examples*~~– 93 [3] p.~~~~– xv [1], 160 p.~~~~– iv, [100] p.~~~~*Editorial comment:* Extent statement for resource with 4 pages numbered i-iv and 100 unnumbered pages~~

6680 Blank leaves are included in the pagination statement and noted within parentheses following the pagination statement when they have been established to form part of the gatherings of the resource being described. Only blank leaves that have been seen in extant copies may be included in the statement.

*Examples*

- iv, [100] p. (p. 99-100 blank)

*Editorial comment:* Extent statement for resource with 4 pages numbered i-iv and 100 unnumbered pages and the last leaf blank.

- iv, 96, [4] p. (last two p. blank)

*Editorial comment:* Extent statement for a resource with pages numbered i-iv, 1-96 and an unnumbered fold of which the last leaf is blank.

6690 When the complete extent cannot be inferred, the extent of imperfect copies is given by recording the numeration of the pages and/or leaves according to the provisions of 5.1. However, “p.” or “leaves” and a plus sign are used preceding or following the statement of extent (e.g. 200 + p., p. + 41-200), or, in the case of unpaginated or unfoliated resources the provisions for such cases are used. In these cases, and when the extent of a complete copy has been inferred, an explanatory note is given.

**For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:**

~~In recording a numerical description of the pieces of a resource, no distinction is made between numbered and unnumbered sequences of sheets, frames, etc. (i.e. totals supplied by the cataloguing agency are given without square brackets). In the case of numbered sequences of sheets, frames, etc., the number on the last numbered sheet, frame, etc., of each numbered sequence is recorded, irrespective of whether this total includes any unnumbered sequences (e.g. title frames, end frames and interspersed non-content frames of a filmstrip).~~

6700

**5.1.4.1.6** ~~When **If**~~ a resource contains more than three ~~(five for older monographic resources)~~ sequences of similarly numbered pages, leaves or columns, or sequences of similarly numbered pages combined with one or more major sequences of unnumbered pages, either:

~~→a)~~ The sequences are added up and given as a total followed by the words “in various pagings” (or the equivalent in another language).

6710

*Example*

- 1000 p. in various pagings

*Editorial comment:* not: 48, 53, 99, 100, 2300, 410, 90 p.

or

2)b) When one of the sequences is clearly the main sequence, the number of that sequence is given with the total number in brackets of the other sequences preceding and/or succeeding as appropriate.

*Example*

. – 400, [98] p.

*Editorial comment:* not: 400, 18, 10, 22, 60, 28, 20 p.

6720

or

3)c) The specific material designation and extent of the resource is described as:

*Examples*

. – 1 vol. (various pagings)

. – 1 score (various pagings)

. – 1 portfolio

#### **For older monographic resources:**

If one of the sequences is significantly larger than the others, the extent of that sequence may be given followed by “with various other pagings”.

*Example*

. – 1 vol. (400 p. with various other pagings)

*Editorial comment:* The sequences are: 400, 18, ~~40~~12, 28 and 20 numbered pages and 18 unnumbered pages.

6730

or

~~. – 1 vol. (400, 18, 40, 20, [18] p.)~~

~~. – 1 portfolio~~

~~In all cases, the register of signatures may be given in area 7.~~

**5.1.4.1.7** ~~When the resource consists of~~ If the pages, leaves, columns, sheets, frames, etc., are numbered as part of a larger sequence (e.g. one part of a multipart monographic resource, an offprint from a serial, one filmstrip from a set whose frames are numbered consecutively), the numbers on the first and last page, leaf, column, sheet, frame, etc. subunit are recorded preceded by. ~~In this case, the word or abbreviation~~ for the type of subunit indicating pages, leaves, columns, sheets, frames, etc., is given before the numbers.

6740

*Examples*

. – Leaves 81-93

. – P. 713-797

. – 1 filmstrip (fr. 120-143 (double fr.))

~~When such a resource is~~ If the pages, leaves, columns, sheets, frames, etc., are numbered both of itself internally and as part of a larger sequence, the internal numbering of the resource itself is recorded, and the numbering from the larger sequence is given in area 7 (see 7.5).

*Examples*

- 6750 . – 1 filmstrip (24 double fr.)  
*Note:* Frames also numbered 120-143.
- . – 81 p.  
*Note:* Pages also numbered 321-401

**5.1.4.1.8** If a resource contains ~~The number of pages of plates or leaves of plates~~ or other inserts not included in the numbering of the main sequence of ~~pages or leaves containing text or music,~~ the number of pages or leaves of plates or other inserts is given at the end of the sequences of pagination, whether they ~~plates~~ are found together or distributed throughout the resource, ~~or even when there is only one plate.~~ If the pages or leaves of plates are unnumbered, the number is given in brackets.

*Examples*

- 6760 . – 248 p., 24 leaves of plates
- . – x, 32, 74 p., [1] leaf of plates  
*Editorial comment:* The leaf of plates is unnumbered on the resource
- . – 248 p., 12 p. of plates
- . – 248 p., 36 leaves of plates, 24 p. of plates
- . – 16 p., 28 p. of maps
- . – 24 p., [16] leaves of genealogical tables
- . – 1 score (246 p., 24 leaves of plates)
- . – 1 score (246 p., 38 leaves of plates, 24 p. of plates)
- . – 1 vocal score (246 p., 12 p. of plates)

- 6770 ~~For a resource in a physical unit other than a book, an appropriate specific material designation is given (e.g. a folder, a roll, a portfolio) preceded by the arabic numeral 1. The statement of pagination, foliation, etc., following such a specific material designation is enclosed in parentheses.~~

*Examples*

- ~~. – 1 portfolio (26 leaves)~~
- . – 1 atlas ([2] p., [32] leaves of plates)

**For older monographic resources:**

~~The number of pages of plates, or leaves of plates, or leaves of insets not included in the numbering of pages or leaves of the resource is given at the end of the sequences of pagination, whether the plates are found together or distributed throughout the resource, or even when there is only one plate.~~

- 6780 ~~Leaves of plates or insets that are included in the numbering of pages or leaves of the resource may be recorded in area 7.~~

*Example*~~— 272 p.~~~~Note: 12 leaves of plates included in the pagination~~~~or~~~~Note: 12 leaves of plates included in the pagination as p. 5-6, 11-12, 19-20, 29-30, 39-40, 49-50, 59-60, 69-70, 79-80, 89-90, 99-100, 109-110~~**For older monographic resources and  
For notated music resources:**

Unnumbered sequences of pages of plates or leaves of plates are treated similarly to unnumbered sequences of pages or leaves (see 5.1.4.1.5). The same stipulation applies to pages or leaves of maps, pages or leaves of genealogical tables, etc., that are not included in the numbering of pages or leaves containing text.

*Additional examples for older monographic resources*~~— 16 p., XX leaves of plates~~~~— 16 p., leaves of plates XXV-XXXV~~**5.1.4.2 A-R resources in more than one physical unit**

For a resource in more than one physical unit, the specific material designation term from Appendix C is given, preceded by the arabic numeral denoting the number of such units and followed by an appropriate phrase such as “in 4 vol.”

**5.1.4.2.1 Continuous pagination**

When the **If a** resource consists of more than one unit of the same physical form (i.e. more than one volume, filmstrip, portfolio, etc.) and when the pieces of each unit **subunits** are continuously numbered, the total number of pages, leaves, sheets, frames, etc., is given **as in 5.1.3** in addition to the number of units, enclosed in parentheses.

*Examples*~~— 8 vol. (894 p.)~~~~— 1 score in 8 vol. (894 p.)~~~~— 4 filmstrips (220 fr.)~~**For older monographic resources:**

When a resource is issued in more than one physically separate unit, the appropriate specific material designation is given, preceded by an arabic numeral denoting the number of such units. **Accompanying material** is not included in the numbering (see 5.4).

*Examples*~~— 3 vol.~~~~— 2 portfolios~~

~~—6 broadsheets~~

6820 Peculiarities in the numbering of the separate physical units are given in area 7, unless the numbering of the physically separate units is given on the second level (see Appendix A), or in a contents note (see 7.7).

*Examples*

~~—5 vol.~~

~~Note: Volumes numbered 1, 2A, 2B, 2C, 3~~

~~—6 vol.~~

~~Note: The title page of the sixth volume bears the designation "Bde 6-7"~~

**For printed textual resources:**

6830 When only the first unit has a separately numbered sequence of preliminary pages, leaves or columns preceding the continuously paginated, foliated or column numbered main sequence, the pagination, foliation or column numeration of the preliminary and main sequences is given.

*Example*

. – 3 vol. (xx, 804 p.)

*Editorial comment:* Preliminary sequence in vol. 1 only.

When each unit has a sequence of preliminary pages or leaves preceding the continuously paginated or foliated main sequence and separately numbered, these sequences are added up and given as a total enclosed in square brackets.

*Example*

. – 8 vol. ([47], 894 p.)

**For older monographic resources:**

6840 ~~When only the first unit has a separately numbered sequence of preliminary pages, leaves or columns preceding the continuously paginated, foliated or column numbered main sequence, the pagination, foliation or column numeration of the preliminary and main sequences is given.~~

*Example*

~~—3 vol. (xx, 804 p.)~~

~~*Editorial comment:* Preliminary sequence in vol. 1 only~~

~~An explanation may be given in area 7.~~

*Example*

~~—3 vol. (xx, 804 p.)~~

~~Note: Preliminary sequence, xx p., in vol. 1~~

6850 When each unit has a separately numbered sequence of preliminary pages, leaves or columns preceding the continuously paginated, foliated or column numbered main sequence, a complete record of sequences may be given in area 7.

*Example*

. – 3 vol.

*Note:* Pagination of volumes: vol. 1: xx, 200 p.; vol. 2: xx p., p. 201-512;  
vol. 3: xxi, [1] p., p. 513-896

**5.1.4.2.2 Several paginations**

6860 For resources consisting of more than one physical unit, if ~~When the units constituting such a resource consist of individually numbered sequences of subunits (pages, leaves, sheets, frames, etc.), the numbers of pages, leaves, sheets, frames, etc. subunits may be given, enclosed in parentheses, in addition to the number of units when this is considered important to users of the catalogue. ~~In other cases, the number of leaves, sheets, frames, etc., is omitted.~~~~

*Examples*

. – 3 filmstrips (60, 52, 58 fr.)

. – 2 flipcharts (6, 8 sheets)

. – 12 filmstrips

. – 5 vol. (31, 33, 49, 37, 18 p.)

. – 2 portfolios (12, 18 leaves)

6870 ~~. – 3 vol. (v, 92 p.)~~

. – 1 score in 5 vol. (31, 33, 49, 37, 18 p.)

. – 1 vocal score in 2 vol. (x, 210 p.; v, 310 p.)

. – 3 vol. (vi, 310 p.; vi, 434 p.; viii, 492 p.)

. – 3 vol. (vi, 310 p., 20 leaves of plates; viii, 432 p., 32 leaves of plates; x, 490 p., 52 leaves of plates)

**~~For older monographic resources:~~**

~~When the pagination or foliation of a multipart monographic resource is not continuous, the several paginations or foliations may be given in addition to the number of units, enclosed in parentheses.~~

6880 *Examples*

~~. – 5 vol. (32; 36; 48; 36; 20 p.)~~

~~. – 3 vol. (vi, 310; vi, 434; viii, 492 p.)~~

~~. – 2 vol. (x, 210 p.; v, 311 p.)~~

~~. – 2 portfolios (12; 18 leaves)~~

~~. – 3 vol. (vi, 310 p., 20 leaves of plates; viii, 432 p., 32 leaves of plates; x, 490 p., 52 leaves of plates)~~

If it is considered necessary to record the presence of plates, but not the pagination of each volume, these may be given in parentheses.

*Example*

6890 . – 4 vol. (with 24 leaves of plates)

~~5.1.4.2.3~~ *Alternatively*, if preferred, all information relating to a single unit, but not to the resource as a whole (such as the number of pages, leaves, sheets, frames, etc.) may be given at the second level of a multilevel description (see Appendix A).

**5.1.5 Playing time**

**5.1.5.1** The extent of any resource having an inherent durational aspect is recorded in terms of playing time. *Optionally*, for motion pictures and videorecordings, the physical length of the film may be added to the statement of playing time.

*Example*

. – 1 film reel (22 min, 577 m)

6900 **5.1.5.2** The playing time recorded is normally that of the whole resource. It is recorded as given on the resource, its container, or accompanying material. When no indication of duration ~~appears on the resource, its container or accompanying textual matter~~ is given, an approximation of the playing time may be recorded. If it is impossible to give either a precise statement of playing time or an approximation, the statement is omitted.

*Examples*

. – 1 videocassette (U-matic) (ca 60 min)

. – 1 sound reel (37 min, 18 s)

. – 1 sound cartridge (90 min)

. – 1 sound disc (ca 50 min)

6910 . – 1 film loop (4 min, 20 s)

. – 1 DVD-Video (114 min)

**5.1.5.3** ~~When the~~ If a resource consists of more than one unit of the same physical form (i.e. more than one disc, cassette, etc.), each of which has its own statement of playing time, the playing times of the individual units are recorded instead of that of the whole resource.

*Examples*

. – 3 sound reels (25, 30, 27 min)

. – 2 sound cassettes (30, 90 min)

. – 3 sound discs (50, 55, 50 min)

6920 **5.1.5.4** ~~When the~~ If a resource contains two or more works, the playing times of the individual works, if given on the resource, are recorded in area 7 (see 7.10.1). Such a note may be combined with the contents note (see 7.7). When the playing times of individual works are recorded in area 7, the playing time of the whole resource may be omitted from the physical description area.

## 5.1.6 ~~Specific case of printed r~~**Resources issued in fascicles**

### 5.1.6.1 ~~For notated music resources:~~

~~For a resource in one physical unit, the extent consists of the specific material designation term (see Appendix C), preceded by the arabic numeral 1, and the number of pages or leaves (except in the case of a volume with irregular pagination, see 5.1.4.1.6; or a looseleaf volume, see 5.1.2). The pagination is given in parentheses following the specific material designation.~~

#### *Examples*

6930

~~1 score (329 p.)~~

~~1 vocal score (259 p.)~~

~~1 part (32 p.)~~

*Editorial comment:* in the case of a separately published part

~~1 study score (146 p.)~~

~~When none of the specific material designation terms such as those recommended in Appendix C is appropriate, terms such as short score, choir book, table book are used as appropriate.~~

#### *Examples*

~~1 short score (21 leaves)~~

~~1 choir book (240 p.)~~

6940

~~In the case of notated music resources for a piano solo, for an unaccompanied instrument, etc., the numbering of the pages or leaves is given in the physical description area as representing both the specific material designation and the extent of the volume (except in the case of a volume with irregular pagination, see 5.1.4.1.6; or a looseleaf volume, see 5.1.2).~~

**5.1.6.2** ~~When the **If a** resource is issued in fascicles intended to be bound into one or more physical units, the number of pages, leaves and/or volumes is given in terms appropriate to its final form, with a note indicating that it was issued in fascicles.~~

### 5.1.7 ~~Specific case of microforms~~

~~For original publications in microform, pagination statements are given in accordance with the provisions above (see 5.1.4), except that in the case of unpagged microforms, statements regarding the number of frames or pages are omitted. However, in the case of a micro reproduction, the pagination of the original is given in area 7 (see 7.2).~~

6950

#### *Examples*

~~— 1 microfilm reel (xii, 317 p.)~~

*Editorial comment:* Original publication in microform, which reproduces pagged text

~~— 1 microfilm reel~~

*Editorial comment:* Original publication in microform; reproduced text is unpagged

~~— 1 microfilm reel~~

*Note:* Original ed.: xiv, 624 p.

*Editorial comment:* Reproduction of published book

6960



## 5.2 Other physical details

**5.2.1** The second element of the physical description area is a statement specifying other physical characteristics of the resource, such as method of production, colour, material from which the resource is made, etc., ~~excluding dimensions~~. Any characteristic implicit in the specific material designation is omitted; for example, the characteristic “sd.” (see 5.2.76) is not given for a sound recording nor is “ill.” (see 5.2.3.1) given for visual resources.

The specifications constituting other physical details are presented as appropriate in the following order.

### 5.2.2 Statements relating to the material of which the resource is composed

A word or phrase indicating the material of which the resource is composed may be given.

6970

#### Examples

- . – 1 globe : wood
- . – 1 sound reel (27 min) : paper
- . – 1 diorama : various materials
- . – 1 microfilm reel : diazo
- . – 1 film reel (11 min) : nitrate
- . – 1 map : transparency, ~~col.~~
- ~~. – 1 map (ca 1.2 MB) : col.~~

### 5.2.3 Statement relating to the presence of illustrations

**5.2.3.1** When a resource is illustrated, the abbreviation “ill.” (or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~) may be given after the specific material statement. Minor illustrations may be disregarded.

6980

#### Examples

- . – 8 vol. : ill.
- ~~. – 492 p. : ill.~~
- ~~. – 1 score (329 p.) : ill.~~

#### ~~For older monographic resources:~~

~~The abbreviation “ill.” (or its equivalent in another language and/or script) is given after the specific material statement. Minor illustrations may be disregarded. The technique of illustrations or of leaves of plates may be recorded in area 7.~~

#### ~~Example~~

6990

~~. – 133 p., [4] p. : 8 ill.~~

~~Note: 8 woodcuts printed with the text~~

~~Note: Leaves of plates, lithographs and steel engravings~~

~~Note: Leaves of plates in aquatint or copperplate engravings~~

**For microforms:**

~~For original publications in microform, illustration statements are given in accordance with these provisions.~~

~~For microreproductions, illustration statements are given (where appropriate) in area 7.~~

**For visual resources:**

~~Visual resources have illustration as an almost invariable property. For these resources accordingly no statement regarding the presence of illustrations is made.~~

7000

### 5.2.3.2 Particular types of illustrations

The specification of **P**Particular types of illustration (e.g. maps, plans, facsimiles, portraits, music) may be given **specified** after the abbreviation “ill.” (or its equivalent).

*Examples*

: ill., maps

: ill., facs.

When ~~the identity of~~ particular types of illustrations **are specified** and these are the only illustrations in the resource, the abbreviation “ill.” (or its equivalent) is omitted.

*Examples*

7010

: maps, plans

: facsim.

### 5.2.3.3 Number of illustrations

The number of illustrations, or of a particular type of illustration, may be given.

*Examples*

: 31 ill.

: ill., 17 facs.

: 12 maps

When a resource consists mainly or entirely of illustrations, this may be noted in the illustration statement.

*Examples*

7020

: all ill.

: chiefly maps

: chiefly ill.

## 5.2.4 ~~Statements relating to the p~~**Presence of colour**

### 5.2.4.1 ~~Coloured~~**Texts with illustrations**

When some or all of the illustrations are coloured, this may be noted. If only some of the illustrations are in colour and this is to be specified, the information is given in parentheses.

#### *Examples*

- 7030 : col. ill.  
 : ill., 31 col. maps  
 : ill. (some col.)  
 : 31 maps (some col.)

#### ~~For older monographic resources:~~

~~When there is evidence that some or all of the illustrations are coloured in all copies of the resource, this may be noted. If only some of the illustrations are in colour and this is to be specified, the information is given in parentheses.~~

#### *Examples*

- 7040 ~~: col. ill.  
 : ill., 31 col. maps  
 : ill. (some col.)  
 : 31 maps (some col.)~~

~~When it is uncertain whether colouring appears, or is intended to appear, in all copies of the resource, the information is given in area 7 (see 7.11).~~

### 5.2.4.2 ~~Colour characteristics of the resource~~**Visual resources**

#### ~~For visual resources:~~

The colour characteristics of ~~the~~ **a visual** resource are given as appropriate. ~~Colour characteristics are distinguished by the use of:~~ The abbreviations “col.” or “b&w” (or their equivalents in another language and/or script) **are used**, or by the enumeration of not more than three specific colours **are given**. For microscope slides the presence of staining is indicated.

#### *Examples*

- 7050 : col.  
 : b&w  
 : wood, blue and white  
**: transparency, col.**  
 : stained

A resource having both colour and black and white sequences is so described.

*Examples*

- . – 1 film reel (20 min) : col. with b&w sequences
- . – 1 filmstrip (64 fr.) : col. and b&w

Brief explanatory phrases may be inserted in parentheses after the statement.

*Example*

- . – 1 film reel (30 min) : col. (Ektachrome)

7060

### **5.2.4.3 For eElectronic resources:**

The characteristic of colour is given for **I**f a resource that is specified to displays in two or more colours or is known to produce two or more colours. The **t**he abbreviation “col.”, or its equivalent in another language and/or script, is given as appropriate. The use of “black and white” (b&w) for a resource that is designed to display in one colour (e.g. white, green or amber phosphor on a dark background) is not given. Hardware required for the display or production of colour (e.g. colour cards, colour monitor) is given in area 7 (see 7.5).

*Examples*

- . – 2 electronic tape cassettes : col.
- . – 1 CD-I : col., sd.
- . – 1 CD-ROM : col. and b&w**

7070

### **5.2.5 Statements relating to the rReduction ratio (microforms)**

**5.2.5.1** An indication of the reduction ratio is given for microforms having a reduction outside the standard range 16x–30x. Where possible the ratio is expressed numerically.

*Examples*

- . – 1 microfilm reel : diazo, 14x
- . – 6 microfiches : silver halide, 150x

**5.2.5.2** The terms “low reduction” (up to 15x), “high reduction” (31x–60x), “very high reduction” (61x–90x) and “ultra-high reduction” (91x and upwards) or their equivalents in another language and/or script are used in cases where the reduction ratio cannot be specified exactly.

7080

### **5.2.6 Statements relating to the pPresence or absence of sound**

**5.2.6.1** The abbreviations “sd.” (for “sound”) or “si.” (for “silent”) (or their equivalents in another language and/or script) are given as appropriate for materials of which integral sound may be a feature and for which the presence of sound is not implicit in the specific material designation.

*Examples*

- . – 1 film reel (20 min) : b&w, si.

. – 1 videocassette (U-matic) (30 min) : col., sd.

. – 1 electronic disk : sd.

7090 **5.2.6.2** Brief explanatory phrases may be inserted in parentheses after the statement “sd.”

*Example*

. – 1 videocassette (Beta) (120 min) : col., sd. (Beta HiFi)

**5.2.6.3** ~~In the case of a~~ Optionally, for materials (e.g. slides) for which integral sound is present only exceptionally, the absence of sound may be indicated with ~~use of the statement “si.” to indicate its absence is optional.~~

#### **For electronic resources:**

~~The abbreviation “sd.”, or its equivalent in another language and/or script, is given as appropriate for a resource that is specified to have sound or which is known to produce sound. Requirements for the production of sound (e.g. synthesizers, voice input modules) are given in area 7 (see 7.5).~~

7100

*Example*

~~. – 1 electronic disk : sd.~~

### **5.2.7 Other technical specifications**

For microfilm reels, ~~and~~ microfilm slips, and filmstrips a statement of frame alignment is given.

*Examples*

. – 1 microfilm reel : cine mode

. – 3 microfilm slips : diazo, comic mode

~~Frame alignment may also be given for filmstrips.~~

*Example*

7110 . – 1 filmstrip (42 double fr.) : comic mode

Any details on the process or method of reproduction of a still image may be given.

*Example*

. – 1 engraving : drypoint, aquatint

The playing speed of a resource is given in appropriate terms.

*Examples*

. – 1 sound disc : 33 1/3 rpm

. – 1 sound reel (100 min) : 19 cm/s

. – 2 videodiscs (24 min) : 1500 rpm

The recording method, groove direction and groove size of an analogue sound disc are given if known.

7120

Examples. – 1 sound disc : 78 rpm, vertical. – 1 sound disc : 33 1/3 rpm, coarseThe number of tape tracks is given.Example. – 1 sound reel (100 min) : 19 cm/s, 2 tracksThe track configuration of a sound reel recorded on four or more tracks is specified.Example. – 1 sound reel (90 min) : 19 cm/s, 4 tracks, adjacent

The number of sound channels is given.

7130

Examples. – 1 sound disc : 33 1/3 rpm, mono. – 1 sound reel (50 min) : 38 cm/s, 2 tracks, stereoThe equalization and noise reduction employed may be given if known.Examples. – 1 sound reel (45 min) : 19 cm/s, 4 tracks, NAB. – 1 sound cassette (60 min) : Dolby processedThe video format of a videorecording is given if available.. – 1 DVD-Video (110 min) : col., PAL**Table of Technical Specifications and Industry Norms for Sound Recordings**

7140

This table indicates which specifications apply to each type of sound recording. Specifications that are applicable are marked A, those that are not applicable are marked N/A. If there is a norm for a specification and type of recording it follows the letter A.

Applicable specifications shown in the table are given in the order in which they appear below. However, if an industry norm is listed in the table, the specification is given only if it differs from that norm.

Specification	Analogue disc		Digital disc	Reel	Cassette	Cartridge
	78 rpm	Other speeds				
Speed	A	A	1.4 m/s	A	A: 4.76 cm/s	A: 9.5 cm/s
Recording method	A: electric	A: electric	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Groove direction	A: lateral	A: lateral	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Groove size	A: coarse	A: micro	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
No. of tracks	N/A	N/A	N/A	A	A	A: 8
Track configuration	N/A	N/A	N/A	A: alternate	N/A	N/A
No. of sound channels	A: mono	A	A	A	A	A: stereo
Equalization system	N/A	N/A	N/A	A	A	A: 50µs
Noise reduction system	N/A	N/A	N/A	A	A	A

~~The recording method, groove direction and groove size of a sound disc are given if known.~~

*Examples*

- ~~— 1 sound disc : 78 rpm, vertical~~
- ~~— 1 sound disc : 33 1/3 rpm, coarse~~

7150 ~~The track configuration of a sound reel recorded on four or more tracks is specified.~~

*Example*

- ~~— 1 sound reel (90 min) : 19 cm/s, 4 track, adjacent~~

~~The number of tape tracks is given.~~

*Example*

- ~~— 1 sound reel (100 min) : 19 cm/s, 2 track~~

~~The equalization and noise reduction employed may be given if known.~~

*Examples*

- ~~— 1 sound reel (45 min) : 19 cm/s, 4 track, NAB~~
- ~~— 1 sound cassette (60 min) : Dolby processed~~

7160 **5.2.8 Resources available in different** ~~Statements relating to alternative formats of a resource~~

When the resource is available in alternative formats differing ~~at the level covered by this~~ in terms of the other physical details element, the physical details in question are omitted from the physical description area and given in area 8 or in area 7 (see 7.5).

*Example*

- ~~— 1 microfilm reel : comic mode~~
- Note:* Available on diazo or silver halide film



### 5.3 Dimensions

7170 The third element of the physical description area is a statement regarding the dimensions of the resource.

The dimensions may consist of one dimension only or (as in the case of a film or folded map) may be more complex.

*The statement is omitted in the case of dimensions implicit in other parts of the description (e.g. sound cassettes and cartridges of a standard type, tape width for a standard sound cassette or cartridge) (see 5.3.1.1).*

#### **For older monographic resources:**

*The bibliographic format of the resource is given in a standard designation as chosen by the cataloguing agency, e.g. in one of the following forms:*

*; 1o, 2o, 4o, 8o, 12o etc.*

7180 *; 1:o, 2:o, 4:o, 8:o, 12:o etc.*

*; 1mo, 2do, 4to, 8vo, 12mo etc.*

*; in-plano, in-fol./in-2, in-4, in-8, in-12 etc.*

*If the gatherings are made up of half sheets or other fractions of sheets, or if the gatherings are composed of more than one sheet, this may be recorded within parentheses following the format or in a collation statement.*

#### *Examples*

*; 2:o (6s)*

*or*

*; 2do (6s)*

7190 *Broadsheets and half sheets may be recorded by the respective term, discarding the format designation, or as 1 leaf and the proper format designation.*

#### *Examples*

*1 broadsheet*

*or*

*1 leaf ; 1:o*

*1 half sheet*

*or*

*1 leaf ; 1/2:o*

#### 5.3.1 Statement of the dimensions

7200 If the dimensions of the resource are given, they are given in terms of centimetres rounded up to the next whole centimetre. Exception: the gauge of a film or width of a tape is given in millimetres (see 5.3.1.1).

*Example*

; 18 cm

*Editorial comment:* the height of the resource is 17.2 centimetres.**For resources employing film or magnetic tape:**~~The gauge of the film or width of the tape is given in terms of millimetres (see 5.3.1.1).~~**5.3.1.1 Usual Choosing the dimensions to measure**~~Usual dimensions exist for some resources.~~**For printed textual resources and  
For notated music resources:**

The height of the resource, measured parallel to the spine, is given.

**For cartographic resources:**

The dimensions of two-dimensional resources, other than circular resources, are given in the form of height x width. The dimensions of three-dimensional resources other than globes and sections of spheres, are given in the form of height x width x depth. The dimensions of globes, sections of spheres and circular two-dimensional resources are given in terms of the diameter.

The dimensions given for two-dimensional resources, if not otherwise specified, are the dimensions within the neat line. If there is no neat line, the dimensions given are those of the part of the resource carrying the geographic detail.

*Examples*

; 65 x 40 cm

; 45 x 35 x 2 cm

; 23 cm (diam.)

Additional dimensions such as the dimensions of a map when folded, or the dimensions of individual sheets of a collectively described group, or the individual dimensions of mounted sheets, may be given. When more than one set of measurements is given, the whole physical description area should be made in a clear and unambiguous fashion; that is, when it is not clear to which part or part(s) the dimensions apply, this is clarified by specification. (For units of different dimensions see 5.3.1.5.)

*Examples*

; on sheets 60 x 40 cm

; 9 x 30 cm, on sheet 40 x 60 cm, folded to 21 x 10 cm

; on sheets 90 x 50 cm or smaller, folded in cover 25 x 16 cm

; double hemisphere, each 6 cm (diam.), on sheet 21 x 15 cm

**For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:**

7240 The dimensions of two-dimensional resources (wallcharts, microfiches, slides, transparencies, pictures, etc.) are given in the form height x width. For circular two-dimensional resources (with the exception of sound discs and videodiscs) the diameter is given, followed in parentheses by the abbreviation “diam.” or its equivalent in another language and/or script. For oval two-dimensional resources the length of the vertical axis is given, followed in parentheses by “oval” or its equivalent. Dimensions relate to the sheet or other surface, but when there is a significant difference between the dimensions of the sheet and the dimensions of the printed area, the latter may be given in area 7 (see 7.5; see also 5.3.1.1.2).

*Examples*

; 24 x 48 cm

; 5 x 5 cm

7250 ; 36 cm (diam.)

; 9 cm (diam.)

For a folded sheet, two dimensions statements are given.

*Example*

; 48 x 90 cm, folded to 24 x 15 cm

The dimensions of three-dimensional resources (dioramas, etc.) are given in the form height x width x depth, or when this is inappropriate, height alone. Very complex dimensions statements may be given in area 7 (see 7.5) or omitted.

*Examples*

. – 1 diorama : various materials, col. ; 9 x 30 x 20 cm

7260 ~~5.3.1.1.1~~ — When an integral container or mounting is to form part of the description, two dimensions statements may be given. *Alternatively*, the dimensions of the whole resource, including container or mountings, may be given alone.

*Examples*

~~— 1 diorama : col. ; in glazed case 35 x 60 x 24 cm~~

~~5.3.1.1.2~~ — In the case of **For** resources requiring the use of equipment (e.g. discs, cassettes, reels of tape or motion pictures), the principal dimensions given are those of the resource itself, irrespective of the external dimensions of any container such as an album or sleeve (for the treatment of a container for a set of resources see 5.3.1.3).

~~Measurements of the diameter of circular resources (discs, reels, etc.) are given without additions.~~

7270 *Examples*

. – 1 sound disc (53 min) : 33 1/3 rpm, stereo ; 30 cm

. – 1 sound reel (100 min) : 19 cm/s, 4 track, mono ; 13 cm

- . – 1 CD-ROM (60 min) : stereo ; 12 cm

The statement is omitted in the case of **For** resources (e.g. sound cassettes and cartridges of a standard type) whose dimensions are implicit in other parts of the description (e.g. cassettes and cartridges of a standard type), the statement of dimensions may be omitted.

These standard dimensions are:

<u>sound</u> cassette	10 x 6.4 x 1.2 cm
<u>sound</u> cartridge	13.5 x 10 x 2.2 cm
<u>videocassette</u>	<u>18.8 x 10.4 x 2.5 cm</u>

In the case of **For** resources employing film or magnetic tape, the gauge of the film or width of the tape is given. Super 8 mm and standard 8 mm film are recorded as belonging to that measurement. Measurements that are implicit in other parts of the description (e.g. tape width for a standard sound cassette or cartridge) are may be omitted.

These standard widths are:

<u>sound</u> reel	6.3 mm
<u>sound</u> cassette	3.8 mm
<u>sound</u> cartridge	6.3 mm

#### Examples

- . – 6 microfilm reels : Kalvar, cine mode ; 35 mm
- . – 1 sound reel (45 min) : 19 cm/s, 2 tracks, mono ; 13 cm, 6 mm tape
- . – 1 film loop (4 min, 10 s) : col. ; super 8 mm

#### For electronic resources:

The principal dimensions given are those of the physical carrier itself are given, irrespective of the external dimensions of any container such as a disk pocket or case (for the treatment of a container for a set of resources see 5.3.1.3).

The diameter is given for a disk/disc or a tape reel. The height length and width of the tape of a reel may be given.

#### Examples

- . – 1 electronic disk : col. ; 14 cm
- . – 1 electronic tape reel ; 27 cm
- . – 1 CD-ROM ; 12 cm

The height of the face of a chip cartridge is given.

#### Example

- . – 1 electronic chip cartridge : col., sd. ; 9 cm

### 5.3.1.2 Unusual dimensions

**For printed textual resources and  
For notated music resources:**

7310

When the dimensions or shape of the resource are unusual (e.g. when the width is greater than the height), other dimensions may be given after the height.

*Examples*

; 21 x 30 cm

; 38 cm, folded to 10 cm

**For sound discs:**

When a sound disc is of a non-standard shape (e.g. when the playing surface has an irregularly shaped surround), the diameter of the playing surface is given in the physical description area. A statement regarding the external dimensions of the resource is given in area 7 (see 7.5).

*Example*

7320

. – 1 sound disc (11 min) : 45 rpm, mono ; 18 cm

*Note:* Disc impressed on rectangular surface, 20 x 20 cm

**For electronic resources:**

The height and depth of a tape cassette are given when they are other than the standard size (10 x 7 cm) and the width of the tape is given when it is other than the standard width (4 mm).

*Example*

. – 1 electronic tape cassette : col. ; 19 x 9 cm, 7 mm tape

### 5.3.1.3 Resources issued in a container

7330

For resources issued in a container, with or without accompanying material, the dimensions of the container may be given. *Alternatively*, the phrase “in container” (or its equivalent in another language and/or script) may be used, or the statement may be omitted.

When an integral container or mounting is to form part of the description, two dimensions statements may be given. *Alternatively*, the dimensions of the whole resource, including container or mountings, may be given alone.

*Examples*

. – 1 diorama : col. ; in glazed case 35 x 60 x 24 cm

. – 4 electronic tape cassettes : sd., col. ; in container 12 x 36 x 20 cm

. – 1 laboratory kit (various pieces) ; in container 12 x 36 x 20 cm

. – 5 sound discs (256 min) : 33 1/3 rpm, stereo ; ~~in container~~ 30 cm, in container

7340 5.3.1.4 ~~Alternative formats~~**For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:**

~~When the resource is available in alternative formats differing at the level covered by this element, the dimensions in question are omitted from the physical description area and given in area 8 or in area 7 (see 7.5).~~

*Example*

~~. – 1 film loop (4 min, 30 s) : col.~~

~~Note: Available in standard 8 mm and super 8 mm versions~~

5.3.1.5 **Physical units of different sizes**7350 **For continuing resources and  
~~For multipart monographic resources:~~**

If the dimensions of a continuing resource or a multipart monographic resource change, the smaller or smallest size and the larger or largest size, separated by a hyphen, may be given in area 5, or a note that the dimensions of the issues or parts or of the iterations vary may be given in area 7 (see 7.5).

*Example*

~~: 20-30 cm~~

7360 **For cartographic resources, and  
~~For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:~~**

~~When the resource consists of a set of two-dimensional units and the individual units vary in size, the dimensions of the largest are given followed by “or smaller” (or its equivalent in another language and/or script). Alternatively, the dimensions of all the units may be given in area 7 (see 7.5).~~

*Examples*

~~. – 6 wallcharts : col. ; 60 x 98 cm or smaller~~

~~. – 1 map on 365 sheets : col. ; sheets 60 x 90 cm or smaller~~

~~. – 1 map on 25 sheets : col. ; sheets 90 x 50 cm or smaller, folded in cover 25 x 16 cm~~

7370 **For electronic resources:**

~~When the resource consists of more than one physical carrier and the carriers differ in size, the dimensions of the smallest or smaller and the largest or larger are given, separated by a hyphen.~~

*Example*

~~— 2 electronic disks : col. ; 9–14 cm~~

**5.3.2 Bibliographic format and dimensions for older monographic resources**

**5.3.2.1** The bibliographic format of the resource is given in a standard designation as chosen by the cataloguing agency, e.g. 1° , 2° , 4° , 8° , 12° , etc.

7380 If the gatherings are made up of half sheets or other fractions of sheets, or if the gatherings are composed of more than one sheet, this may be recorded within parentheses following the format or in a collation statement.

*Examples*

; 2° (6s)

Broadsheets and half sheets may be recorded by the respective term, discarding the format designation, or as 1 leaf and the proper format designation.

*Examples*

1 broadsheet

or

1 leaf ; 1°

7390

1 half sheet

or

1 leaf ; 1/2:o

Dimensions may be given in area 5 if it can be established that the resource being described is in a standardized publisher's binding or in publisher's wrappers. The height of the outer case, measured parallel to the spine, or of the resource when it is not bound, is given in parentheses following the format, rounded up to the next whole centimetre.

*Examples*

~~; 4<sup>o</sup> (18 cm, publisher's wrappers)~~

7400

*Editorial comment:* A publication in quarto in publisher's wrappers that measures 17.2 centimetres.

~~; 12<sup>o</sup> (14 cm, publisher's binding)~~

Otherwise, dimensions are treated as copy specific information and may be given, together with any other relevant evidence, in area 7.

*Example*

. – Copy x in collection y cropped at foot, measures 17.2 centimetres

When the printed lines run parallel to the longer side of the paper, the designation “oblong” may be given in parentheses following the format.

*Examples*

7410

; 4<sup>o</sup>:e (oblong); 2<sup>o</sup>:e (oblong)

**5.3.2.2** When the dimensions or shape of the resource are unusual an explanation may be given in area 7.

**5.3.2.3** When the format cannot be determined, the assumed format followed by a question mark is given in area 5. Dimensions may also be given in area 7 with an explanation.

*Example*; 48<sup>o</sup>:e (?)*Note:* Gathered in eights, measures 4 x 3 cm, uncut

7420

**5.3.2.4** When in a multivolume monographic resource the volumes are of differing formats, all formats are given in repeated physical description areas, if considered important to users of the catalogue. If the resource being described is in standardized publisher's binding or in publisher's wrappers, dimensions may be given, but when the resource is entirely in one format, only the least and greatest dimensions are recorded.

The format and/or dimensions of individual parts may be given in area 7, on the "second level" of a multilevel description (see Appendix A) or in a contents note (see 7.7).

*Examples*. – 4 v. ; 4<sup>o</sup>:e (18 cm, publisher's binding). – 3 v. ; 8<sup>o</sup>:e (16 cm, publisher's binding)*Note:* Vols. 1-4 are 4<sup>o</sup>:e (18 cm); vols. 5-7 are 8<sup>o</sup>:e (16 cm)*Editorial comment:* 7-vol. set with varying dimensions and format.; 2<sup>o</sup>:e (33-37 cm, publisher's binding)

7430

The format and/or dimensions of individual parts may be given in area 7, on the "second level" (see Appendix A) or in a contents note (see 7.7).

## 5.4 Accompanying material statement

### Introductory note

The fourth element of the physical description area is the accompanying material statement.

The term “accompanying material” denotes any physically separable part of the resource not so far specified in the physical description area, ~~and~~ that is issued (or intended to be issued) at the same time. Such a part may form one of two or more mutually interdependent systems (e.g. a slide set or an electronic disk combined with a sound tape and a manual) or may be a minor part of the resource (e.g. an explanatory leaflet accompanying a filmstrip).

7440

### 5.4.1 Description of accompanying material

An accompanying material statement may be given either in the terms in which it appears in the resource described, by a word or phrase indicating the nature of the material, or by means of an appropriate specific material designation.

#### Examples

~~— 271 p. : ill. ; 21 cm + 1 price list~~

. – 96 p. ; 8° (16 cm, publisher’s binding) + 1 price list

. – 1 map : col. ; 108 x 73 cm, folded to 30 x 21 cm + 1 memoir

. – 1 globe : col. ; 23 cm (diam.) + 1 gazetteer

7450

. – 271 p. : ill. ; 21 cm + 1 list of works

. – 1 filmstrip (43 fr.) : col. and b&w ; 35 mm + teacher's notes

. – 1 wallchart : col. ; 65 x 97 cm + chart notes

. – 1 sound disc (55 min) : 33 1/3 rpm, mono ; 30 cm + 1 pamphlet

. – 2 electronic disks ; 14 cm + 1 pamphlet

. – 180 p. : ill. ; 23 cm + 1 wallchart + 3 maps

. – 20 maps on 1 CD-ROM : sd., col. ; 12 cm + 1 sound cassette

. – vol. : ill. ; 31 cm + weekly price list

. – 1 score (92 p.) ; 31 cm + 4 parts

. – 1 score (329 p.) ; 34 cm + 25 parts + 1 libretto

7460

~~When accompanying material is available in alternative physical formats (e.g. as a sound disc or cassette), the accompanying material statement consists of an appropriate general term. Details of the alternative formats are given in area 7 (see 7.5).~~

#### Examples

~~— 47 slides : col. ; 5 x 5 cm + 1 sound recording~~

~~Note: Sound recording available as: sound disc (14 min) : 33 1/3 rpm, mono ; 18 cm, or sound cassette (14 min)~~

**For notated music resources:**

Terms recommended in Appendix C are used as far as possible.

*Examples*

7470

- ~~— 1 score (92 p.) ; 31 cm + 1 part~~
- ~~— 1 score (92 p.) ; 31 cm + 4 parts~~
- ~~— 1 score in 2 vol. ; 31 cm + 1 part~~
- ~~— 1 score (329 p.) ; 34 cm + 25 parts + 1 libretto~~

**5.4.2 Short physical description**

A short physical description of the accompanying material may be given after the word or phrase characterizing the material. The material is described according to the provisions of 5.1 to 5.3.

*Examples*

7480

- . – 47 slides : col. ; 5 x 5 cm + 1 sound cassette (25 min : mono)
- . – 1 map on 4 sheets ; sheets 25 x 38 cm + 1 manual (10 p. ; 30 cm)
- . – vol. : ill. ; 28 cm + electronic disks (sd., col. ; 9 cm)  
*Editorial comment: Resource is still being published*
- . – 47 vol. : ill., maps ; 27 cm + 114 microfiches (11 x 15 cm)
- . – 271 p. : ill. ; 21 cm + 3 microfiches (diazó ; 11 x 11 cm)
- . – 2 electronic disks ; 9 cm + 1 user manual (110 p. ; 23 cm)
- ~~— 272 p. : ill. ; 8:0 + 1 map (col. ; 65 x 40 cm as issued by publisher)~~  
*Note: Map in copy x in collection y measures 65 x 40 cm*  
*Editorial comment: All copies are coloured. The measures of the map may be given in area 7.*
- ~~— 272 p. : ill. ; 8:0 + 1 price list (28 p., 8:0)~~

**5.4.3 Alternative description of accompanying material**

7490

The use of this element is an alternative to: Alternatively, accompanying material may be described by

1) a) describing accompanying material it independently (i.e. in a separate description);

or

2) b) describing accompanying material it in a note (see area 7);

or

3) c) describing accompanying material it by the multilevel method of description (see Appendix A).

~~When the whole resource, including accompanying material, is housed in a container, details of the container, if given, are given in area 7 (see 7.5).~~

7500

**For electronic resources:**

~~In the case of remote access resources when no physical description is given (see area 5, Introductory note), the accompanying material may be described in area 7 (see 7.5) or described independently.~~



## 6 **SERIES AND MULTIPART MONOGRAPHIC RESOURCE AREA**

### Introductory note

The series and multipart monographic resource area includes the title proper of a series or multipart monographic resource, parallel title of a series or multipart monographic resource, other title information of a series or multipart monographic resource, statement of responsibility relating to a series or multipart monographic resource, international standard number of a series or multipart monographic resource, and numbering within a series or multipart monographic resource.

- 7510 The series area is used when the resource being described belongs to a larger bibliographic resource: series, subseries or multipart monographic resource.

~~Area 6 is used only when all parts of the resource (all the issues or parts or all the iterations of the continuing resource or all parts of the multipart monographic resource) are published (or are intended to be published) in the same series or subseries. In other cases the series or subseries statement(s) may be given in area 7.~~

Especially important to note is the explanation of the terms “common title” and “dependent title” that states that these terms, as used in the stipulations, cover (a) all common/section titles, (b) those main series/subseries titles and (c) all common/dependent titles of multipart monographic resources in which the subseries title or the part title is dependent.

- 7520 When a resource belongs to more than one larger bibliographic resource (for example, two series or a multipart monographic resource and a series), area 6 contains more than one statement. The order of the statements is determined by the order of preference of the sources for the area; ~~in the case of~~ if these ~~being~~ are of equal value, the order follows the sequence of information found on the chosen source.

~~The series, subseries or multipart monographic resource statement contains the main elements identifying a series, subseries or multipart monographic resource, including any numbering of the separate resources within the series, subseries or multipart monographic resource. Resources belonging to series or subseries may be A continuing resources or a multipart monographic resources may be part of a larger series.~~

### ~~For older monographic resources:~~

- 7530 ~~Series statements are found infrequently in older monographic resources. Care should be taken to distinguish a true series title from other title information.~~

### Contents

- 6.1 Title proper of a series, ~~subseries~~ or multipart monographic resource
- 6.2 Parallel title of a series, ~~subseries~~ or multipart monographic resource
- 6.3 Other title information of a series, ~~subseries~~ or multipart monographic resource
- 6.4 Statements of responsibility relating to a series, ~~subseries~~ or multipart monographic resource
- 6.5 International sStandard nNumber of a series or ~~subseries~~ multipart monographic resource
- 6.6 Numbering within a series, ~~subseries~~ or multipart monographic resource

### ~~Recommended punctuation~~ Prescribed punctuation

- A. The series area is preceded by a point, space, dash, space (. –).
- 7540 B. Each series statement, ~~each subseries statement or each multipart monographic resource statement~~ is enclosed in parentheses ( ( ) ).

- C.** A second and each subsequent series, ~~subseries or multipart monographic resource~~ statement is preceded by a space.
- D.** Each parallel title or other parallel statement is preceded by a space, equals sign, space ( = ).
- E.** Each statement of other title information is preceded by a space, colon, space ( : ).
- F.** The first statement of responsibility is preceded by a space, diagonal slash, space ( / ).
- G.** Each subsequent statement of responsibility is preceded by a space, semicolon, space ( ; ), unless the statements are considered to form a single phrase.

**H.** The ~~I~~international ~~S~~standard ~~S~~erial ~~N~~umber is preceded by a comma, space ( , ).

7550 **I.** Numbering within a series, ~~subseries~~ or multipart monographic resource is preceded by a space, semicolon, space ( ; ).

**J.** The section or subseries designation or dependent title following a common title is preceded by a point, space ( . ).

**K.** The dependent title following a section, subseries or multipart monographic resource designation is preceded by a comma, space ( , ).

~~L. When there is more than one series statement, each is enclosed in parentheses, as provided in area 6, Punctuation pattern B-C, for multiple series statements.~~

*Examples* Punctuation patterns

- 7560 . – (Title proper of first series) (Title proper of second series)
- ~~— (Title proper of first subseries) (Title proper of second subseries)~~
- ~~— (Title proper of first multipart monographic resource) (Title proper of series)~~
- . – (Title proper of series = Parallel title of series)
- . – (Title proper of series / statement of responsibility relating to series ; numbering within series)
- . – (Title proper of series : other title information of series / statement of responsibility relating to series ; numbering within series)
- . – (Title proper of series, ISSN ; numbering within series)
- . – (Common title. Section, subseries or multipart monographic resource designation, Dependent title)
- 7570 . – (Common title. Dependent title = Parallel common title. Parallel dependent title)
- . – (Title proper of series, ISSN ; numbering within series = parallel numbering within series)
- ~~— (Title proper of subseries = Parallel title of subseries, ISSN ; numbering within subseries)~~
- . – (Title proper of series, ISSN ; numbering within series = Parallel title of series, ~~ISSN~~ ; parallel numbering within series)
- . – (Title of series. Title of subseries ; numbering within subseries)

- . – (Title of series. Title of subseries / statement of responsibility relating to subseries, ISSN of subseries ; numbering within subseries)

7580 **Prescribed sources**

The preferred source of information is the series title page or title page for the multipart monographic resource. If there is no such title page, the preferred sources of information for continuing resources and multipart monographic resources given in A.4.2 are used.

Information taken from a source other than one of the following prescribed sources is given in square brackets if it is recorded in this area.

**For printed resources:**

**For textual monographic resources:**

Series title page (for a series or a subseries) or multipart monographic resource title page (for a multipart monographic resource), analytical title page, other preliminaries, cover, spine, colophon

7590

**For older monographic resources:**

Series title page or multipart monographic resource title page, analytical title page, colophon, other preliminaries, cover, spine

The cover and/or spine are considered prescribed sources only if the resource was issued with the cover and/or binding.

When any information in this area except the International Standard Serial Number is not taken from the title page, its source is indicated in area 7.

**For continuing resources:**

Series title page, analytical title page, cover, caption, masthead, editorial pages, colophon, rest of continuing resource

7600

*Note:* For printed resources, the cover and/or spine are considered prescribed sources only if the resource was issued with the cover and/or binding.

**For cartographic resources:**

The resource itself, container, **accompanying material**

For atlases, the stipulations for monographic resources or continuing resources are used, as appropriate.

**For notated music resources:**

Series title page (for a series or a subseries), multipart monographic resource title page (for a multipart monographic resource), analytical title page, other preliminaries, first page of music, cover and colophon

7610

**For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:**

The resource itself, an affixed label, a container or an enclosure or other accompanying textual matter such as a manual.

**For multipart monographic resources:**

A unifying container will normally be preferred to the labels, etc., of individual parts, particularly when the unifying container is the only source for a collective title.

When any of these resources is in electronic form, the prescribed sources for electronic resources are to be used.

**For electronic resources:**

**Direct access**

The resource itself, documentation, other **accompanying material**, container.

**Remote access**

Title screen, main menu, program statements, first display of information, the header to the file including "Subject:" lines, home page, TEI (Text Encoding Initiative) header, or other identifying information prominently displayed.

**For printed textual and notated music resources:**

Series title page, analytical title page, first page of music, other preliminaries, cover, colophon, the rest of the resource.

**For older monographic resources:**

Series title page, analytical title page

**For printed cartographic resources, multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, still and moving images, and electronic resources:**

The resource itself, container, accompanying material

7620

7630

## 6.1 Title proper of a series, ~~subseries~~ or multipart monographic resource

**Mandatory**

~~The first element of the series area is the title proper of the series, subseries or multipart monographic resource.~~

### 7640 6.1.1 ~~Title proper of a series or subseries~~

The title proper of the series or ~~subseries~~ multipart monographic resource corresponds to the title proper in the bibliographic description of the ~~series or subseries~~ larger bibliographic resource when if it is were described as a serial or multipart monographic resource according to the provisions of area 1 ~~for continuing resources, except that typographical errors are not corrected in this area.~~ It is transcribed exactly as to wording, but not necessarily as to capitalization and punctuation. Typographical errors are not corrected.

#### *Examples*

- . – (Pepys series)
- . – (Great newspapers reprinted)
- 7650 . – (Interactive digital computer teaching models)
- . – (Acta Universitatis Carolinae. Philologica)
- . – (Viewmaster science series. 4, Physics)
- . – (Problems and progress in development)
  - Editorial comment:* Subseries with distinctive title; main series: Commonwealth and international library. (see 7.6.2)
- . – (Bibliothèque française et romane. Série B, Éditions critiques de textes)
  - Editorial comment:* Subseries with dependent title.
- . – (Archives Blaise Cendrars)
  - Editorial comment:* Subseries with distinctive title; main series: Archives des lettres modernes. (see 7.6.2)
- 7660 . – (Atlas ethno-linguistique. 2e série, Monographies)
- . – (Plan Guide Blay)
- . – (JRO-Panoramakarte)
- . – (Guides et plans Edicart's)
- . – (L'enseignement moderne du saxophone)
- . – (Neue Musik für Solo-Instrumente)
- . – (Collection Trésors classiques)
- . – (Beatrix Potter jigsaw puzzles)
- . – (Interactive digital computer teaching models)
- 7670 . – (Canadian travel surveys)

~~.— (世界大音楽全集. 声乐編 ; 第29) 卷~~

~~.— (한국문학연구총서. 고전문학편 ; 7)~~

### 6.1.2 — Title proper of a multipart monographic resource

~~When the resource being described is a separate part of a multipart monographic resource, the title proper in the series area is the title proper of the multipart monographic resource described as a whole according to the provisions of area 1 for multipart monographic resources.~~

~~Examples~~

~~. — (The lord of the rings ; part 3)~~

~~. — (Selected works of Rudyard Kipling ; vol. 2)~~

7680 ~~. — (Carte géologique de la France à 1:50 000 ; IV-19)~~

~~. — (Collected works of Muzio Clementi ; vol. 2)~~

~~. — (L'arte in diapositive ; no 1)~~

~~. — (Dune ; vol. 4)~~

### 6.1.3 — Transcription

~~The title proper of a series is given as it is found on the prescribed source of information. It is transcribed exactly as to wording, but not necessarily as to capitalization and punctuation. Typographical errors are not corrected.~~

#### ~~For continuing resources:~~

7690 ~~When the key title of the series or subseries differs from the title proper, it is given in area 7 (see 7.6.4).~~

### 6.1.4 — Subseries with a distinctive title

~~When a subseries has a distinctive title, this is given in area 6. The title of the main series is given in area 7.~~

~~Examples~~

~~.— (East Asian and Pacific series)~~

~~Note: Main series: Department of State publication~~

~~.— (Lecture notes in artificial intelligence)~~

~~Note: Main series: Lecture notes in computer science~~

7700 ~~.— (An anthology of oriental music ; 4)~~

~~Note: Main series: An anthology of the world's music~~

~~.— (Applied statistics and econometrics ; 27)~~

~~Note: Main series: Multicollinearity and estimation studies~~

~~.— (Land resources of central Nigeria)~~

~~Note: Main series: Land resource study~~

.— (Friedrich von Schiller's Sämtliche Werke)  
*Note:* Main series: Bibliothek der deutschen Classiker

### 6.1.5 Title proper made up of a common title and a dependent title

When the title proper is made up of a common title and a dependent title (section title or dependent subseries title or dependent part title), the common title is given first, followed by the section, subseries or part designation and/or the section, subseries or part title. The common title is not repeated in area 7.

#### *Examples*

- .— (Biblioteca románica hispánica. I, Tratados y monografías)
- .— (Cass library of African studies. Africana modern library)
- .— (Bell's British Theatre. Volume the first, Tragedies ; vol. 1)
- .— (Collection Armand Colin. Section de droit)
- .— (Historischer Atlas von Bayern. Teil Altbayern ; Heft 47)
- .— (XIe domaine de recherches. Série B, A la cour de Frédéric II)
- .— (Arithmética para principiantes. Serie 2, Conceptos numéricos)
- .— (Machine sewing. Series 1 ; 3)
- .— (National income patterns. Series 3, Indonesia)
- .— (Mathematics and science series. Concepts ; 2)
- .— (Super graphics. Series I ; 2)
- .— (Patrimoine musical de France. Monumentales)
- .— (Musica antiqua Bohemica. Serie II)
- .— (代韓國文法大系歷. 第1部 ; 第36冊)



## 6.2 Parallel title of the a series, subseries or multipart monographic resource

~~The second element of the series area is the parallel title of the series, subseries or multipart monographic resource.~~

7730 **6.2.1** When the title proper of the series, subseries or multipart monographic resource appears on the prescribed source of information in more than one language and/or script, the parallel series title or title(s) may be given. Parallel titles ~~of series, subseries or multipart monographic resources~~ are given when necessary for identification or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue.

### *Examples*

- . – (Modern cinema = Cinéma moderne)
- . – (Статистические проблемы управления = Statistical problems of control)
- . – (Материалы к познанию фауны и флоры СССР = Contributiones pro fauna et flora URSS = Contributions à la connaissance de la faune et la flore de l'URSS = Proceedings on the study of the fauna and flora of the USSR)
- 7740 . – (International map of the world 1:1 000 000 = Carte internationale du monde au 1:1 000 000)
- ~~. – (Jeux visuels = Visual games ; 13)~~
- . – (Travaux de recherche en science sociale = Research monographs in the social sciences)
- . – (Corpus iuris sueo-gotorum antiqui = Samling af Sweriges gamla lagar)
- . – (現代日本音楽選 = The galaxy of contemporary Japanese music)
- ~~. – (현대건축시리즈 = Modern architecture ; 12)~~

7750 **6.2.2** ~~When the title proper consists of a common title and a dependent title, the parallel common title and parallel dependent title may be given after the whole title proper.~~ If the title proper is made up of a common title and a dependent title or titles, the parallel common title or titles and the parallel dependent title or titles, if given, are transcribed following the common title and dependent title.

### *Example*

- . – (Sounds of the theatre. Music = Voci del teatro. La musica ; 4)



### 6.3 Other title information of the a series, ~~subseries~~ or multipart monographic resource

~~The third element of the series area is the other title information of the series, subseries or multipart monographic resource.~~

7760 **6.3.1** Other title information or parallel other title information relating to the series, ~~subseries~~ or multipart monographic resource is given when it appears on the prescribed source of information and is necessary for identification of the ~~series, subseries or multipart monographic resource~~, larger bibliographic resource or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue.

#### *Examples*

- . – (Die Reihe : Delikte, Indizien, Ermittlungen)
- . – (Words : their origin, use, and spelling)
- . – (English linguistics, 1500-1750 : a collection of facsimile reprints)
- . – (Collection I.P.N. : les industries, leurs productions, leurs nuisances)
- . – (Old Ordnance Survey Mmaps : the Godfrey edition)
- . – (Die Gitarre : Stücke europäischer Meister)
- . – (Introduction to technology : medieval to modern times)

7770

~~— (古音楽集成スペイン : 音楽史スペイン期ルネサンス・中世 ; 6)~~

**6.3.2** When the title proper consists of a common title and a dependent title, other title information, if given, follows the part of the title proper to which it applies. In case of doubt, it is given after the whole title proper.

#### *Examples*

- . – (Pricing and buying. Module 5, Patterns : automobile prices)
- . – (Enquêtes et recherches statistiques : travaux en cours. Canada)

**6.3.3** The An edition statement relating to a series or subseries is given as other title information when necessary for identification of the series. It is given according to the provisions of area 2.

7780

#### *Examples*

- . – (Sammlung Göschen : 2. Ausg.)
- . – (National atlas : separate sales ed.)
- ~~— (Early learning series : 2. ed.)~~
- . – (Computer simulation models : 2nd ed.)



## 6.4 Statements of responsibility relating to the a series, ~~subseries~~ or multipart monographic resource

7790 **6.4.1** ~~The fourth element of the series area is the statement of responsibility relating to the series, subseries or multipart monographic resource. When~~ **If** the title proper of the series, ~~subseries~~ or multipart monographic resource is a generic term, the first statement of responsibility is ~~mandatory~~ **given**. In other cases, the first and subsequent statements of responsibility are given when they appear on the prescribed source of information and are necessary for identification of the ~~series, subseries or multipart monographic resource,~~ **larger bibliographic resource** or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue. Parallel statements of responsibility may be given.

### Examples

- . – (Map supplement / Association of American Geographers)
- . – (Research monographs / Institute of Economic Affairs)
- . – (Sämtliche Werke / Thomas Mann)
- . – (Collected software / American University, English Language Institute)
- 7800 ~~— (Série internationale / Recta Foldex ; 302)~~
- ~~— (Bibliothek der deutschen Classiker / herausgegeben von S.P. Leffler und E. Bruzelius)~~
- Note:* Statement of responsibility from cover
- . – (Technical report / Forest Engineering Research Institute of Canada = Institut canadien de recherches en génie forestier)
- . – (Miscellaneous report / Geological survey of Canada = Rapport divers / Commission géologique du Canada)
- . – (Dzieła wszystkie = Complete works / Fryderyk Chopin)
- 7810 . – (Research reports / Canadian Transport Commission, Research Branch = Commission canadienne des transports, Direction de la recherche)
- . – (交響曲全集 / ベー トーヴェン)
- . – (연구총서 / 한국교회연구소)

~~Parallel statements of responsibility may be given.~~

**6.4.2** When the title proper consists of a common title and a dependent title, ~~each~~ **the** statement **or statements** of responsibility, if given, ~~is~~ **are** given **according to 1.4.5.12** ~~after the part of the title proper to which it refers. In case of doubt, it is given after the whole title proper.~~



**6.5 International sStandard Serial nNumber of the a series or subseries multipart monographic resource**

7820 **Mandatory**

~~This element does not apply when the area is used for a multipart monographic resource.~~

**6.5.1** ~~The An International Sstandard Serial Number (ISSN) relating to the series or subseries-  
multipart monographic resource of which a resource is a part is given when it is known, preceded by its  
customary label and is transcribed in accordance with the relevant standard.~~

*Examples*

- . – (Graeco-Roman memoirs, ISSN 0306-9222)
- . – (Transactions of the Royal Society of Edinburgh, ISSN 0080-4568)
- . – (Actualités scientifiques et industrielles, ISSN 0365-6861)
- ~~. – (Liederblätter deutscher Jugend, ISSN 0342-4820 ; Heft 22)~~
- . – (Elsevier's interactive anatomy, ISSN 0929-2225)
- . – (Manuskripte des Geographischen Instituts der FU Berlin, ISSN 0170-6268)
- . – (Spiritualités vivantes. Série Christianisme, ISSN 0291-9044)**
- ~~. – (文科紀要 / 東北大学教養部, ISSN 0495-7210 ; 10集)~~
- ~~. – (우리문학연구 총서, ISSN 1229-7429 ; 2)~~

7830 ~~**6.5.2** — When the title proper consists of the distinctive title of a subseries, the ISSN of the main series is given with its title in area 7.~~

**6.5.3~~2~~** When the title proper of the series consists of a common title or main series and a dependent title, the ISSN of the common title or main series is omitted in area 6 and may be given in area 7 (see 7.6.1).

7840 *Examples*

- . – (Dunántúli tudományos gyűjtemény. Series historica, ISSN 0475-9923)  
*Note:* ISSN of ~~the~~ main series: ISSN 0475-9915
- . – (Classic orators. Europe, ISSN 0082-927X)  
*Note:* ISSN of main series: ISSN 0081-1236
- . – (Der Landkreis. Ausgabe Hessen, ISSN 0340-3246)  
*Note:* ISSN of main series: ISSN 0342-2259



## 6.6 Numbering within the a series, ~~subseries~~ or multipart monographic resource

7850 **6.6.1** The numbering of the resource within a series, ~~subseries~~ or multipart monographic resource is given in the terms in which it appears on the prescribed source of information. Standard abbreviations may be used. ~~If abbreviations are used, an international standard such as ISO 832 is used (see 0.6.4).~~ Arabic numerals are ~~substituted for~~ **given in place of** other numerals or spelled-out numbers. When the numbering of the resource contains both roman and arabic numerals, the numerals are transcribed as they appear.

### *Examples*

- . – (Historic instruments at the Victoria and Albert Museum ; 4)
- . – (Russian titles for the specialist, ISSN 0305-3741 ; no. 78)
- . – (Труды Московского общества испытателей природы ; т. 41)
- . – (Studia islandica ; 13. hefti)
- 7860 . – (La bibliothèque bleue entièrement refondue & considérablement augmentée ; no 3)
- . – (Collection des plans anciens de Paris ; 1)
- . – (Plan net ; S75)
- . – (Carte de la Région Ile-de-France ; X-3)
- . – (Eulenburg general music series ; 705)
- . – (Musik alter Meister ; Heft 1)
- . – (Forsytesagaen ; 1)
- . – (A Sunday Times guide to Shakespeare's characters ; 7)
- . – (At-a-flash time line cards ; set 2)
- . – (Beatrix Potter jigsaw puzzles ; no. 1)
- 7870 . – (Multimedia learning series ; vol. 2)
- . – (Visit Canada series ; vol. C)
- . – (Computer simulation games ; module 5)
- . – (Liederblätter deutscher Jugend, ISSN 0342-4820 ; Heft 22)
- . – (合唱名曲コレクション ; D11)
- . – (일론의 땅 시리즈 ; 3탄)
- . – (文科紀要 / 東北大学教養部, ISSN 0495-7210 ; 10集)
- . – (우리문학연구 총서, ISSN 1229-7429 ; 2)

**6.6.2** When the title proper **of the larger bibliographic resource** consists of a common title or a series title and a dependent title, the numbering of the common title or series title is **given after the**

7880 ~~common title omitted and the numbering of the subseries after the subseries title.~~ An appropriate note or the collocation of the numbering of the series and subseries may be given in area 7.

*Examples*

. – (Publications ~~of the~~ University of Manchester ; no. 244. Administration series ; no. 1)

*Note:* Numbering in the main series: 244

. – (Geological research reports ; 135. Map series ; no. 3)

*Note:* Numbering in the main series: 135

. – (Das Erbe deutscher Musik ; Bd. 68. Abteilung Oper und Sologesang ; Bd. 8)

*Note:* Numbering in the main series: 68

7890 . – (Arte moderna straniera ; n. 8. Serie C, Disegnatori ; n. 1)

*Note:* Numbering in the main series: n. 8

. – (Contrasts and similarities in siblings ; no. 6. Series A, Young brothers and sisters (12-21) ; no. 1)

*Note:* Numbering in the main series: no. 6

### 6.6.3 Multipart monographic resource within a series

When the parts of a multipart monographic resource within a series are numbered within the series, the numbering of the first and last parts ~~numbers and/or letters are~~ is given and connected by a hyphen when the numbering ~~or letters is (are)~~ continuous. In other cases, ~~all the numbers/letters are~~ numbering of each part is given, separated by commas.

7900 *Examples*

; vol. 11-15

; vol. 131, 145, 152

; 4-7

; 2, 6, 13

; A-F

; vol. 10-13

; A, C, M

; 2051-2059

7910 **6.6.4** If the numbering appears in more than one language, it is given following the title proper or parallel title in that language, as appropriate.

### 6.6.5 Continuing resource within a series

**6.6.5.1** When all issues or parts or all iterations of a continuing resource within a series or subseries have the same series number, this number is given in the series statement ~~together with the designation of the issue or part or of the iteration (vol., no., etc.), if any.~~

*Example*

. – (Public Health Service publication ; no. 1124)

*Editorial comment: Each issue of the annual Bibliography on smoking and health has the same series number.*

7920

**6.6.5.2** If each issue or part ~~When in the course of publication of the a continuing resource the numbering within the a series~~ has different numbering ~~or subseries varies, this may be stated in area 7 (see area 3 for serials). the numbering is not given in area 6.~~

~~**6.6.5.3** — When the issues or parts or the iterations carry multiple numbering systems, all numberings are given (see 3.3.).~~



## 7 NOTE AREA

### Introductory note

The note area contains any descriptive information that has not been given in other areas of the description but that is considered to be important to users of bibliographic records. Notes qualify and amplify the description in areas 1-6 and can deal with any aspect of a resource. Notes may also give the bibliographic history of the resource and indicate relationships to other resources.

7930

In making links to continuing resources, the preferred and recommended form to be given in the citation is the key title and ISSN. Where these are not known, the other resource should be cited by title proper or, exceptionally, in a form appropriate to the context for which the description is being prepared (for example, the heading and title under which the resource appears in the catalogue of the library). In making links to monographic resources, the monographic resource should be cited by title proper and statement of responsibility, if any.

Notes, by their nature, cannot be enumerated exhaustively, but can be categorized in terms of the areas of the ISBD. In addition to notes relating to these areas, there may be notes relating to the description of the resource that do not correspond to any specific ISBD area.

7940 Except where otherwise indicated, notes and their order of presentation are *optional*. Two or more notes may be combined into a single note when considered appropriate by the cataloguing agency.

~~When a note is mandatory but the required information is not known by the cataloguer, a note is given to indicate this.~~

#### *Examples*

- ~~— Continued by a section in: Canadian Association of Geographers newsletter~~
- ~~— For conversion to slides. — Teachers' notes in pamphlet~~
- ~~— Report year ends June 30~~
- ~~— Title from codebook. — Data for 1945–1960~~
- ~~— Size when framed: 40 x 35 cm~~
- ~~— Reproduced from original poster by R.V. Kealey, held by the Imperial War Museum~~
- ~~— Original title: Dissertatio physica de natura et remediis fulminum~~
- ~~— Issues for 1999— have title: Annual report on pipeline safety~~
- ~~— Title from title bar (viewed on Jan. 13, 2000)~~
- ~~— Resource size: 100, 300, 220, 500 statements~~
- ~~— Translation of: À chacun sa mission~~
- ~~— Screen displays in English and French~~
- ~~— Title supplied by cataloguer~~
- ~~— Frequently updated; viewed 2/18/97~~
- ~~— Frequency unknown~~

7950

7960

**For older monographic resources:**

It may be useful to group together all notes concerning a single work in a resource, or all notes based on one source, for example, a privilege statement that may refer to more than one element or area.

**For continuing resources:**

Notes can be used to link the description of one continuing resource to descriptions of other continuing resources or to the description of a monographic resource. In making links to other continuing resources, the preferred and recommended form of other resource titles to be given in the citation is the key title and ISSN. Where these are not known, the other resource should be cited by title proper or, exceptionally, in a form appropriate to the context for which the ISBD record is being prepared (for example, the heading and title under which the resource appears in the catalogue of the library). In making links to monographic resources, the monographic resource should be cited by title proper and statement of responsibility, if any.

7970

In all instances where a new key title and ISSN are assigned because of a change of continuing resource title, notes giving the history of the resource and the related key title(s) and ISSN are *mandatory*.

**For electronic resources:**

The notes on system requirements (see 7.0.3) and mode of access (see 7.0.4), in this sequence, precede all other notes.

7980

**Contents**7.0 ~~Specific material note~~ **Notes on the content form and media type area and for special types of materials**

7.1 Notes on the title and statement of responsibility area

7.2 Notes on the edition area and the bibliographic history of the resource

7.3 Notes on the material or type of resource specific area

7.4 Notes on the publication, production, distribution, etc., area

7.5 Notes on the physical description area

7.6 Notes on the series area

7.7 Notes on the contents

7990

7.8 Notes on the resource identifier and terms of availability area

7.9 Notes on the issue, part, iteration, etc., that forms the basis of the description

7.10 Other notes

7.11 Notes relating to the copy in hand

**Recommended punctuation** **Prescribed punctuation**

Each note is separated from the next one by a point, space, dash, space ( . - ). **When each note is given in a separate paragraph,** ~~†~~ these **punctuation marks** are omitted, or replaced by a point **at the end of the note,** ~~-~~ when each note is given on a separate line.

8000

Within notes it is recommended, where appropriate, that the prescribed punctuation of areas 1-6 be followed; for example, a title is separated from a statement of responsibility by a space, diagonal slash, space ( / ). **The areas of description of a resource within a note are separated by a point and a space.**

**For continuing resources:**

When the key title and ISSN are given in the note area, they are linked by a space, equals sign, space (=); when the title proper and the ISSN are given, the ISSN is preceded by a comma, space (,).

**Prescribed source**

Any source



**7.0** ~~Specific material note~~ **Notes on the content form and media type area and for special types of material**

8010 **7.0.1** **Notes on the content form and media type area**

Notes on the content form and media type area may be given if considered important to users of the catalogue.<sup>23</sup>

**7.0.12** **Bibliographic reference note for older monographic resources**

A bibliographic reference note is given as the first note. The note contains a citation, given in a standard and abbreviated form, to a description of the resource in a list describing older monographic resources. The note may contain more than one citation.

*Examples*

- . – Schramm, A., Bilderschmuck, v. 4, p. 10, 50, and ill.
- . – ESTC\_S126474

8020 When the information is available, the note should always be given for incunabula, and preferably given in the description of any early printed book.

**7.0.23** **Frequency statement for continuing resources**

A note (*mandatory*) of the frequency of a serial or the frequency of updates to an integrating resource is given when the frequency is not stated in area 1.

*Examples*

- . – Bimonthly
- . – Irregular
- . – Monthly (July-August issues combined)
- . – Continuously updated
- . – Four times each term
- . – Triweekly during the academic year
- . – Updated weekly

8030

When the frequency is stated in area 1, it may be repeated in area 7 if it is necessary to convey some additional information.

*Example*

- . – Weekly (10 issues each semester)  
*Title proper: The Mac weekly*

---

<sup>23</sup> Examples of such notes may be added as experience with the new area is gained.

When the frequency of a continuing resource is unknown, a note “Frequency unknown” is given.

8040 Changes in the frequency of a serial or the frequency of updates to an integrating resource may be given in ~~area 7~~ the note.

*Example*

.- Quarterly as from 1975, no. 1-

**7.0.3.4 Notes on System requirements for electronic resources**

A note (~~mandatory~~) on system requirements ~~that are conditional~~ for use of the resource is recorded ~~in area 7~~ as the first note for all direct-access electronic resources when appropriate.

~~System requirements are given as the first note.~~ These requirements may include one or more technical specifications, usually given in the following order, and preceded by “System requirements:” (or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~).

Name, model and/or number of machine or machine(s)

8050 Amount of memory

Name of the operating system or system(s)

Software requirements (including programming language)

Peripherals

Hardware (internal) modifications

Character code

Each requirement, other than the first, is preceded by a semicolon.

8060 When the resource consists of two or more different physical carriers (e.g. a multimedia resource consisting of an electronic disk and a videodisc), a separate system requirements note may be made to highlight distinctive system features associated with each physical carrier. *Alternatively*, the cataloguing agency may choose to make a single system requirements note for both physical carriers.

*Examples*

. – System requirements: Macintosh; at least 1 MB; System 6.0.5 or later; HyperCard version 1.0 or later; hard disk drive; videodisc player (Pioneer 2200, 4200, 6000A, 6010A, 8000); RS232 cable connector (from Macintosh to videodisc player)  
*Editorial comment:* Single system requirements note for different physical carriers (electronic disk and videodisc).

8070 . – System requirements for electronic disk: Macintosh; at least 1 MB; System 6.0.5 or later; HyperCard version 1.0 or later; hard disk drive; connector cable (from Macintosh to videodisc player)  
*Editorial comment:* Separate system requirements note for different physical carrier.

. – System requirements: Requires BinHex 4.0 to convert binary file

. – System requirements: 386SX processor or higher; 2 MB RAM (4 MB recommended); Windows 3.0 or higher; hard disk with 8 MB free space; VGA adapter; col. monitor; mouse

- . – System requirements: UNIX workstation with Mosaic software
- . – System requirements: Philips Interactive compact disc (CD-I) player with monitor
- . – System requirements: No information available
- ~~. – System requirements: Mac lisäksi: Prosessori 68030 tai uudempi (suositellaan Power PC); System 7.1 tai uudempi~~
- . – Character code: UTF-8
- . – Character code: Japanese (ISO-2022-JP)

8080

#### **7.0.4-5** ~~Notes relating to~~ **Mmode of access for electronic resources**

A note (~~mandatory~~) relating to mode of access is recorded ~~in area 7~~ for all remote-access electronic resources.

Mode of access is given as the ~~second~~ **first** note following the ~~unless a~~ **S** system requirements note (see 7.0.34) **is present**. It is preceded by “Mode of access:” (or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~). ~~In the absence of a system requirements note, mode of access is given as the first note.~~

#### *Examples*

- . – Mode of access: Lexis system. Requires subscription to Mead Data Central, Inc.
- . – Mode of access: World Wide Web
- ~~. – Mode of access: Internet via ftp~~
- ~~. – Mode of access: Computer university network~~
- . – Mode of access: Mikenet

8090



## 7.1 Notes on the title and statement of responsibility area

### 7.1.1 Notes on the title proper

#### 7.1.1.1 Translation note

8100 ~~When the work contained in the resource is known to be a translation, the original title of the work is given in area 7 (see also 1.3.4). When the translation is known to be a translation of a particular edition of a work with its own title, this title is given first and may be followed by the title of the original work translated. When the resource contains several individual works, the translation notes may be included in the contents note. For continuing resources, see 7.2.4.1.~~

~~For notes on the language of the title, see 7.1.2.~~

#### *Examples*

- ~~— Translation of: La muerte de Artemio Cruz~~
- ~~— Originally published as: Five on Kirrin Island again~~
- ~~— Translation of: Gulliver's travels~~
- ~~— Original title: Dissertatio physica de natura et remediis fulminum~~
- 8110 ~~— Original title: North Land footprints, or, Lives on Little Bent Tree Lake; prevedeno s franc. jezika~~  
*Editorial comment: Original English text translated from French into Croatian.*
- ~~— Original title: Kira kira hikaru; translated into Finnish from the English translation: Twinkle twinkle~~

#### 7.1.1.21 Notes on the **S**source of the title proper

When the source of the title proper **of a printed resource** is other than the ~~prescribed source of information~~ **title page**, the source is given in area ~~7~~ **a note**.

#### *Examples*

- 8120 . – Title from cover
- . – Title from caption
- . – Title from publisher's catalogue
- . – Title from **P.L. Phillips**' A list of maps of America / **P.L. Phillips**, p. 502
- . – Title supplied by cataloguer**

#### **For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:**

When the source of the title proper is other than a source permanently associated with the resource (~~see 0.4~~), the source is given in area ~~7~~ **a note**.

*Examples*

8130

- . – Title from container
- . – Title from descriptive insert
- ~~. – Title supplied by cataloguer~~

**For electronic resources:**

The source of the title proper is recorded in all cases.

*Examples*

8140

- . – Title from title screen ~~(viewed on Aug. 8, 2003)~~
- . – Title from codebook
- ~~. – Title from container~~
- . – Title from videodisc label
- ~~. – Title supplied by cataloguer~~
- ~~. – Title from IFLANET home page~~
- . – Title from first display of information
- . – Title from TEI header
- . – Title from printout of title screen
- . – Title from subject line of email header
- . – Title from homepage

**7.1.1.32 Notes giving variant titles**

Notes on variant titles are given when considered important to users of the catalogue.

*Examples*

8150

- . – Title on spine: Oliver!
- . – Title proper romanized: Zolotoj telenok
- ~~. – Spine title: Bath Road Acts~~
- ~~. – Spine title: Klavierstücke~~
- ~~. – Title proper romanized: Kartinki s vystavki~~
- . – **Title on S**leeve title: William Shakespeare, 1564–1964
- ~~. – Title transliterated: Leningrad : na Maloi Neve~~
- . – Title in left margin: Ville de Aix-les-Bains, Savoie
- . – **Title on C**over title: Schweinfurt Stadtplan
- ~~Editorial comment: Title proper on map is: Stadt Schweinfurt~~

- 8160
- . – Sheets for 1921–1924 have title: Official road map of metropolitan district; 1930–1941: Greater metropolitan district; 1950–1963, Official road map New York and vicinity  
*Editorial comment:* Most recent sheets have title: New York City and vicinity.
  - . – Title on codebook: New Democratic Party of Ontario, 1967
  - . – Title on container: Interactive cells
  - . – Title on added title page: To the English gentry
  - ~~. – HTML title: CyberMedia~~
  - . – File name: DUB.1
  - . – Title on second title screen: Personal finances and other applications
- 8170
- . – Title on disc label: Journal of the U.S. House of Representatives  
*Editorial comment: Title proper-is:* Journal of the House of Representatives of the United States
  - . – At head of title: Bizmap navigator  
*Editorial comment: Title proper-is:* Singapore yellow pages with electronic maps.
  - . – Some issues have also title in German: Hobbes OS/2 archiviert  
*Editorial comment: Title proper-is:* Hobbes archived OS/2.
  - . – Title bar title: Antarctic Meteorology Research Center home page
  - . – Title on engraved title page: Dittionario italiano
  - . – At head of title: "Un professionnel de l'auto vous dit ... "  
*Title proper:* "Je roule sans accident!"
- 8180 ~~For electronic resources, for a locally assigned file name see 7.10.1.~~

### **7.1.1.43 Expansion of initials, acronyms, and numbers in title proper**

When the title proper consists of or includes a set of initials or an acronym (see 1.1.3.3), a note on the variant or expanded form, taken from a source other than the prescribed source of information for the resource, may be given (see 1.43.3).

#### *Examples*

- . – Expanded form of title proper: Interrogation recording and location system  
*Editorial comment: Title proper-is:* IRLS
- . – Expanded form of title proper: Kantoor en efficiency  
*Editorial comment: Title proper-is:* K. en E.

- 8190 When the title proper consists of or includes numbers (see 1.1.3.5), a note on the expanded form may be given.

#### *Example*

- . – Expanded form of title proper: Le zéro un  
*Editorial comment: Title proper-is:* Le 01

~~7.1.1.5~~ — When the title proper consists solely of the name of a corporate body, a note of descriptive information taken from outside the resource may be given (see 1.1.3.2, 1.4).

*Example*

*Title proper:* City Theatre

*Note:* Programme of performances for the season

8200

### **7.1.1.64** For continuing resources: Changes to the title proper

#### **7.1.1.64.1** Serials

Major changes to the title proper of a serial require a new description (see A.2.4). For notes on major changes to the title proper of a serial resulting from or leading to changes in its bibliographic history, see 7.2.

Notes on *minor* changes to the title proper that occur after the first or earliest issue or part are given together with the numbering of the respective issues or parts, when necessary for identification of the serial or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue. *Alternatively*, a note that the title proper varies is given (see 1.1.7). A general note may be given when scattered issues or parts have a different title proper.

8210

*Examples*

. – Issues for 1999- have title: Annual report on pipeline safety

*(Title proper of earliest issue: Annual report of pipeline safety)*

. – Issues for Jan. 1928-July 1952 have title: The magazine antiques; issues for Aug. 1952-Feb. 1971 have title: Antiques; issues for Mar. 1971- have title: The magazine antiques-

*(Title proper of earliest issue: Antiques)*

. – Some issues have title: Viet-Nam bulletin

*(Title proper of earliest issue: Vietnam bulletin)*

8220

. – Some issues have title: SLIS newsletter

*(Title proper of earliest issue: Newsletter)*

. – Vols. for 1995- have title: Tax strategies for corporate acquisitions, dispositions, spin-offs, joint ventures, financings, reorganizations, and restructuring (varies slightly)

*(Title proper of earliest issue: Tax strategies for corporate acquisitions, dispositions, spin-offs, joint ventures and other strategic alliances)*

. – Issues for Oct.-Dec. 1995- have title: African woman & health

*(Title proper of earliest issue: African women & health)*

. – Title varies slightly

8230

#### **7.1.1.64.2** Integrating resources

Notes are made on titles appearing on earlier iterations of the same *integrating* resource (see 1.1.7).

*Examples*

- . – Title history: Australian industrial safety, health & welfare, 1979-Mar. 1996
- . – Former titles: Euroinfo international (viewed on May 10, 1998); Telephone directories international (viewed on Sept. 9, 1999)

**7.1.1.4.3 Multipart monographic resources**

If the title proper of a multipart monographic resource changes on a part or parts after the one chosen as the basis of the description, the new title is given in a note.

*Example*

- 8240 . – Title on vols. 4- : Histoire de la Grande-Bretagne  
Title proper: Histoire de l'Angleterre

**7.1.2 Notes on the nature, scope, ~~literary or artistic~~ form, purpose or language of the resource**

**7.1.2.1** ~~A note on the form is necessary only~~ If the nature, purpose, scope, or literary, artistic or musical form cannot be inferred from other elements of the description, a note may be given.

*Examples*

- 8250 . – Play in 3 acts
- . – Poems
- . – Thesis (M.A.)
- . – Dissertation
- . – Computer game
- . – Computer program
- . – Programme of performances for the season  
Title proper: City Theatre

**~~For notated music resources:~~**

~~The musical form and/or medium of performance of the resource may be given in area 7.~~

*Examples*

- 8260 ~~. – Opera in 3 acts~~
- . – English madrigals
- . – ~~2~~Two pieces for guitar
- . – For string orchestra or string quartet
- . – For 4-6 voices
- . – Originally for piano

~~For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images and  
For electronic resources:~~

~~The genre or other intellectual category to which the resource belongs may be given in area 7.~~

*Examples*

8270

- ~~— Comedy in two acts~~
- . – Documentary production
- . – Historical time-chart
- . – Interactive adventure game
- . – Spreadsheet, with word processing and graphics capabilities
- . – Simulation model of the U.S. economy structured after the Wharton Econometric Model
- . – Combined time series analysis and graph plotting system
- . – Gray-scale image processing program

8280

- . – Internet news service
- . – "Not for navigation"
- . – Shows dioceses
- . – Shows names of owners of buildings and other real estate
- . – Shows radial distances from City Hall
- . – Also shows mineral deposits  
*Editorial comment: Map has title "Road map ..."*
- . – Shows southernmost extent of the midnight sun

### 7.1.2.2 Notes on language

A note on language is necessary only if the linguistic content is significant and the language of the content cannot be inferred from other elements of the description.

8290

*Examples*

- . – German text
- . – Legend in English, French and German  
(Title proper is in Dutch)
- ~~— Except for the title and "La mer du Nord" the map is in English~~
- . – Legend in 12 languages
- ~~— French. Cover title in French, German and Italian. Legend in French, German, Italian, English and Dutch~~

- 8300
- . – Text in Greek, English and German; ~~p~~Place names in Greek and romanized Greek.
  - . – Text in English and French
  - . – Preface in Danish and English
  - . – Screen displays in French and English
  - . – Parallel Italian and French texts
  - . – Papers in English or Japanese; summaries in English
  - . – Text in German; ~~s~~Summaries and tables of contents in Russian and French

### 7.1.3 Notes on parallel titles and parallel other title information

Parallel titles and parallel other title information ~~appearing on the prescribed source of information~~ may be given in ~~area 7~~ a note when they are not recorded in area 1.

#### Examples

- 8310
- ~~— Parallel titles in ten languages~~
  - . – Issues for July/Aug. 1962–Sept./Oct. 1966 have ~~parallel title~~ also in Chinese: Wen hua
  - . – Issues for Oct. 1975– have ~~parallel title~~ in English: The half-yearly law review  
*Editorial comment:* English parallel title on earlier issues: Law quarterly review.
  - . – ~~Parallel~~ Titles in four additional languages
  - . – ~~Parallel~~ French title from title screen: Les techniques de la prévision à court terme

~~Parallel titles and parallel other title information appearing elsewhere on the resource but not on the prescribed source of information may be given in area 7 (see 1.3.5.3).~~

#### Examples

- 8320
- ~~— Parallel title in Spanish on verso of title page~~
  - . – ~~Parallel~~ Title on ~~separate~~ added title page: Introduction à la langue française
  - . – ~~Parallel~~ English title from container: The four seasons
  - . – Other title information from container: Songs of redemption
  - ~~— Other title information from container: Gaining financial independence~~

#### For serials:

- 8330
- ~~When the parallel titles and statements of other title information vary in the course of the publication of the serial, notes Information on the successive parallel titles and/or statements of parallel other title information appearing on later issues of a serial are may be given in a note together with the numbering of the respective issues or parts when considered important to users of the catalogue; Alternatively, a note that parallel titles and/or parallel other title information vary may be given (see 1.3.5.5.6, 1.4.3.4.9).~~

### For integrating resources:

For integrating resources, the latest parallel title and statement of other title information may be given in area 1, and earlier information on parallel titles or parallel other title information appearing on earlier iterations of an integrating resource (including the lack of a parallel title(s) or titles on earlier iterations) is may be given in area 7 a note when considered important to users of the catalogue (see 1.3.2.5.5.6, 1.4.3.4.9).

### 7.1.4 Notes on the statements of responsibility

Notes on the statements of responsibility These may include:

- 8340 • statements of responsibility taken from outside the resource, its container or accompanying textual matter;
- notes on variant or expanded forms of names of persons or corporate bodies, notes on pseudonyms, notes on persons or corporate bodies connected with the work that cannot be included in other areas of the description (because, for example, their function is not specified); ~~and~~
- ~~• notes on persons or corporate bodies connected with previous editions but not with the edition in hand.~~
- statements of responsibility relating to appendices and other supplementary matter appearing on the resource but not on a prescribed source of information (see 1.4.4.4);
- notes on the staging, instrumentation, etc., of performed works
- 8350 • notes on persons or bodies connected with the technical production, administrative and consulting functions of the work.

#### Examples

- . – Attributed to Jonathan Swift
- . – By Voltaire
- . – Drawings by Gordon Davey
- ~~. – Translated from the author's unpublished manuscript~~
- . – Full name of author: Mignon Good Eberhart
- . – Full name of the institute: Professional Institute of the Public Service of Canada  
Title proper: Journal of the Professional Institute
- 8360 . – At head of title: Dept. of Defence
- ~~. – Previous editions by Norman Smythe~~
- . – Issues [1]- compiled by: Truong Ky
- . – Attributed to Blaeu by C. Koeman in: Atlantes Neerlandici, vol...., p...
- ~~. – By ... from the declaration of copyright deposit~~

- 8370
- . – Prepared by State Highway Dept. 1925-1948; prepared by General Drafting Co. 1949-1955; prepared by Engineering Services 1965; prepared by National Survey 1961-1962; prepared by State Highway Dept. 1963-1969; prepared by Dept. of Transportation 1970-
  - . – "Ground control was supplied by U.S. Coast and Geodetic Survey"
  - . – "Plotted ... by G. Petrie and D.P. Nicol, University of Glasgow, 1965. Field reconnaissance, 1962, and geomorphological interpretation by R.J. Price as part of Project No. 1469 of the Institute of Polar Studies, the Ohio State University"
  - ~~— Previous editions by ...~~
    - ~~*Editorial comment:* This type of note should be restricted to a clear change in the person or corporate body, not merely a change in the form of name of the person or corporate body.~~
  - ~~— Previously published under the name Joseph Haydn~~
  - . – Drawings by Inigo Jones
  - . – Real name of author: Alexander Wolcott
  - ~~— Previously published under the initials J.S.~~
- 8380
- ~~— Attributed to Thomas Dekker~~
  - . – Label on container reads: The Schools Council
  - . – Data collected in collaboration with Christiane Klapisch, École pratique des hautes études, Paris
  - . – Animated by Gary Simski ; consultation provided by Micro Industries
  - . – Systems designer, Henry Letow ; sound, LF Acoustics
  - . – Label on container reads: Arizona Arts and Science Council
  - . – Content developed by Charles Lytle and William Surver ; videodisc and HyperCard stack design by J. Mark Turner ; HyperCard stack programming by Helen Brooks
  - . – Presenter and essayist: Alan Rich
- 8390
- . – Programmer, Leslie Olfson ; reference manual, Jean Fakoürey
  - ~~— Full name of producer: Jason A. Delaire~~
  - . – Played on an 1841 Erard concert grand
  - . – Adaptation, Louis Daquin and André Cerf ; dialogue, Roger Vaillant ; music, Jean Wiener ; sound, Lucien Legrand ; decor, Paul Bertrand ; Madeleine Robinson (Julie Moret), Albert Préjean (Leon Bouquiquant), Roger Pigaut (Pierre Bouquiquant), Jean Vilar (The Priest)
  - . – René Forest, violoncello (1st-2nd works) ; Anton Hammer, horn (3rd work) ; RIAS-Sinfonietta Berlin ; David Atherton (last 2 works), Jiri Starek (remainder), conductors
- 8400
- ~~Statements of responsibility relating to appendices and other supplementary matter appearing on the resource but not on the prescribed source of information may be given in area 7 (see 1.5.4.4).~~
- ~~When the statement of responsibility has been obtained from a source other than the prescribed source of information, the source from which such a statement has been obtained may be given in area 7.~~

*Examples*

- Author statement taken from title page verso
- Composer statement taken from title page verso

**For older monographic resources:**

Notes are given on the original position on the prescribed source of information of statements of responsibility transferred to the stipulated position.

*Examples*

- Author's name at head of title page

Statements of responsibility relating to appendices and other supplementary matter appearing on the resource but not on the prescribed source of information may be given in area 7.

When the statement of responsibility has been obtained from a source other than the prescribed source of information, the source from which such a statement has been obtained is given in area 7.

*Example*

- Author statement taken from the title page verso

**For continuing resources:**

Notes may be given on statements of responsibility that do not apply either to the title proper or to any of the parallel titles (see 1.5.5.10.1).

*Examples*

Title proper: Journal of the Professional Institute

*Note:* Full name of the institute: Professional Institute of the Public Service of Canada

Title proper: IRTU

*Note:* Expanded form of title proper: International Road Transport Union

**For multimedia resources, sound recordings and videorecordings:**

Also included are notes on the staging, instrumentation, etc., of performed works.

*Examples*

- Played on an 1841 Erard concert grand
- Special performance to mark the bi-centenary of Schiller's birth
- Adaptation, Louis Daquin and André Cerf ; dialogue, Roger Vaillant ; music, Jean Wiener ; sound, Lucien Legrand ; decor, Paul Bertrand ; Madeleine Robinson (Julie Moret), Albert Préjean (Leon Bouquiquant), Roger Pigaut (Pierre Bouquiquant), Jean Vilar (The Priest)

**For electronic resources:**

8440

Notes may be given on persons or bodies connected with the technical production, administrative and consulting functions of the work.

**7.1.4.1 Changes in statements of responsibility****For multipart monographic resources:**

If there is a ~~Notes on changes to the statement of responsibility that occur after the first or earliest part~~ of a multipart monographic resource and the new information is ~~are given when necessary for identification of the multipart monographic resources or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue,~~ a note is given.

**For serials:**

8450

If there is a ~~Notes on changes to the statement of responsibility~~ on later issues of a serial ~~for resources that does not require a new description (see 0-A.2.57), including minor changes to the form of name of a corporate body, that occur after the first or earliest issue or part are given when~~ and it is ~~necessary for identification of the serial or otherwise considered important to users of the catalogue,~~ a note is given. ~~Changes to the form of name of a corporate body to be considered *minor* include, for example, where linguistically applicable:~~

~~articles, prepositions and conjunctions are substituted, added or deleted;~~

~~spelling or punctuation is changed without affecting meaning;~~

~~inflection of a word is changed, for example, from singular to plural form;~~

~~order of elements in the name is changed.~~

**For integrating resources:**

8460

~~Notes on~~ If an ~~earlier statements of responsibility~~ that is ~~no longer present on the current iteration, or that appeared in a different form on an earlier iteration, are made when~~ is ~~considered important to users of the catalogue,~~ a note is given. ~~If the changes have been numerous, a general note may be given.~~

*Example*

. – Former editor: Matija Babić

. – Editor varies

**7.1.4.2 Source of statement of responsibility**

If a statement of responsibility has been transcribed from a source other than the preferred source of information, the source of the statement may be given in a note.

8470

*Example*

. – Author statement taken from title page verso

**For older monographic resources:**

If the statement of responsibility does not appear directly after the title statement on the preferred source of information, its position is described in a note. Statements of responsibility taken from outside the resource are given in a note with the source of such information.

*Example*

. – Author's name at head of title page

. – By Ezechiel Spanheim. Source: Deutsches Anonymen-lexikon / Michael Holzmann und Hanns Bohatta, Bd. 1, S. 409, Nr. 11863

8480

## 7.2 Notes on the edition area and the bibliographic history of the resource

These notes may include the source of the edition statement and details of the resource's relationship to other resources and to other editions, including the previous publication of reproductions or reissues (see 4, Introductory note).

Notes on preceding/succeeding works, adaptations, supplements, etc., are given when the relationship is such that the use or understanding of the resource described is dependent on knowledge of the related resource. A note on the related resource is also given when the resource described contains a revision of the related resource.

### *Examples*

- 8490
- "Information from official map reproduced under Government Printer's Copyright No. 4219 on 9/10/69"
  - Copy of original in Archivo General de Indias, Sevilla
  - "Drugi dio zbirke pjesama Budući bjeGUNAC iz raja istog autora."  
*Editorial comment:* Second part of the collection of poetry by the same author.

### 7.2.1 Source of the edition statement

Notes on the source of the edition statement or the statement of responsibility relating to the edition may be given.

#### **For older monographic resources:**

- 8500
- When edition information has been obtained from a source other than the prescribed source of information or from part of the preferred source of information preceding the title and statement of responsibility, the source from which such information has been obtained is given in *area 7a note*.

#### *Example*

- . – Edition statement from colophon

These may include notes of limited print run or limited distribution.

#### *Examples*

- Limited edition of 20 signed and numbered copies
- An edition of 75 copies, not for sale

#### **For continuing resources:**

- 8510
- Notes on the edition area and on the bibliographic history of the resource may include notes on the source or the nature of the edition statement (see 2.1.2).

A note (*mandatory*) is given on the regular revision of a continuing resource.

A note on the statement of responsibility relating to the edition and taken from outside the continuing resource may be given.

**For electronic resources:**

If the edition statement of an electronic resource is taken from a source different from the source of the title proper, the source of the edition statement is given in a note~~recorded whenever it differs from the source of the title proper.~~

*Examples*

8520

- . – Edition statement from booklet
- . – Edition statement from disk label
- ~~. – Edition statement from information at end of resource~~

**7.2.2 Changes to the edition area** ~~for continuing resources~~**For serials and multipart monographic resources:**

Changes in edition statements that occur after the ~~first or earliest issues~~ or parts used as the basis of description and ~~for resources that~~ do not require a new description (see A.2.6.2 (b)) are given in ~~area 7~~ a note when considered important to users of the catalogue (~~see 2.1.5~~).

**For integrating resources:**

8530

Earlier edition statements that are no longer present on the current iteration or that are in a different form on an earlier iteration and do not require a new description (see A.2.6.3 (a)) are given in ~~area 7~~ a note when considered important to users of the catalogue (~~see 2.1.5~~).

**7.2.3 ~~Notes on the b~~ Bibliographic history of the resource**

Notes relating to the edition being described or the bibliographic history of the work may be given.

*Examples:*

8540

- . – Originally published: London : J. Tonson, 1747
- ~~. – Originally published: London : Collins, 1967~~
- ~~. – Originally published: Leipzig : Breitkopf & Härtel, 1889~~
- . – Originally issued in 1965
- . – Previously published as: The players of Null-A. London : Dodson, 1970; originally published as: The pawns of Null-A. New York : Street and Smith, 1948
- . – Formerly available as: CAS 675
- . – Reprint of the second edition: London : [s.n.], 1760
- . – Offprint from: Physical review ; 2nd series, vol. 70, no. 5-6, September 1 & 15, 1946
- . – Reproduced from the map published by Nicolas Berey in Paris 1663
- . – Reproduction of: Johannis Hevelii Uranographia totum coelum stellatum. Gedani, 1690

- ~~— Facsimile reproduction of 4th edition: Amsterdam : [s.n.], 1670. Vol. 1, 2nd ed. Vol. 2, 3rd ed. Vol. 3, 2nd ed.~~
- 8550 . – Facsimile reproduction of the first edition: St. Omer : [s.n.], 1610
- . – Facsimile reproduction from a ms. original in the National Map Collection, Public Archives of Canada
- ~~— Facsimile reproduction of the first edition, Vienna : Österr. Bundesverlag, 1894~~
- . – Based on the book of the same title by Ludwig Bemelmans
- . – Based on: The treasure of Franchard / by Robert Louis Stevenson
- . – Adaptation of: Draculus. 1994
- . – Revised version of the filmstrip issued in 1969 under title: Maps and atlas survey
- . – Edited version of 1972 motion picture entitled: The miracle of Bali : a recital of music and dancing
- 8560 . – "Information from official map reproduced under Government Printer's Copyright No. 4219 on 9/10/69"
- . – Copy of original in Archivo General de Indias, Sevilla
- For electronic resources:**
- ~~These include indication of the frequently changing contents of a remote access electronic resource.~~
- ~~Examples~~
- ~~— Updated weekly~~
- . – Program first issued by Educational Software in 1994
- . – Electronic version of the print publication issued in 1989
- 8570 . – Digital reproduction of the publication issued in 1522
- ~~— Formerly: German Embassy study~~
- . – Earlier parts of text published in 1984 and 1987 are digitised and made available online
- . – Replicates survey conducted in 1993 by author
- . – On container: Multimedia master version of the original 1985 two videodisc version
- ~~— Based on: Health interview survey 1996~~
- . – Resource copied Oct. 1996 from local area network
- ~~The following dates may be given when they are relevant to the content, use or condition of an electronic resource.~~
- 8580 ~~date(s) covered by the data content~~
- ~~date(s) when the data were collected~~

date(s) of supplementary files and accompanying material not described separately

*Examples*

- New England sermons, 1802–1918
- Interview wave I: Apr. 1991; wave II: Jan. 1992
- Data are representative of the 1990 census
- Data collected in May and June, 1995
- Supplementary files for sophomore and senior cohorts from 1993–1995

8590

**For continuing resources:**

Details of the bibliographic history of the resource may be given if required, together with the numbering showing the link with other resource(s):

*Example*

- ~~Revised~~ edition of: Mental capacity : medical and legal aspects of the aging. 1977
- "Map based on uncontrolled aerial photography flown 1972. Map field checked 1973"

**7.2.4 Notes on Relationships to other resources**

Details of the resource's relationship to other resources and to the other editions of the resource, including the previous publication of reprints or reissues, are given as follows:

8600

*Examples:*

- Issued with: G.T. Stockholm : Rumstedt, 1812; N.T. 4th ed., Stockholm : Rumstedt, 1811. Both also issued separately
- Cited in David McNeely Stauffer's American engravers upon copper and steel as appearing in the Pennsylvania magazine, June, 1775

**7.2.4.1 Translations**

8610

When the work contained in the resource is known to be a translation, the original title of the work, or, where appropriate, the key title and ISSN, is given in area 7 (see also 1.2.4). When the translation is known to be a translation of a particular edition of a work with its own title, this title is given first and may be followed by the title of the original work translated. When the resource contains several individual works, the translation notes may be included in the contents note.

For notes on the language of the title, see 7.1.2.2.

For editions of a resource appearing simultaneously in different languages, see 7.2.4.3.

*Examples*

- Translation of: La muerte de Artemio Cruz
- Originally published as: Five on Kirrin Island again

- 8620
- . – Translation of: Gulliver's travels
  - . – Original title: Dissertatio physica de natura et remediis fulminum
  - . – Original title: North Land footprints, or, Lives on Little Bent Tree Lake; translated from the French  
*Editorial comment: Original English text translated first into French, then into Croatian.*
  - . – Original title: Kira kira hikaru; translated into Finnish from the English translation: Twinkle twinkle

When the resource is known to be a translation of another resource and is appearing subsequent to the publication of that resource, the first note (*mandatory*) other than for electronic resources in area 7 is the title (or, where appropriate, the key title and ISSN) of the original resource given in the form shown in the following (see also 7.1.1.1):

*Example*

Soviet radiochemistry

- 8630
- Note:* . – Translation of: Radiokhimiia = ISSN 0033-8311  
*Title proper:* Soviet radiochemistry

For editions of a resource appearing simultaneously in different languages, see 7.2.4.3.

## 7.2.4.2 Reproductions

When the resource is an exact reproduction of another resource—(for example, a facsimile reproduction or other photographic (or micro-) reproduction of a printed title, a sound cassette copy of a sound disc, a videotape reproduction of a motion picture, a digitised version)—a note (*mandatory*) is given that the resource is a reproduction (see 2.1.1, 3.3.10, 4, Introductory note). The title of the original resource, (when different from the title of the reproduction), and its publication details the original place(s) of publication and the name(s) of the publisher(s) are given; the frequency of the original resource may also be given.

- 8640
- Examples*

~~Le banquet. — Reprod. [en fac sim.]. — No 1 (mars 1892) no 8 (mars 1893). — Genève : Slatkine, 1971. — 23 cm~~

*Note:* . – Reproduction of the monthly publication, Paris : Librairie Rouquette  
Areas 1-5: Le banquet. — Reprod. [en fac-sim.]. — No 1 (mars 1892)-no 8 (mars 1893). — Genève : Slatkine, 1971. — 23 cm

~~Le pianiste : [journal spécial, analytique et instructif]. — [Reprod. en fac-sim.]. — 1 (1833/34) 2(1834/35). — Genève : Minkoff, 1972. — Portr. ; 31 cm~~

- 8650
- Note:* . – Reproduction of the monthly, later bimonthly, publication, Paris : H. Lemoine  
Areas 1-5: Le pianiste : [journal spécial, analytique et instructif]. — [Reprod. en fac-sim.]. — 1 (1833/34)-2(1834/35). — Genève : Minkoff, 1972. — Portr. ; 31 cm

. – Facsimile reproduction. Originally published: London : R. Walton, [1654]  
Area 4: London : London Topographical Society, 1898

. – Micrographic reproduction. Originally published: Porto : Tércio de Miranda, 1910-1932  
Area 4: Lisboa : Biblioteca Nacional, 1986-1988

. – Digital reproduction. Originally published: Impresa Romae : per B[ernardinum de] V[it]alibus], 1522

Area 4: Nacionalna i sveučilišna knjižnica, 2005

. – Microform reproduction. Original edition: xiv, 624 p.

### 8660 7.2.4.3 Resources with different editions

When the resource is one of two or more simultaneously published editions differing in partial content and/or language, the name of the other edition or edition(s) is given. If the name of the other edition or edition(s) is not readily available, a general note is made. If a resource is published in more editions than can be named conveniently, a general note is made.

#### Examples

. – Also published in Early edition, 2-star edition, and 3-star edition

*Area 2* ~~Editorial comment: Title being described is~~ Final edition

. – Also published in National edition

*Area 2* ~~Editorial comment: Title being described is~~ City edition

8670 . – Edition statement applies to program listings

*Editorial comment: Published in multiple editions with identical editorial material; program listings apply to specific geographic areas.*

. – Numerous editions

. – Also appears in French and German

. – English edition of: Bulletin critique du livre français = ISSN 0007-4209

~~Editorial comment: Title proper: New French books~~

~~– Issues 46 – also available online~~

### 7.2.4.4 Resources with supplements, inserts, insets, etc.

8680 When the resource being described has one or more supplement(s) and/or inserts/insets, a note of the title (or, when applicable, the key title(s) and ISSN(s)) of the supplement(s) and/or inserts/insets may be given.

#### Examples

~~Numismatic chronicle~~

*Note: . – Supplement: Journal of the Royal Numismatic Society = ISSN 0307-8019*

*Title proper: Numismatic chronicle*

~~Der Kreis = Le cercle = The circle~~

*Note: . – Supplement: Das kleine Blatt*

*Title proper: Der Kreis*

. – Includes text describing the geology of the area covered, in English and French

. – Includes an index of populated places and distance table

8690 When these supplements are numerous, a general note about their existence may be given.

*Examples*

- . – Eighth-10th eds. updated by quarterly and annual cumulative supplements
- . – Numerous supplements

**7.2.4.5 Supplement to or insert~~inset~~ in**

When the resource is a supplement to or insert~~inset~~ of in another resource, a note (*mandatory*) of the title (or, when applicable, the key title and ISSN) of the main resource is given (see also 1.1.5.2).

*Examples*

~~Advances in physics~~

*Note:* . – Supplement to: Philosophical magazine = ISSN 0031-8086

*Title proper:* Advances in physics

8700

~~La lettre du maire (Paris). Textes et documents~~

*Note:* . – Supplement to: La lettre du maire = ISSN 0395-0182

*Title proper:* La lettre du maire (Paris). Textes et documents

~~Das kleine Blatt = La petite feuille = The leaflet~~

*Note:* . – Supplement to: Der Kreis

*Title proper:* Das kleine Blatt

~~Action transport~~

*Note:* . – Insert in: Transport public = ISSN 0249-5643

*Title proper:* Action transport

8710 **7.2.4.6 Other relationships**

Notes on other relationships between the resource being described and other resources may be given, provided that the nature of the relationship, the title(s) (or, when applicable, the key title(s) and ISSN(s)) of the other resource or resource(s) are specified.

When two or more resources are published together, each resource is described separately; a note may be given with each description stating that two or more are published together.

*Examples*

~~La sucrerie belge ...~~

*Note:* . – Published with: Sugar industry abstracts

*Title proper:* La sucrerie belge ...

8720

~~Sugar industry abstracts ...~~

*Note:* . – Published with: La sucrerie belge

*Title proper:* Sugar industry abstracts ...

~~Newsletter / Friends of Driftwood Public Library~~

*Note:* . – Vol. 4, no. 1- published in: Driftwood Public Library gazette

*Title proper:* Newsletter / Friends of Driftwood Public Library

*Editorial comment:* Earlier issues published separately.

. – Issued with: G.T. Stockholm : Rumstedt, 1812; N.T. 4th ed., Stockholm : Rumstedt, 1811. Both also issued separately

#### 7.2.4.7 Notes on Relationships: between continuing resources

##### 8730 7.2.4.7.1 Continuation

When the If a continuing resource is the continuation of a previously published another continuing resource, a note (mandatory) of the title (or, when applicable, the key title and ISSN) of the *previous* resource is given in a note introduced by the word “Continues:” the form:

Continues:

##### Example

Pointer

*Note:* . – Continues: Monthly Scottish news bulletin = ISSN 0307-5273

*Title proper:* Pointer

8740 When the If a continuing resource being described is continued by a subsequently published another continuing resource, a note (mandatory) of the title (or, when applicable, the key title and ISSN) of the *subsequent* resource is given in a note introduced by the words “Continued by:” the form:

Continued by:

##### Example

~~Report of the General Manager for the year ... / presented to the Glasgow Corporation Transport Committee~~

*Note:* . – Continued by: Annual report of the General Manager - Transport Department, Glasgow Corporation = ISSN 0308-4140

*Title proper:* Report of the General Manager for the year ... / presented to the Glasgow Corporation Transport Committee

##### 8750 7.2.4.7.2 Merger

When the If a continuing resource is the result of a merger of two or more previously published other continuing resources, a note (mandatory) of the titles (or, when applicable, the key titles and ISSNs) of the *previous* continuing resources is are given in a note introduced by the words “Merger of:” (or the equivalent in another language) the form:

Merger of: \_\_\_\_\_ ; and of:

##### Examples

~~Journal of applied chemistry. Abstracts~~

*Note:* . – Merger of: British abstracts. B 1, Chemical engineering, fuels metallurgy, applied electrochemistry and industrial inorganic chemistry = ISSN 0365-8740; and of: British abstracts. B 2, Industrial organic chemistry = ISSN 0365-8929

8760 *Title proper:* Journal of applied chemistry. Abstracts

Nordia tiedonantoja / Oulun yliopiston maantieleen laitos

*Note:* **—** Merger of: Nordia tiedonantoja. Sarja A = ISSN 0359-2510; and of: Nordia tiedonantoja. Sarja B = ISSN 0359-2529

*Title proper:* Nordia tiedonantoja / Oulun yliopiston maantieleen laitos

*Editorial comment:* ISSN 1238-2078 = Nordia tiedonantoja (1995)

Berner Zeitung

*Note:* **—** Merger of: Emmenthaler Blatt; and of: Neue Berner Zeitung

*Title proper:* Berner Zeitung

- 8770 ~~When the **If** a continuing resource being described has merged with one or more previously published continuing resources to form a new continuing resource, a note (mandatory) of the title(s) (or, when applicable, the key title(s) and ISSN(s)) of **each of** the additional merging **other** continuing resource(s) and the **subsequent** new continuing resource is given in **a note introduced by the words “Merged with:”, followed by the words “to become:” (or the equivalent in another language) and the title of the new resource.**~~ the form:

Merged with: \_\_\_\_\_ ; to become:

#### Examples

Transactions / British Ceramic Society

- 8780 *Note:* **—** Merged with: Journal of the British Ceramic Society = ISSN 0524-5133; to become: Transactions and journal of the British Ceramic Society = ISSN 0307-7357

*Title proper:* Transactions / British Ceramic Society

Revista de actualidades, artes y letras

*Note:* **—** Merged with: Gran vía; to become: Revista Gran vía de actualidades, artes y letras

*Title proper:* Revista de actualidades, artes y letras

Nordia tiedonantoja. Sarja A

- 8790 *Note:* **—** Merged with: Nordia tiedonantoja. Sarja B = ISSN 0359-2529; to become: Nordia tiedonantoja (1995) = ISSN 1238-2078

*Title proper:* Nordia tiedonantoja. Sarja A

*Editorial comment:* ISSN 0359-2510 = Nordia tiedonantoja. Sarja A

Euro-centre Suisse

*Note:* **—** Merged with: L'exportation en pratique; to become: Commerce extérieur Suisse

*Title proper:* Euro centre Suisse

#### 7.2.4.7.3 Split or separation

~~When the **If** a continuing resource being described is a new resource resulting from the split of a continuing resource into two or more continuing resources, a note (mandatory) of the title (or, when applicable, the key title and ISSN) of the *previous* continuing resource (which has been **from which it** split) is given in **a note introduced by the words “Continues in part:”** the form:~~

- 8800 Continues in part:

*Example*

Proceedings / Institution of Mechanical Engineers. Part 2

*Note:* **—** Continues in part: Proceedings - Institution of Mechanical Engineers = ISSN 0020-3483

*Title proper:* Proceedings / Institution of Mechanical Engineers. Part 2

Details of other continuing resources resulting from the split may also be given.

In the description of **If** a continuing resource that splits into two or more continuing resources, a *note (mandatory)* of the titles (or, when applicable, the key titles and ISSNs) of the *subsequent* continuing resources is **are** given in **a note introduced by the words “Split into:”** the form:

8810

Split into: \_\_\_\_\_; and into:

*Examples*

Comparative biochemistry and physiology

*Note:* **—** Split into: Comparative biochemistry and physiology. A, Comparative physiology = ISSN 0300-9629; and into: Comparative biochemistry and physiology. B, Comparative biochemistry = ISSN 0305-0491

*Title proper:* Comparative biochemistry and physiology

Nordia tiedonantoja / Pohjois-Suomen maantieteellinen seura

*Note:* **—** Split into: Nordia tiedonantoja. Sarja A = ISSN 0359-2510; and into: Nordia tiedonantoja. Sarja B = ISSN 0359-2529

*Title proper:* Nordia tiedonantoja / Pohjois-Suomen maantieteellinen seura

8820

*Editorial comment:* ISSN 0356-0686 = Nordia tiedonantoja (1970)

When the **If** a continuing resource has separated from another continuing resource, a *note (mandatory)* of the title (or, when applicable, the key title and ISSN) of the continuing resource of **from** which it was a part **separated** is given in **a note introduced by the words “Separated from:”** the form:

Separated from:

*Example*

Jeugdboekengids

*Note:* **—** Separated from: Boekengids

*Title proper:* Jeugdboekengids

8830

**7.2.4.7.4 Absorption**

When the **If** a continuing resource has absorbed ~~other~~ **one or more** continuing resource(s) while retaining its own title, a *note (mandatory)* of the title(s) (or, when applicable, the key title(s) and ISSN(s)) of the **each** absorbed continuing resource(s) is given in **a note introduced by the word “Absorbed:”** the form:

Absorbed:

*Examples*

Philosophical magazine

*Note:* **—** Absorbed: Annals of philosophy = ISSN 0365-4915

*Title proper:* Philosophical magazine

- 8840 ~~Notizie economiche-UBS~~  
*Note:* ~~.-~~ Absorbed: Panorama congiunturale  
*Title proper:* Notizie economiche UBS

When the **If a** continuing resource ~~being described~~ has been absorbed by another continuing resource, a ~~note (mandatory)~~ of the title (or, when applicable, the key title and ISSN) of the *absorbing* continuing resource is given in a note introduced by the words "Absorbed by:" ~~the form:~~

Absorbed by:

*Examples*

- ~~Marketing forum~~  
*Note:* ~~.-~~ Absorbed by: Quarterly review of marketing = ISSN 0307-7667  
*Title proper:* Marketing forum

- 8850 ~~Le cultivateur de la Suisse romande~~  
*Note:* ~~.-~~ Absorbed by: Journal d'agriculture suisse Suisse  
*Title proper:* Le cultivateur de la Suisse romande

The date the absorption occurred is included in the note when considered important to users of the catalogue.

*Examples*

- ~~Philosophical magazine~~  
*Note:* ~~.-~~ Absorbed in 1827: Annals of philosophy = ISSN 0365-4915  
*Title proper:* Philosophical magazine
- ~~Marketing forum~~  
 8860 *Note:* ~~.-~~ Absorbed in 1975 by: Quarterly review of marketing = ISSN 0307-7667  
*Title proper:* Marketing forum

### 7.2.4.7.5 Series with subseries

When the **If a** serial ~~is a series that has~~ subseries with independent titles, a ~~note of the title(s)~~ (or, when applicable, the key title(s) and ISSN(s)) of each of the subseries ~~published within the series~~ may be given in a note.

*Example*

- ~~Documentos de la Facultad de Filosofía, Letras y Ciencias~~  
*Note:* ~~.-~~ Subseries: Cuadernos de geohistoria regional; Cuadernos de investigación social  
 8870 *Title proper:* Documentos de la Facultad de Filosofía, Letras y Ciencias

When these subseries are numerous, a general note about their existence may be given.

*Example*

. – Numerous subseries

**7.2.4.7.6 Subseries**

When the serial being described is a subseries, details of the main series are given in area 6 (see Series statement) and not in area 7.

### 7.3 Notes on the material or type of resource specific area

#### 7.3.1 ~~For notated music resources: notated music/music format statement~~

8880 These may include peculiarities or variations among the different parts of a resource.

*Example*

- ~~– Solo piano part lacks music format statement~~

#### 7.3.12 ~~For cartographic resources: m~~**Mathematical data**

Notes on other mathematical or cartographic data additional to, or elaborating on, that given in Area 3 may be given.

*Examples*

- 8890
- . – "This map is constructed by using a special projection system that gives a perspective effect while the immediate lake area remains in scale"
  - . – Scale of original ca 1:1 300.  
*Editorial comment:* For an enlargement of an aerial photograph.
  - . – Oriented with north to the right
  - . – Prime meridians: Ferro and Paris
  - . – Scale departure graph: "Statute miles Mercator projection"
  - . – Relief shown by contours, shading and gradient tints
  - . – Relief and depths shown by contours
  - . – Relief shown pictorially and by shading. Depths shown by soundings and contours
  - . – "Ekvidistance 50 m"
  - . – Soundings in fathoms

8900 **7.3.12.1** For celestial charts, the first note related to the mathematical data area is the note on magnitude. The term "limiting magnitude" or its equivalent in another language is expressed followed by a number that may reach a maximum of 22. ~~Its equivalent in another language and/or script is used as appropriate.~~

*Example*

- . – Limiting magnitude 3.5

**7.3.12.2** For photography and remote-sensing imagery, the first note related to the mathematical data area is the note pertaining to this type of resource.

*Examples*

- 8910
- . – f6.016 inches, alt. (orig.) 8 000 ft  
*Editorial comment:* For an enlargement of an aerial photograph.
  - . – f5.944 inches, alt. 12 000 ft

- . – MSS Bands 3 and 4

*Editorial comment:* For a remote-sensing image.

### 7.3.12.3 **Digital cartographic resources**

Information not included in area 3 such as on digital graphic representation may include details of digital graphic representation method, e.g. indirect reference method (i.e. types of geographic features, addressing schemes, or other means through which locations are referenced) and topology level, geospatial reference data (coordinate system, geodetic datum) with additional information on its data quality, layer structure, format of delivery, geodesy, etc.

8920 The data type (e.g. raster, vector, point), the object type (e.g. point, line, polygon, pixel), the number of objects used to represent spatial information and the format name (e.g. digital transfer information) may be given for an electronic resource.

**Data type.** The direct reference method (i.e. the system of objects) used to represent space in an electronic resource (e.g. raster, vector, point) is identified.

**Object type.** The specific type of point, raster, and/or vector object type(s) used in an electronic resource is indicated. Multiple types are separated by a comma.

#### **Object count.**

**Point/vector count.** The number of point or vector objects or each type of object used in an electronic resource is given.

8930 **Raster object count.** The number of rows x columns x voxels (vertical) in a raster electronic resource is given. Row and column count are used for rectangular raster resources. Voxels are used with rectangular volumetric raster resources.

**Format.** The format name and version in which an electronic resource is stored is indicated.

#### *Examples*

Point : entity point

Vector : network chains, non-planar graph

Raster : pixel

Raster : pixel ; TIFF

Vector : point, line, polygon ; ARC/INFO export, version 1.0

Vector : edge (70)

8940 . – Location reference: 100-year floodplain boundary; 500-year floodplain boundary

. – Geographic system: coordinates ; decimal degrees

. – North American datum of 1927 : ellipsoid: Clarke 1866 (semi-major axis: 6378206.4 ; denominator of flattening ratio: 294.98)

. – Format of delivery: SUF2, DGN (microstation format), DXF, DWG (AutoCad format); 9 inch magnetic reel tape, Exabite (8 mm cassette); small files on disk-

. – Deliverable on 31-12-1992: Sheet 9W, 9O, 14W, 14O, 15W, 19W, 19O, 20W (excl. Texel); delivery per sheet or part thereof-

8950

- . – Structure: All line-segments are noded and, when they have an identity of their own, fitted with their own coding; the polygons (objects) that are created are coded with a centroid.

The resolution for electronic resources may be recorded, expressed as the size in metres of the smallest feature that is discernable in the data (usually pixel size or vertex spacing).

*Examples*

- . – Resolution: 1 pixel = 20 m
- . – Resolution: minimum adjacent vertex spacing: 5 m ground distance

### **7.3.2 Notated music/music format statement**

These may include peculiarities or variations among the different parts of a resource.

*Example*

- . – Solo piano part lacks music format statement

8960

### **7.3.3 ~~For continuing resources: notes on n~~Numbering**

**7.3.3.1** Details of numbering that have not been given in area 3 or an explanation for the may be given in area 7; *alternatively*, the reason for omission of such details (e.g. an unnumbered series) in area 3 may be given in a note (see 3.3).

*Examples*

- . – Suspended 1939–1945
- . – Unnumbered series

**7.3.3.2** When the description is made from an intermediate issue or part of the serial, a note on the numbering of the first issue or part may be given if the information is not available from the prescribed sources of information for area 3. If the serial has ceased publication, but the last issue or part is not available at the time the description is made, a note on the numbering of the last issue or part may be given (see 3.3).

8970

*Examples*

- . – Began with: Vol. 1, no. 1 (1972)
- . – Ceased with: Vol. 1, no. 6 (Oct. 1974)
- . – Began with: No. 1, published in 1968
- . – Ceased with vol. for 1982
- . – Began with: Vol. 1, no. 1 (May 1974); ceased with: Vol. 1, no. 6 (Oct. 1974)
- . – Began in 1962 and ceased in 1975.

8980

**7.3.3.3** When describing a supplement or insert ~~inset~~ dependent on the main serial, a note on the numbering of the main serial may be given (see 3.3.9).

*Example*

~~*Title proper:* Külpolitika. English-language supplement~~

~~*Note:* .- No. 1 (1983) of the supplement corresponds to 10. évf., 1. sz. (1983) of the main publication~~

*Title proper:* Külpolitika. English-language supplement

~~*Editorial note:* In area 3: No. 1 (1983)~~

**7.3.3.4** Notes are also made on any complex or irregular numbering not given in the numbering area, or on any other numbering peculiarities considered important to users of the catalogue (see 3.3).

*Examples*

8990

- . – Vol. 29, no. 3-vol. 39, no. 2 omitted in numbering
- . – Numbering begins with no. 1 each year

## 7.4 Notes on the publication, production, distribution, etc., area

**7.4.1** These [Notes on the publication, production, distribution, etc., area](#) may include details of other publishers, producers, distributors, etc., of the resource; notes on variant publication, production or distribution, etc., information; irregularities; and additional dates.

### Examples

- 9000
- . – Also published in Colombo by Ceylon University Press
  - ~~. – Original publication statement covered by label that reads: Humanitas-Verlag, Zürich~~
  - . – Publisher named in privilege statement as Sulpice Sabon
  - . – Colophon bears the date 1723
  - . – The date is given in the form of a chronogram
  - . – Entered in the Stationers' Register, 22 July 1587
  - . – Vol. 4 published in 1939, vol. 5 in 1946
  - ~~. – Also published by ...~~
  - . – Original imprint covered by label which reads: C.F. Peters, Frankfurt, London, New York
  - ~~. – From recordings made between 1953 and 1968~~

9010

  - ~~. – Cop. 1954, 1957, 1962, 1968~~
  - . – Distributed in the UK by EAV Ltd., London
  - . – Publication information on label attached to container: Taftville (Conn.) : MCD Software Associates
  - . – User's manual distributed by the American Political Science Association, Washington, D.C.
  - . – Disk label has date: cop. 1992
  - ~~. – Cop. 1992~~
  - . – Manual dated 1994
  - ~~. – Limited edition of 500 numbered copies~~

9020

  - ~~. – Produced as an advertisement for Bell Telephone Company~~
  - ~~. – Date of information "based on aerial photography flown in 1950 and 1951"~~
  - ~~. – Based on 1961 statistics~~
  - ~~. – "Map based on uncontrolled aerial photography flown 1972. Map field checked 1973"~~
  - . – Thomas Saint active in Newcastle upon Tyne from ca 1769 to ca 1788. Source: [Plomer, H.R.](#) Dictionary of the printers and booksellers who were at work in England, Scotland and Ireland from 1726 to 1775 / [H.R. Plomer](#), 3, p. 221

9030

. – The place of publication “Cosmopoli” is fictitious; identified as Frankfurt a.M., according to Weller, E. O., Die Fälschen und fingirten Druckorte / E.O. Weller, Bd. 1, p. 285

. – Place of publication conjectured by cataloguer based on typographic evidence

. – Volume 1 published 1561; vol. 2: 1564; vol. 3: 1562; vol. 4: 1560

In area 4: , 1560-1564

. – No. 1 published 2006; date of publication from no. 2

In area 4: , 2005-

### For older monographic resources:

When publication, production, distribution, etc., information has been obtained from a source other than the prescribed source of information, the source from which such information has been obtained is given in area 7 a note.

9040

#### Example

. – Publisher's name from colophon

## 7.4.2 ~~For continuing resources and~~ For multipart monographic resources: Changes to information in the publication, production, distribution, etc., area

### 7.4.2.1 Serials and multipart monographic resources

Changes in the place of publication and/or the name of the publisher that occur after the first or earliest issue or part are given in area 7 a note, together with the numbering of the respective issues, when considered important to users of the catalogue. Where numerous changes have occurred, a general statement may be given (see 4.1.17 15, 4.2.15 13).

9050

#### Examples

Note: . – Published: Redwing [sic] (Minn.), 1864-1865; Le Sueur, Minn., 1865

Note: . – Publication statement varies

### 7.4.2.2 Integrating resources

Earlier places of publication and/or names of publishers that are no longer present on the current iteration, or that appeared in a different form on earlier iterations, are given in area 7 a note, when considered important to users of the catalogue (see 4.1.17 15, 4.2.15 13).

#### Example

Note: . – Published: New York : McGraw-Hill, 1974-1975 ; South Hackensack, N.J. : F.B. Rothman, 1976-1978

9060

## 7.5 Notes on the physical description area

### 7.5.1 Additional physical details

These Notes on the physical description area may include additional physical description of the resource supplementing the formal statement given in area 5; and statements on particular physical peculiarities.

#### *Examples*

- . – Versos of leaves blank  
*Editorial comment: Leaves numbered on both sides.*
- . – Leaves printed on both sides  
*Editorial comment: Leaves numbered on one side only.*
- 9070 . – Volumes numbered: 1, 2A, 2B, 2C, 3
- . – Pages also numbered 321-401
- . – Map on lining paper
- . – Illustrations coloured by hand
- . – Printed on acid-free paper
- ~~. – Tête-bêche format~~
- ~~. – Bound in boards with a spine label reading: Poems of Gay~~
- . – Title page printed in black and red
- . – Watermark: C & I Honig
- . – In envelope, with title on flap
- 9080 ~~. – Imperfect: Eastern portion and southwest corner wanting~~
- . – Optional cello part included
- . – Disc impressed on rectangular surface, 20 x 20 cm
- . – Container: 32 x 36 x 16 cm*
- . – Sheets measure 24 x 48 cm, 16 x 42 cm, 16 x 28 cm*
- . – Printed area measures 30 x 46 cm*
- . – Height when mounted: 114 cm*
- . – Animated transparencies for use with the Photo Motion Activator*
- . – Visible using an incandescent bulb*
- . – Projected by means of a laser beam*
- 9090 *. – Electronically adapted to simulate stereo*
- . – Synchronized to USPEC 2 standard*
- . – Synchronized by means of Philips N2209/LFD3442 pulses*

- . – Text of the poems printed on sleeve
- . – Leaves of plates in aquatint or copperplate engravings

**For older monographic resources:**

Leaves of plates or inserts that are included in the numbering of pages or leaves of the resource may be given.

Example

. – 12 leaves of plates included in the pagination

or

. – 12 leaves of plates included in the pagination as p. 5-6, 11-12, 19-20, 29-30, 39-40, 49-50, 59-60, 69-70, 79-80, 89-90, 99-100, 109-110

9100

The number of lines to the page and the type used are given if these aid identification of the printer or are considered important to users of the catalogue.

*Example*

. – 24 lines per p.; type 24G

Physical description of the resource, including a list of signatures is given, if considered important to users of the catalogue. A full collation following the notation in a standard reference source (see Appendix C) may be given. The copy, or copies, on which the collation is based is (are) specified.

9110

*Examples*

. – Signatures: A-K<sup>4</sup>

If a proper physical description area is given, the notation system specified by Fredson Bowers in *Principles of Bibliographical Description*, Princeton, 1949, is followed. The copy, or copies, on which the collation is based is (are) specified.

*Examples*

. – Collation: 8vo: A-H4; 32 leaves: p. [1-2] 3-62 [63-64]; \$3(-H3) signed. H4 blank

. – Collation: a<sup>2</sup> A-L<sup>4</sup> M<sup>2</sup>. Based on copy x in collection y

. – Collation: π<sup>1</sup>(=H4) A-F<sup>8</sup> G<sup>8</sup>(-G1,2+G1.2) H<sup>4</sup>(-H4). Based on copies a,b,c in collection xx

9120

**For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:**

Notes may also include information on variations in format or duration occurring within the units constituting a resource, notes on the availability of a resource in alternative formats, notes on characteristics peculiar to special categories of material, notes on mounts, stands, containers, etc., notes on equipment requirements, notes on the relationship between distinct categories of material in a single resource and notes on minor accompanying material.

9130

*Examples*

- ~~— Sheets measure 24 x 48 cm, 16 x 42 cm, 16 x 28 cm~~
- ~~— Printed area measures 30 x 46 cm~~
- ~~— Height when mounted: 114 cm~~
- ~~— Animated transparencies for use with the Photo Motion Activator~~
- ~~— Visible using an incandescent bulb~~
- ~~— Projected by means of a laser beam~~
- ~~— Electronically adapted to simulate stereo~~
- ~~— Synchronized to USPEC 2 standard~~
- ~~— Synchronized by means of Philips N2209/LFD3442 pulses~~

9140

- ~~— Available in 8 mm or 16 mm versions~~
- ~~— Also issued as glass slides~~
- ~~— Text of the poems printed on sleeve~~

**For continuing resources:**

Notes may be given on physical details of the resource not given in area 5. A note may also be included on accompanying material if this is not a regular feature of the resource. For integrating resources. ~~Notes are made on earlier physical details that are no longer present in the current iteration of an integrating resource, when considered important to users of the catalogue. A note may also be included on accompanying material if this is not a regular feature of the resource.~~

9150

*Examples*

- ~~— Beginning with vol. 9, no. 1 (Jan. 1970) height is 38 cm~~
- ~~— Issued in 2 vol., 8th ed.-10th ed.; in 3 vol., 11th ed.-15th ed.; in 4 vol., 16th ed.-20th ed.; in 5 vol., 21st ed.-~~

**For electronic resources:**

~~Included are notes on physical aspects relating to sound and colour of a resource available by remote access.~~

~~These may include additional information about type and extent of resource, and notes on other resource characteristics.~~ Notes may be given on physical details of the resource not given in area 5.

9160

*Examples*

- ~~— Resource size: 100, 300, 220, 500 statements~~
- ~~— Resource size: 600, 12,000, 1613, 1000 records~~
- ~~— Resource size unknown~~

- 9170
- ~~— Resource size varies~~
  - . – Program can handle up to 2000 records
  - . – Maximum record size: 2800 bytes
  - . – File structure: Hierarchical
  - . – Number of variables: 960
  - . – Number of routines: 102
  - . – Digitised resource of 3000 records
  - . – Master and use copy
  - . – Resource size: master (113\_776 KB) ; use copy (5\_631 KB)
- ~~These may also include notes on variations in physical carriers, notes on the availability of a resource in an additional medium or in different machine or system versions or different formats, notes on the physical display of data, notes on the recording characteristics of a resource, notes on containers, notes on the relationship between distinct categories of material in a single resource and notes on **accompanying material** for resources not described in area 5 and for resources issued with a resource available by remote access.~~
- Examples*
- 9180
- . – Digital and analog tracks in English and German
  - ~~— Also issued for IBM PC and PC compatibles~~
  - ~~— Available in ASCII and PostScript versions~~
  - ~~— Container: 32 x 36 x 16 cm~~
  - ~~— Sound cassette in stereo~~
  - . – A few programs have sound
  - . – Still images compressed using JPEG
  - ~~— Available in PDF and HTML formats~~
  - . – Documentation: Comprehensive occupational health nursing preparation / principal investigator, Daniel Murphy. —Houston, TX : Data Health Nursing Publishers, cop. 1994. —ISBN 0-87301-605-6  
*Editorial comment:* Accompanying material for a remote-access electronic resource.
  - ~~— Recorded on 9 tracks of tape~~
- 9190

### **7.5.2 Other physical formats available**

If a resource is available on different physical carriers or different formats, a note may be given.

- . – Issues 46- also available online
- . – Available in 8 mm or 16 mm versions
- . – Also issued as glass slides

9200

. – Also issued for IBM PC and PC compatibles

. – Available in ASCII and PostScript versions

. – Available in PDF and HTML formats



## 7.6 Notes on the series and multipart monographic resources area

**7.6.1** ~~These Notes on the series and monographic resources area may include notes giving information about a series or multipart monographic resource in which the a resource has been issued (see area 6), and notes on series editors, and notes naming a series or multipart monographic resource in which a resource was previously issued.~~

### Examples

9210

- ~~— Main series: Department of State publication~~
- ~~— Main series numbered 244~~
- . – Editor of the series: Samuel Johnson
- ~~— ISSN of main series: ISSN 0342-2259~~

~~These may include notes naming the series in which the resource was previously issued or in which some but not all of the parts were published.~~

### Examples

- . – Originally issued in Environmental science series
- . – Vol. 2 issued as vol. 39 of ...
- . – Each issue numbered 10, 20, 30, etc., in the series

### **For older monographic resources:**

9220

When series information, ~~other than an ISSN,~~ has been obtained from a source other than the prescribed source of information, the source from which such information has been obtained is given in ~~area 7~~ a note.

### Example

- . – Series statement from verso of title page

### **For continuing resources and multipart monographic resources:**

9230

**7.6.1** ~~When in the course of publication of the resource, the resource~~ If a continuing resource or multipart monographic resource was has been published within two or more series or subseries successively, the titles of these series or subseries, or a general statement that such series or subseries exist, may be given in a note (see 6, Introductory note). If ~~the entire~~ all the parts of a continuing resource or multipart monographic resource ~~is are~~ is are in two or more series, ~~there are two~~ a series statements is given for each series in area 6.

**7.6.2** ~~When the~~ If a resource is published within a subseries with a distinctive title and in area 6 a subseries statement is given, a note on the title and the ISSN of the main series may be given (~~see 6.1.4; see also 7.6.3~~).

### Example

- . – Main series: Department of State publication

. – ISSN of main series: ISSN 0342-2259

9240 When the resource is published within a subseries the title of which is dependent on the title of the main series and in area 6 an adequate subseries statement is given, a note on the ISSN of the main series may be given (see 6.5.3).

~~7.6.3~~ — A note on the numbering of the main series and/or the correlation between the numbering of the main series and the subseries may be given (see 6.6.2).

~~A note on the varying numbering of the series or the subseries may be given (see 6.6.2).~~

*Example*

*Note:* Each issue numbered 10, 20, 30, etc., in the series

**7.6.4-3** A note (mandatory) on If the key title of a series or subseries when it differs from the title proper of the series or subseries, a note is may be given (see 6.1.3).

## 7.7 Notes relating to the contents

9250 **7.7.1** ~~These~~ **Notes relating to the contents** may include the list of contents and notes on other inclusions, such as indexes, inserts, bibliographies, discographies, etc.

For audiovisual materials, if the durations of individual works are given in the contents note, they are placed immediately after the bibliographic description.

For general notes on the nature and scope of the contents of a resource, see 7.1.2.

### ~~General note on the contents~~

#### ~~Examples~~

- ~~— Contents: 12 madrigals~~
- ~~— Contains only Sallust's De coniuratione Catilinae and a life of Sallust~~
- ~~— Contains information on all 50 states~~
- 9260 — Number of respondents: 600 civil servants in U.S. federal agencies
- ~~— Contains 1,200 time series~~

### **7.7.2 List of contents**

~~A note may be made giving t~~ **The titles of the works contained in a resource with a collective title (see 1.1.4.3) may be given in a note.**

#### *Examples*

- ~~— Contents: The homecoming / by Harold Pinter. Chips with everything / by Arnold Wesker. Marching song / by John Whiting~~
- ~~— Contents: The L-d's address to K.G.II. The K-'s answer. A new ballad~~
- ~~— Contents: Voluntary I and Te Deum ; Voluntary and Jubilate~~
- 9270 — Contents: Trap and guess ; Bumblebug ; Hidden treasures
- ~~— Contents: CD-ROM data (1:29) ; The young person's guide to the orchestra (16:27) ; Extra audio examples (55:43)~~
- ~~— Contents: Les secteurs sanitaires ; Ensemble des médecins spécialistes libéraux par secteur sanitaire au 1.1.1979 ; Evolution de la densité des médecins libéraux par secteur sanitaire du 1.1.1976 au 1.1.1979~~
- ~~— Contents: The fourth millenium / Henry Brant (9 min). Music for brass quintet / Peter Phillips (14 min)~~
- ~~— Contents: Getting ahead of the game (81 fr.) ; Decisions, decisions (55 fr.) ; Your money (72 fr.) ; How to be a loser (65 fr.) ; The law and your pocketbook (70 fr.) ; The all-American consumer (63 fr.)~~
- 9280 — Contents: Klarinettenquintett A-Dur, KV 581 / Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart (29 min). Klarinettenquintett B-Dur, op. 31 / Carl Maria von Weber (24 min, 14 s)

**For multipart monographic resources:**

The list of contents may include the designations, titles, statements of responsibility, statements of extent, etc., of the separate physical units constituting a multipart monographic resource.

Examples

- . – Contents: Vol. 1, A midsummer night's dream ; Vol. 2, Henry IV
- . – Contents: Pt. 1, The fellowship of the ring ; Pt. 2, The two towers ; Pt. 3, The return of the king
- . – Contents: Cohort file 1, Mature men (45-59 yrs.) ; Cohort file 2, Mature women (45-59 yrs.) ; Cohort file 3, Young boys (14-24 yrs.) ; Cohort file 4, Young girls (14-24 yrs.)
- . – Contents: 1, Mixmatch / J. Broady and L.M. Tiems. Ollie the otter / Dana Brynner. 2, Capture the play / Paul Edelstein. Winner take all / Jennifer Drake.
- . – Contents: 1, 1985-1989 ; 2, 1990-1995
- . – Contents: Pt. 1, The cause of liberty (24 min) ; Pt. 2, The impossible war (25 min)

For multilevel description, see Appendix A.

**7.7.3 Notes on other inclusions**

Notes may be made on bibliographies, indexes, and other parts of a resource if considered important to the users of the catalogue.

Examples

- . – Includes the text of the Gaming Act 1913
- . – Includes references to summaries on U.S. demographic data
- . – Also includes newsfilms on Trooping the Colour
- . – Bibliography: p. 291
- . – Discography: p. 291
- . – List of films: p. 323-327
- . – Includes: Bibliography of Northwest materials
- . – Includes a list of works for further study
- . – Includes index
- . – Includes index of songs
- . – Indexes: Vols. 1-25 (1927-1951) in vol. 26, no. 1
- . – Summary in English: p. 143-146

**For cartographic resources:**

Descriptions of insets, illustrations, sections and similar representations may be given in a note.

9320

*Examples*

- . – Insets: three maps: Structural regions ; Topographical regions ; Erosional and depositional regions. Scale 1:170 000 000 approx. 10 x 24 cm each
- . – North polar and South polar regions on polar proj. 8 cm diam. each, in left and right bottom corners
- . – Illustrations: Decorative text cartouche in top left corner; peoples of the world and allegorical representations for Europe, Asia, Africa and America form the borders of the map

9330

- . – Includes descriptive index, text, colour illustrations describing types of buoys, ships, lighthouses, fishes, birds, seaweed, sea anemones, and coral, and 9 local maps
- . – Insets at 1:50 000: Paris, Madrid, Bern, Amsterdam, London
- . – Insets with indexes: Plant City, Brandon Area, Apollo Beach, Del Webb's Sun City Center
- . – Includes insets of the Liverpool and Nottingham regions, 3 suggested tourist itineraries, distance chart, text, and advertisements
- . – Cross sections A-B; C-D; and E-F along bottom margin
- . – Includes block diagram of area covered by map
- . – Includes an index map to adjacent sheets

9340

- . – On verso: New map of South Hadley, Mass. Scale 1:15 000
- . – Maps of 18 "Interchange layouts in Mahoning County" and maps of Craig Beach, Sebring, Beloit, Canfield, Poland, New Middletown, Washingtonville, Lowellville, Stouthers, Campbell, and Youngstown, with street index, on verso
- . – Text, indexes, colour illustrations, list of tourist facilities and radio stations, route mileage log, controlled access highway map, pictorial map, historic places map, and local route maps, on verso of some sheets

**Notes on indexes, bibliographies, discographies, etc.**

9350

*Examples*

- ~~. – Bibliography: p. 291~~
- ~~. – List of films: p. 323–327~~
- ~~. – Includes index~~
- ~~. – Includes: Bibliography of Northwest materials~~

9360

- Indexes: Vols. 1-25 (1927-1951) in vol. 26, no. 1
- Includes index of songs
- Discography: p. 294
- Includes a list of works for further study
- Summary in English: p. 143-146
- Summary of plot

#### **For multipart monographic resources:**

These may include the list of contents of separate physical units constituting the parts of the multipart monographic resource. They may include statements of responsibility, statements of extent, etc.

#### *Examples*

9370

- Contents: Vol. 1. A midsummer night's dream ; Vol. 2. Henry IV
- Contents: Pt. 1. The fellowship of the ring ; Pt. 2. The two towers ; Pt. 3. The return of the king
- Contents: Cohort file 1, Mature men (45-59 yrs.) ; Cohort file 2, Mature women (45-59 yrs.) ; Cohort file 3, Young boys (14-24 yrs.) ; Cohort file 4, Young girls (14-24 yrs.)
- Contents: 1. Mixmatch / J. Broady and L.M. Tiems. Ollie the otter / Dana Brynner — 2. Capture the play / Paul Edelstein. Winner take all / Jennifer Drake.
- Contents: 1, 1985-1989 ; 2, 1990-1995
- Contents: Pt. 1. The cause of liberty (24 min) ; Pt. 2. The impossible war (25 min)

For multilevel description, see Appendix A.

#### **For continuing resources:**

9380

These may also include notes on separate physical units constituting the issue(s) or part(s) of the serial, etc.

#### *Example*

- Contents: Vol. 1/1. Alphabetic index. 527 p. ; Vol. 1/2. Subject index. 300 p.

For multilevel description for separate physical units constituting the issue(s) or part(s) or the iteration(s) of the continuing resource, see Appendix A.

#### **For cartographic resources:**

These may include notes relating to the contents and subject matter :

**Description of insets and illustrations**

9390

*Examples*

- Insets: three maps: Structural regions ; Topographical regions ; Erosional and depositional regions. Scale 1:170 000 000 approx. 10 x 24 cm each
- North polar and South polar regions on polar proj. 8 cm diam. each, in left and right bottom corners
- Illustrations: Decorative text cartouche in top left corner; peoples of the world and allegorical representations for Europe, Asia, Africa and America form the borders of the map

9400

- Includes descriptive index, text, colour illustrations describing types of buoys, ships, lighthouses, fishes, birds, seaweed, sea anemones, and coral, and 9 local maps
- Insets at 1:50 000: Paris, Madrid, Bern, Amsterdam, London
- Insets with indexes: Plant City, Brandon Area, Apollo Beach, Del Webb's Sun-City Center
- Includes insets of the Liverpool and Nottingham regions, 3 suggested tourist itineraries, distance chart, text, and advertisements

**Description of sections and similar representations***Examples*

9410

- Cross sections A-B; C-D; and E-F along bottom margin
- Includes block diagram of area covered by map
- Includes an index map to adjacent sheets

**Description of explanatory or related text on resource or accompanying it***Examples*

- Includes text describing the geology of the area covered, in English and French
- Includes an index of populated places and distance table
- Has supplement: ...

**Notes on matter depicted on the resource, but not otherwise brought out in other areas of the description.**

9420

*Examples*

- "Not for navigation"
- Shows dioceses

- Shows names of owners of buildings and other real estate
- Shows radial distances from City Hall
- Also shows mineral deposits  
*Editorial comment: Map has title "Road map ..."*
- Shows southernmost extent of the midnight sun

#### Notes describing material on verso of the resource

##### *Examples*

- 9430
- On verso: New map of South Hadley, Mass. Scale 1:15 000
  - Maps of 18 "Interchange layouts in Mahoning County" and maps of Craig Beach, Sebring, Beloit, Canfield, Poland, New Middletown, Washingtonville, Lowellville, Stouthers, Campbell, and Youngstown, with street index, on verso
  - Text, indexes, colour illustrations, list of tourist facilities and radio stations, route mileage log, controlled access highway map, pictorial map, historic places map, and local route maps, on verso of some sheets
  - Text on p. ii in Latin

9440

#### Notes describing depiction of relief

##### *Examples*

- Relief shown by contours, shading and gradient tints
- Relief and depths shown by contours
- Relief shown pictorially and by shading. Depths shown by soundings and contours
- "Ekvidistance 50 m"
- Soundings in fathoms

## 7.8 Notes on the resource identifier and terms of availability area

### 9450 7.8.1 Notes relating to the ~~identification number~~ **resource identifier** and terms of availability

~~These~~ **Notes relating to the resource identifier and terms of availability** may include notes of limited print run, issues or limited distribution.

#### *Examples*

- . – 250 copies printed
- . – Limited edition of 20 signed and numbered copies
- . – An edition of 75 copies, not for sale
- ~~. – "Price 4s. plain, or 5s. neatly bound and gilt" title page~~
- . – Limited demonstration package
- 9460 . – Public domain software

~~A note (mandatory) of an incorrect standard identifier is given when an incorrect number is found on the resource (see 8.1.3).~~

### 7.8.2 Notes relating to binding

~~Notes on binding of an edition concern the later part of publishing history when binding becomes part of the production of a book.~~ **Notes on the binding as issued by the publisher may be given.** For notes on individual bindings, see 7.11.

#### *Examples*

- . – First 25 copies bound in leather
- ~~. – "Price 4s. plain, or 5s. neatly bound and gilt" title page~~

9470



## 7.9 Notes on the issue, part, iteration, etc., that forms the basis of the description

Notes on the issue, part, iteration, etc., that forms that basis of the description may be given.

### For electronic resources:

~~These may include notes on the edition or issue on which the description of a dynamic-remote access resource is based.~~

#### *Examples*

- ~~— Description based on version dated: Oct. 4, 1997 13:22:11~~
- ~~— Description based on: Vol. 3, no. 3 (May/June 1995)~~
- ~~— Description based on home page (viewed on Feb. 28, 2003, last updated Jan. 8, 2002)~~

9480

### For continuing resources:

#### 7.9.1 Serials

A note (*mandatory*) is given when **If** the description of the a serial or multipart monographic resource is not based on the first issue or part published, the issue or part that forms the basis of the description is given in a note.

### For serials:

~~The numbering and the date of the issue or part used as the basis for the description are given. The numbering is recorded in the form it would have if recorded in area 3.~~

#### *Examples*

- . – Description based on: Vol. 3, no. 3 (May/June 1975)
- ~~— Description based on: 43 (19 6 1996)~~
- ~~— Description based on: 1964~~

9490

If the numbering of the last issue or part is not given in area 3 (see 3.3.7), A a note on the latest issue or part consulted may be given if (a) it is known that the serial has ceased publication and the last issue or part is not in hand at the time the description is made and information about the last issue or part is not available from another source; (b) it is not known if issues or parts later than those in hand at the time the description was prepared have been published; (c) the description is changed to reflect information on later issues or parts; or, (d) it is desired to show the currency of the descriptive information.

9500

#### *Examples*

- . – Latest issue consulted: Nr. 43 (Mai 2001)
- ~~— Description based on: 3rd ed. (1980). Latest issue consulted: 24th ed. (2001)~~

~~. – Description based on and latest issue consulted: Vol. 5, no. 11 (Dec. 1977)~~

### 7.9.2 — **For unnumbered monographic series:**

If a description is made for ~~the~~ an unnumbered monographic series itself, a note is given of the earliest analytic consulted and its date of publication, production, distribution, etc. If other analytics also have been consulted and the latest analytic can be identified, that analytic and its date of publication are also given.

9510

#### *Examples*

- . – Description based on: The wood demon / by Anton Pavlovich Chekhov ; translated by Nicholas Saunders and Frank Dwyer, 1993
- . – Latest volume consulted: Ibsen : four major plays / translated by Rick Davis and Brian Johnson, 1995

### 7.9.3 — **For integrating resources:**

If the description is not based on the first iteration, a note is given on the latest iteration consulted in preparing the description.

#### *Example*

9520

- . – Description based on: 1994 ed., through update 10

### 7.9.4 — **For remote-access electronic resources:**

~~A note is always made on the date on which the electronic resource was viewed for description.~~ The issue or iteration that forms the basis of the description of a remote-access electronic resource is given in a note, along with the date on which it was viewed.

#### *Examples*

- . – Description based on the iteration viewed on ~~Apr. 22, 2003.~~ ~~Latest iteration viewed on~~ Oct. 12, 2006
- . – Description based on: No. 3 (2004) viewed on Feb. 2, 2005.
- . – Description based on version dated: Oct. 4, 1997 13:22:11
- . – Description based on home page (viewed on Feb. 28, 2003, last updated Jan. 8, 2002)

9530

## 7.10 Other notes

**7.10.1** Any other notes particular to the specialized material or considered important in the context of the cataloguing agency may be given.

### ~~For notated music resources:~~

#### ~~Notes relating to duration~~

##### *Examples*

9540

- . – Duration: 123 min
- ~~. – Duration: ca 17:00~~
- ~~. – Durations: 34:01; 22:14; 23.21~~
- . – Duration: 1 h, 18 min

#### ~~Notes relating to notation~~

##### *Examples*

- . – Keyboard tablature
- . – Graphic notation
- . – Tonic sol-fa notation

### **For electronic resources:**

9550

These notes include a locally assigned file name, and notes on the date when the content of the resource has been copied from or to another source.

##### *Examples*

- . – Local data set name: RBBIT.1
- . – Local file name: MENSAT
- . – Resource copied Oct. 1996 from local area network

## 7.10.2 Notes providing a summary

The summary provides a factual, non-evaluative account of the subject coverage. In content and expression the note may draw upon statements found on the resource, its container or accompanying textual matter. ~~For electronic resources, documentation may also be used.~~ Information on the use of special techniques or processes may also be included.

9560

##### *Examples*

- . – Pictures the highlights of the play Julius Caesar using photographs of an actual production

- . – Uses animation techniques to describe cycloidal curves and their applications, and to show how their properties can be used to explain the design of the Wankel rotary engine
  - . – Uses time-lapse photography to illustrate the growth of crystals
  - . – Uses shopping situations in a supermarket and a department store for the purpose of illustrating basic math concepts, including addition, subtraction, multiplication and division. Provides user exercises and drills to reinforce the concepts
- 9570
- . – Gives information on higher civil servants in U.S. federal agencies, including personal characteristics, educational background, and occupational mobility
  - . – An interactive multimedia tool for studying the human anatomy. Users can select anterior, posterior, medial, or lateral views, each with dozens of layers, as well as specify gender and ethnic appearance

### 7.10.3 Notes relating to use/audience

These notes, normally taken from statements on or in the resource, provide non-evaluative information as to the potential or recommended use of the resource and/or the intended audience. These notes may also specify restrictions on use of the resource.

#### *Examples*

- 9580
- . – For ages 3-6
  - . – Restricted to municipal law enforcement personnel
  - . – Designed for those with a professional interest in analyzing spatial data (geographers, planners, meteorologists, etc.)
  - . – Intended for senior high school students with knowledge of algebra
  - . – Resource closed until Jan. 2010
  - . – For use by library staff only

### 7.10.4 Notes on numbers

~~These notes are for numbers borne by the resource other than standard numbers or other identifiers (see 8.1).~~ Numbers or identifiers associated with the resource but not given in area 8 may be given in a note.

9590

#### *Examples*

- . – Additional no. on label: A-096
- . – On container: M1 527
- . – ICPSR study no. 0003
- . – ISRC FR-Z03-91-01231

## 7.11 Notes relating to the copy in hand

Notes on the copy being catalogued may be given. These may include notes relating to the physical characteristics of the copy, notes relating to “bound with” copies, provenance notes, and action notes.

### *Examples*

- 9600
- . – Ms. notes by author
  - . – Signed by the composer
  - . – Imperfect copy: missing cover and title page
  - . – This copy hand tinted
  - . – Number 11 of 50 signed and numbered copies
  - . – Imperfect: Eastern portion and southwest corner wanting

### **For older monographic resources:**

These are to be carefully distinguished from other notes, although for many older resources it will not be readily ascertainable whether the characteristics of a single copy are shared by other or all copies.

9610

These notes may be categorized and grouped in the following order:

- 1) Note relating to the physical characteristics of the copy in hand, e.g. wanting leaves, copy characteristics, binding, numbered copies of an edition (however, see 7.2) manuscript notes on title page or margin.
- 2) Bound with copies.
- 3) Provenance note, e.g. book plates, author's and/or owner's autographs, seals, etc.
- 4) Action note, e.g. preservation information and/or treatment of the copy in hand.

### *Examples*

- 9620
- . – Illustrations coloured by hand
  - . – Bound in boards with a spine label reading: Poems of Gay
  - . – In a tooled vellum binding
  - ~~. – Imperfect: wanting all after p. 312~~
  - . – Leaves l5-6 bound between h3 and h4
  - . – Imperfect: wanting leaves 12-13 (b6 and cl); without the blank last leaf (S8)
  - ~~. – No. 23 of an edition of 75 copies~~
  - . – Bound with: The Boston Ebenezer. Boston : printed by B. Green & J. Allen, for Samuel Phillips, 1698; The cure of sorrow. Boston : printed by B. Green, 1709
  - . – Bound with: The whole booke of Psalms ... 1635 (STC 2661.5); The booke of common prayer ... 1633 (STC 16395)

9630

- . – Bound as no. 2 in a pamphlet volume with 16 other titles
- ~~. – Ms notes by the author~~
- . – Inscription on inside of front cover: Theodorinis ab Engelsberg
- . – Title page with repaired tear

## 8 RESOURCE IDENTIFIER AND TERMS OF AVAILABILITY AREA

### Introductory note

The resource identifier and terms of availability area includes the resource identifier, the key title, and the terms of availability. The elements are defined in the glossary.

9640 A resource identifier is any number or alphanumeric designation associated with and identifying a resource according to an international standard, such as an International Standard Book Number or an International Standard Serial Number, or a designation assigned by a publisher.

When a resource has more than one identifier and it is considered important to users of the catalogue to record more than one identifier, the area may be repeated. The resource may have more than one identifier for various reasons, for example:

1) because it is issued in more than one format or medium or by more than one publisher, producer, distributor, etc.,

or

2) because it has an identifier for the individual part and also an identifier for the whole group of which it is a part.

9650 In both cases, the identifier that specifically identifies the resource being described is given first. Other identifiers (e.g. for other formats, for the whole group, for other publishers) are given next, as repetitions of the area.

~~If the title of the whole group is given in area 6, the identifier for the whole group is not given with it, but is given in area 8, with the identifier for the individual part(s).~~

~~Each identifier recorded may be followed by any qualification needed to identify it further (e.g. format or binding) and/or by its terms of availability and/or price, which may also be followed by a qualification. Identifiers that are repetitions of the area must be qualified.~~

*Example*

~~— RK 11719 (stereo)~~

9660 Identifiers appearing on the resource that relate to its bibliographic history (e.g. ISBNs for earlier editions, the label name and issue number of a previous issue of a sound recording) are not given in area 8. When considered important to users of the catalogue, they may be given in area 7.

#### ~~For older monographic resources:~~

~~Because no standard numbering system appears in older monographic resources, the fingerprint system is considered as a substitute for the standard number for older monographic resources.~~

#### ~~For notated music resources:~~

~~Plate numbers and publisher's numbers may be used as a means of identifying the original edition.~~

## Contents

- 9670
- 8.1 Resource identifier
  - 8.2 Key title (continuing resources)
  - 8.3 Terms of availability ~~and/or price~~
  - 8.4 ~~Qualifications~~

### ~~Recommended punctuation~~ **Prescribed punctuation**

- A. The identifier and terms of availability area is preceded by a point, space, dash, space (. –).
- B. The key title is preceded by a space, equals sign, space (=).
- C. Terms of availability ~~and/or price~~ are preceded by a space, colon, space (:).
- D. A qualification added either to an identifier or to the terms of availability ~~and/or price~~ is enclosed in parentheses ( ( ) ).

- 9680
- E. Each subsequent identifier and terms of availability statement is preceded by a point, space, dash, space (. –) unless the areas are clearly separated by paragraphing, typography or indentation, in which case the point, space, dash, space may be omitted or replaced by a point given at the end of the preceding area.

#### *Examples* **Punctuation patterns**

- . – ISBN
- . – ISBN (qualification). – ISBN (qualification) : ~~price~~ **terms of availability**
- . – ISBN (qualification) : ~~price~~ **terms of availability**. – ISBN (qualification) : ~~price~~ **terms of availability**
- . – ISBN : ~~price~~ **terms of availability** (qualification)
- . – ISBN : terms of availability ~~price~~
- . – Terms of availability
- . – ISSN = key title
- . – ISSN = key title : ~~price~~ **terms of availability**
- . – ISSN (qualification) = key title : terms of availability ~~price~~ (qualification)
- . – Plate number (qualification) : ~~price~~ **terms of availability**
- . – Publisher's number (qualification) : ~~price~~ **terms of availability**
- . – ISMN
- . – ISMN (qualification). – ISMN : terms of availability ~~price~~
- ~~– ISRC~~
- . – Label\_name ~~issue~~ **catalogue**\_number (qualification) : ~~price~~ **terms of availability**

- 9700 **Prescribed source**

Any source

**For older monographic resources:**

The resource itself.



## 8.1 Resource Identifier

**Mandatory**

**8.1.1** An identifier considered important to users of the catalogue is given when known.

**8.1.2** A standard identifier is transcribed in accordance with its relevant standard, as appropriate. The standard identifier is preceded by its customary label, such as the letters ISBN, ISSN, ISMN, etc.

9710 *Examples*

. – ISBN 978-952-92-0267-6

. – ISBN 0-7131-1646-3

*Editorial comment: Old-style 10-digit ISBN.*

~~. – ISBN 87-13-01633-4~~

. – ISSN 0075-2363

~~. – ISMN M 001-11481-3~~

**. – ISMN 979-0-3217-6543-6**

~~. – ISMN M-2306-5969-7~~

~~. – ISRC FR Z03-91-01231~~

9720 . – URN:NBN:se:uu:diva-4321

. – doi:10.1000/1

. – URL: <http://purl.oclc.org/OCLC/RSPD>

*Editorial comment: Persistent Uniform Resource Locator for OCLC Research*

~~. – EAN08903549D~~

### For notated music resources:

The publisher's number of a notated music resource is given when known. The publisher's number is preceded by the identification “Publ. no.” or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~.

#### *Example*

9730 . – Publ. no.: Z 1309

The plate number may be given following the ISBN and/or the publisher's number and any qualifications that relate to either. The plate number is preceded by the identification “Pl. no.” or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~.

#### *Examples*

. – ISBN 83-224-2458-2. – Pl. no.: PWM-8601

. – Publ. no.: Z 1309. – Pl. no.: 9538

When there is no other number, the plate number may be given alone.

*Example*

. – Pl. no.: A.F. 539

9740 **8.1.3 Qualification to identifier**

A brief statement that qualifies, explains, or corrects the identifier, such as the type of binding in which the resource is issued, may be given in parentheses following the identifier to which it is related. Standard abbreviations in the language of the cataloguing agency may be used.

*Examples*

- . – ISBN 978-0-85020-025-6 (cloth)
- . – ISBN 978-0-330-23591-4 (paperback)
- . – ISBN 978-3-525-52139-7 (Lw.)
- . – Publ. no.: Z 1039 (cloth)
- . – ISBN 978-0-86325-016-3 (looseleaf)

9750 If a resource has more than one identifier, each identifier may be given with an appropriate qualification.*Examples*

- . – ISBN 978-0-379-00550-9 (set). – ISBN 978-0-379-00551-6 (vol. 1)
- . – ISMN 979-0-3217-6543-6 (score). – ISMN 979-0-3217-6544-3 (vocal score). – ISMN 979-0-3217-6545-0 (set of parts)
- . – ISBN 978-2-204-02821-9 (Cerf). – ISBN 978-2-222-04155-9 (CNRS, broché)
- . – CBS M-34129 (disc). – CBS MT 35158 (cassette)
- . – Warner Bros. K 56334 (stereo). – Warner Bros. K 56334M (mono)

If there is no identifier, a statement of binding, format, etc., may be given as the first statement in the area, enclosed in parentheses.

9760 *Example*

- . – (Paperback)

Terms identifying the source of the number may be added in parentheses following the number.

*Examples*

- . – FSM Toccata: 53 617 toc (on container)
- . – ED 76C34Z (in slide publisher's catalogue)

When a standard identifier is incorrectly printed on the resource being described, the correct standard identifier is given, if known, and the term “corrected” or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~ is added enclosed in parentheses. The invalid number is given as it appears, with the qualification “invalid” (or its equivalent in another language ~~and/or script~~) enclosed in parentheses.

- 9770            *Examples*
- . – ISBN ~~978-0-340-16427-4~~3 (corrected). – ISBN ~~978-0-340-16427-2~~ (invalid)
  - ~~— ISSN 0027-7495 (corrected)~~
- 8.1.4**        ~~For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:~~ **Label names and catalogue numbers**
- ~~Whether or not a commercially issued sound recording has a standard identifier, the label name and all issue numbers supplied by the issuing company are given.~~
- 8.1.4.1**      Whether or not a commercially issued sound recording, videorecording, etc., has a standard identifier, the label name and all catalogue numbers supplied by the issuing company are given. The ~~issue-~~ catalogue number must ~~include~~ be preceded by a label name, ~~which can be followed by~~ and can include a numerical symbol alone or ~~by~~ a symbol composed of letters and numbers; spaces and marks of punctuation are transcribed exactly as they appear on the source of information.
- 9780
- Examples*
- . – Telefunken 6.35368
  - . – Pathé 2C 066-16.130
  - . – Sandak Set no. 782  
*Editorial comment: Number for a commercially-issued slide set.*
- 8.1.4.2**      When the resource consists of two or more parts numbered consecutively, the ~~issue-~~ catalogue number may be given as an inclusive figure.
- Example*
- 9790            . – La voix de son maître AN 133-134
- When the numbering is not consecutive, the numbers are transcribed in full.
- Example*
- . – HMV XQD 1784, NQD 1003-1004
- When there is a ~~an~~ issue- catalogue number for the whole resource and also numbers for the individual parts, the ~~issue-~~ catalogue number for the whole resource is given. The numbers of the individual parts ~~are~~ may be given in parentheses following the number for the whole resource.
- Example*
- . – Erato ERA 9156 (9157-9162)
- ~~**8.1.4.3** — For commercially issued slide sets, the company name and number are given.~~
- 9800            *Example*
- ~~— Sandak Set no. 782~~

### 8.1.5 Fingerprint

The fingerprint system was developed from experiments to extract identifying information fromBecause no standard numbering system appears in older monographic resources, experiments have been conducted in recent years as to the feasibility of extracting information from each resource to make it uniquely identifiable. The fingerprint system It has been considered as a substitute for the a standard number for older resources.

9810 The fingerprint consists of a number of characters drawn from a number of uniform places in the text of the resource, followed by a number indicating the source of one or more of the characters and/or a letter indicating the direction of the chain lines and/or the date as it appears in the publication, production, distribution, etc., area. A definitive formula for fingerprint has yet to be determined by international agreement. Until such an agreement is made, various forms of fingerprint will be considered acceptable in this area.<sup>24</sup>

#### Example

. – Fingerprint:163704 - b1 A2 ,Sen : b2 I2 a,\$

Editorial comment: Fingerprint for: I.V. Vondels Gysbreght van Aemstel, d'ondergang van zijn stad en zijn ballingschap : trevrspel. – Amsterdam : W. Blaeu, 1637. – 4°: A-14.

24 A definitive formula for fingerprint has yet to be determined by international agreement. Until such an agreement is made, various forms of fingerprint will be considered acceptable in this area.

Fingerprints = Empreintes = Imprime— (Paris: Institut de recherche et d'histoire des textes, 1984). 2 vol., reproduced at [http://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/web\\_iccu/info/it/Impronta\\_regole.htm](http://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/web_iccu/info/it/Impronta_regole.htm) (viewed 23 Nov. 2009), that is supplemented by the periodical: Nouvelles des empreintes = Fingerprint newsletter. – No. 1 (1981)- — (Paris: Institut de recherche et d'histoire des textes, 1981-), reproduced at [http://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/web\\_iccu/info/it/Impronta\\_notiziario.htm](http://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/web_iccu/info/it/Impronta_notiziario.htm).

Another method of fingerprint has been implemented by the Dutch STCN team. A description is found at P.C.A. Vriesema, “The STCN-fingerprint”, in: Studies in bibliography 39 (1986), p. 93-100; “The STCN-fingerprint”, available online at <http://www.koninklijkebibliotheek.nl/stcn/vingerafdruk-en.html> (viewed 23 Nov. 2009<sup>2006-02-11</sup>).

**8.2 Key title (Continuing resources)**

9820 The key title assigned by the ISSN Network is given even when it is identical to the title proper of the continuing resource. However, a key title is given only if the ISSN to which it applies is given.

*Examples*

- . – ISSN 0308-1249 = Medicos (Nottingham)
- . – ISSN 0028-5390 = The new Hungarian quarterly



### 8.3 Terms of availability and/or price

The terms of availability and/or price are recorded with a word, phrase or numerical expression giving the price of the resource and/or the terms upon which the resource is available.

- 9830 **8.3.1** A statement of the terms of availability, which consist of the price if the resource is for sale or a brief statement of other terms if the resource is not for sale. A statement of the terms upon which the resource is available may be given. In the case of a resource offered for sale, It is recommended that the price of the resource is given in the ISO be given with the international standard symbol code for the currency as in ISO 4217<sup>25</sup>. Terms for resources available for hire are recorded as being for hire.

#### Examples

- : GBP 2.05 ~~GBP~~
- : EUR 950 ~~EUR~~
- : ~~producer's tutorial, not for sale~~
- : for hire
- : free to educational institutions
- 9840 : USD 325.00 ~~USD~~
- : DKK 500 ~~DKK~~
- : EUR 35 ~~EUR~~
- : free loan

#### For continuing resources:

The price of a continuing resource may be given when the price of the successive single issues or parts or iterations is constant, or when a subscription is available. When both prices are available, they may be given, the single issue or part or iteration price being given first. The price is given in numerals with the official standard symbol of currency.

#### Examples

- 9850
- : not for sale
  - : free loan
  - : for hire
  - : annual subscription 4 GBP
  - : 1,20 EUR per issue : 20 EUR p.a.
  - : free to University and college staff

<sup>25</sup> ISO 4217:2008. Codes for the representation of currencies and funds. 7th ed. Codes also available at: [http://www.iso.org/iso/support/faqs/faqs\\_widely\\_used\\_standards/widely\\_used\\_standards\\_other/currency\\_codes/](http://www.iso.org/iso/support/faqs/faqs_widely_used_standards/widely_used_standards_other/currency_codes/)

## 8.4 Qualification

Qualifications are given where supplementary information is necessary, added to the standard identifier (see 8.1.3), and to the price (see 8.3.1).

9860 A qualification is a term added to any of the elements in 8.1 and 8.3 qualifying, explaining, modifying, or correcting the information given in that element. It may follow the elements, as appropriate.

General notes relating to terms of availability and/or price may be given in area 7 (see 7.8).

### 8.4.1 Qualification to identifier

Terms identifying the source of the number may be added in parentheses following the number.

#### *Examples*

- FSM Toccata: 53 617 toe (on container)
- ED 76C34Z (in slide publisher's catalogue)
- ISMN M 001 11270 3 (partition)
- ISMN M 001 12064 7 (partie)
- Pl. no.: LSO037 (partition)
- 9870 — Pl. no.: LSO046 (dessus de violon)

When a resource has more than one identifier because it is issued in more than one format or physical carrier or by more than one publisher, producer, or distributor, each identifier is recorded followed by the qualification and terms of availability or by the name of the publisher, producer, or distributor, relating to the number.

#### *Examples*

- CBS M 34129 (disc)
- CBS MT 35158 (cassette)

### **For printed monographic resources and For notated music resources:**

9880 A brief statement of the type or kind of binding in which the resource is issued may be given following the identifier to which it is related. Such a statement when given is enclosed in parentheses. Standard abbreviations in the language of the cataloguing agency may be used.

#### *Examples*

- ISBN 0 85020 025 3 (cloth)
- ISBN 0 330 23591 5 (paperback)
- ISBN 3 525 52139 1 (Lw.)
- ISBN 0 19 342594 7 (paperback)
- Publ. no.: Z 1039 (cloth)

9890 ~~When there is no identifier, a binding statement may be given as the first statement in the area, enclosed in parentheses.~~

*Example*

~~—(Paperback)~~

**For multimedia resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images:**

~~A brief statement of format, etc., sufficient to relate any standard identifier to the material to which it belongs may be supplied as a qualification of the identifier. Standard abbreviations in the language of the cataloguing agency may be used.~~

*Examples*

9900 ~~—RK 11719 (stereo)~~

~~—ISBN 0-525-56142-X (Beta)~~

~~When there is no identifier, a brief statement of format, etc., may be given as the first statement in the area, enclosed in parentheses.~~

*Example*

~~—(artist's signed edition)~~

**For updating looseleaves:**

~~The qualification (*looseleaf*) or its equivalent in another language is added.~~

*Example*

~~—ISBN 0-86325-016-5 (looseleaf)~~

9910 *Editorial comment:* Resource being described is an integrating resource

**8.4.28.3.2** Qualifications to the terms of availability ~~and/or price~~ are enclosed in parentheses.

*Examples*

: GBP 1.00 ~~GBP~~ : (GBP 0.50 ~~GBP~~ (to members)

: GBP 8.16 ~~GBP~~ : (GBP 6.25 ~~GBP~~ (until 1 January 1977)

: C\$25.00 (National Film Board of Canada)

: ~~8.16 (6.25 until 1 Jan. 1996)~~

: USD 129.00 ~~USD~~ : (USD 100.00 ~~USD~~ (for colleges and universities)

: USD 49.00 ~~USD~~ : (USD 59.00 ~~USD~~ (with workbook)

: GBP 4 (annual subscription)

9920 : EUR 1,20 (per issue) : EUR 20 (p.a.)

### Examples illustrating area 8

#### *Examples*

- ISBN 000-211202-7 (cased) : £5.50
- ISSN 0002-9769 = American libraries : 20.00 USD (Free to members of the Association)
- ISSN 1159-6724 = U. Droit (Paris)
- K 56334 (stereo) : £3.25. — K 56334M (mono) : £3.00
- M 2306-5831-7 (br.) : 60 EUR
- um:left:rft:1630
- doi: 10.1000/1
- Free to universities and colleges
- £4.40 (complete set). — £0.55 (individual sheets)
- ISBN 3-89942-147-7 : 13.80 EUR
- ISMN M 2002-2055-1 (br.). — ISBN 3-7957-6311-8  
*Editorial comment:* Musical score of an opera, with both an ISMN and an ISBN

9930

**APPENDIXES**



## APPENDIX A: MULTILEVEL DESCRIPTION

Multilevel description is one of a number of choices for the bibliographic descriptions of parts.

9940 ~~If a single level description is created for a part, the relationship between the whole and the part may be represented in that description by~~ **Other methods for describing a resource consisting of parts include:**

- 1) **a)** certain descriptions showing as the title proper the title common to the parts, with the titles of individual parts given in a contents note (see 7.7);
- 2) **b)** certain descriptions showing as the title proper the title of each individual part, with the title common to the parts given in the series area (see 6.1.5);
- 3) **c)** certain descriptions showing as the title proper a combination of (a) the title common to the parts and (b) the title of each individual part (see 1.1.3.7, 1.1.5.3);
- 4) **d)** certain descriptions showing component part analysis (see the *IFLA Guidelines for the Application of the ISBDs to the Description of Component Parts*<sup>26</sup>).

9950 Multilevel description is based on the division of descriptive information into two or more levels. The first level contains information common to the whole or main resource. The second and subsequent levels contain information relating to the individual separable unit. The process is carried out for as many levels as are required to describe fully the resource and its units.

At each level the elements of the description are given in the same order and with the same punctuation as for unitary resources. Some elements may be recorded at more than one level. ~~When the title of a volume or a section or subseries of a part of a resource is preceded by a unit designation or a section/subseries designation, the two statements are separated by a colon, space (: ):~~

~~In the ISBD, the applications of m~~ **Multilevel description are may be applied to:**

- 1) **a)** ~~The description of~~ physically separate units of a multipart resource;

9960 *Example*

Remembrance of things past / Marcel Proust ; translated by C.K. Scott Moncrieff. – London : Chatto and Windus, 1957- . – Translation of: A la recherche du temps perdu-

Vol. 1, Swann's way / illustrated by Philippe Jullian. – Translation of: Du côté de chez Swann. – This translation originally published 1922-

Part 1. – 1957 (1973 reprint). – 303 p., 4 leaves of plates : ill. ; 19 cm. – ISBN 0-7011-1048-1 : ~~£~~ **GBP** 1.75

- 2) **b)** ~~The description of~~ physically separate resources supplementary to, or accompanying, another resource (see 5.4, 5.4.3, 7.5);

<sup>26</sup> Guidelines for the application of the ISBDs to the description of component parts— (London: IFLA Universal Bibliographic Control and International MARC Programme, 1988). Available online at: [http://www.ifla.org/VII/s13/files/cataloguing/isbd/Component\\_Parts\\_finalcomponent-parts.pdf](http://www.ifla.org/VII/s13/files/cataloguing/isbd/Component_Parts_finalcomponent-parts.pdf)

- 9970 *Example*
- A history of Hampshire and the Isle of Wight. – Westminster : Constable, 1900-1912. – 5 vol. : ill. (some col.), maps, ports. ; 32 cm. – (The Victoria history of the counties of England)
- Index to the Victoria history of Hampshire and the Isle of Wight. – London : Constable, 1914. – 135 p. ; 32 cm
- 3)c) The description of physically separate units of a multimedia resource.
- Example*
- 9980 Minnesota politics and government : a history resource unit / Educational Services Division, Minnesota Historical Society. – [St. Paul : Minnesota Historical Society, 1976]. – 2 cases in 1 ; 34 cm
- People serving people / Judy A. Poseley. – 30 p. : ill. ; 28 cm
- Voices of Minnesota politicians. – 1 sound disc : 33 1/3 rpm, mono ; 30 cm
- When it is known from the outset or in the course of publication that the place of publication and name of publisher change for each part of a multipart monographic resource, this is indicated at the first level by “[Various places] : [various publishers]” or their equivalents in another language, and the individual places and names of publishers are given at a second or subsequent level.
- When all parts of a multipart monographic resource have been published, the first and last dates are given at the first level (see 4.43.10 and punctuation pattern **G-F** of area 4). The dates of each part are given at a second or subsequent level.
- 9990 When the multipart monographic resource is in the course of publication, the date of the first part published, regardless of the numeric designation of the part, is given at the first level (see 4.43.10 and punctuation pattern **G-F** of area 4). The dates of each part are given at a second or subsequent level.
- The **A** statement of extent is given at any level representing a single part or representing multiple parts the first level when all parts of a multipart monographic resource have been published and described. ~~In all other cases, it is given at a second or subsequent level.~~
- For cartographic resources:**
- ~~When it is known from the outset or in the course of publication that the place of publication and name of publisher change for each part of a multipart monographic resource, this is indicated at the first level by “[Various places] : [various publishers]” or their equivalents in another language, and the individual places and names of publishers are given at a second or subsequent level.~~
- 10000

**APPENDIX B: BI-DIRECTIONAL RECORDS**

Bi-directional records are multiscrypt records in scripts written from left to right and scripts written from right to left.

Unless the direction of the script changes within an element, each change of script begins on a new line of the description at the appropriate margin. Prescribed punctuation is given at the start of the new element in the style required by the script, except for the prescribed point, comma or semicolon that are given at the end of the previous element in the style required by the script (see also 0-A.3.2). Thus the point of the point, space, dash, space (. –) ends the previous element and the dash begins the following element on a new line at the appropriate margin.

- 10010 | القاموس الحديث، فرنسي-عربي A تأليف متري إلياس  
 = Dictionnaire moderne, français-arabe / par Mitri Elias.  
– طبعة 4 ، منقحة ومزيدة  
 = 4e éd., rev. et augm.  
– القاهرة : المطبعة المصرية  
 = Le Caire : Elias' Modern Press, 1974.  
 (*Arabic data transcribed first*)
- 

- 10020 | القاموس الحديث، فرنسي-عربي A تأليف متري إلياس.  
 = Dictionnaire moderne, français-arabe / par Mitri Elias  
– طبعة 4 ، منقحة ومزيدة.  
 = 4e éd., rev. et augm.  
– القاهرة : المطبعة المصرية، 1974.  
 = Le Caire : Elias' Modern Press  
 (*French data transcribed first*)



## APPENDIX C: RECOMMENDED GENERAL MATERIAL DESIGNATIONS AND SPECIFIC MATERIAL DESIGNATIONS

10030

The following list of recommended general material designations and specific material designations is suggested as a basis for constructing lists in English language records. The list is not exhaustive.

GENERAL MATERIAL DESIGNATION	SPECIFIC MATERIAL DESIGNATION
Cartographic resource	atlas diagram globe map model profile remote sensing image section view
Electronic resource	CD-ROM CD-RW CD-WO DVD Audio DVD Data DVD RW DVD-RAM DVD Video electronic chip cartridge(s) electronic disk(s) electronic optical disc(s) electronic tape cassette(s) electronic tape reel(s)
Graphic	art reproduction flashcard flipchart photograph picture playing cards postcard poster print, or specific graphic process (e.g. woodcut, lithograph, etching) as appropriate stereograph card study print technical drawing wallchart
Hologram	hologram film hologram plate
Kit see Multimedia resource	

GENERAL MATERIAL DESIGNATION	SPECIFIC MATERIAL DESIGNATION
------------------------------	-------------------------------

Microform	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>aperture card</li> <li>microfiche</li> <li>microfilm cartridge</li> <li>microfilm cassette</li> <li>microfilm reel</li> <li>microfilm slip</li> <li>microopaque</li> </ul>
Motion picture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>film cartridge</li> <li>film cassette</li> <li>filmloop</li> <li>film reel</li> </ul>
Multimedia resource	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>construction set</li> <li>game</li> </ul>
Notated music resource	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>chorus score</li> <li>close score</li> <li>condensed score</li> <li>part(s)</li> <li>piano (violin, etc.) conductor part</li> <li>score</li> <li>study score</li> <li>vocal score</li> </ul>
Printed text	
Sound recording	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DVD</li> <li>SACD</li> <li>sound cartridge</li> <li>sound cassette</li> <li>sound disc</li> <li>sound reel</li> </ul>
Videorecording	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DVD-Audio</li> <li>DVD-ROM</li> <li>DVD-Video</li> <li>videocartridge</li> <li>videocassette</li> <li>videodisc</li> <li>videoreel</li> </ul>
Visual projection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>filmstrip</li> <li>filmstrip</li> <li>microscope slide</li> <li>slide</li> <li>stereograph reel</li> <li>transparency</li> </ul>

**APPENDIX C: BIBLIOGRAPHY**

Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules. 2nd ed. Chicago: American Library Association, 1978, and subsequent revisions.

Bowers, Fredson. *Principles of Bibliographical Description*. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press, 1949.

Delsey, Tom. *The Logical Structure of the Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*. 1998-1999. Available at: <http://www.rda-jsc.org/docs.html>

10040 *Descriptive Cataloging of Rare Materials (Books)*. Washington, D.C.: Cataloging Distribution Service, Library of Congress, 2007.

*Fingerprints = Empreintes = Impronte*. Paris: Institut de recherche et d'histoire des textes, 1984. 2 vol., reproduced at [http://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/web\\_iccu/info/it/Impronta\\_regole.htm](http://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/web_iccu/info/it/Impronta_regole.htm), supplemented by the periodical: *Nouvelles des empreintes = Fingerprint newsletter*. – No. 1 (1981)- Paris: Institut de recherche et d'histoire des textes, 1981-, reproduced at [http://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/web\\_iccu/info/it/Impronta\\_notiziario.htm](http://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/web_iccu/info/it/Impronta_notiziario.htm)

Gaskell, Philip. *A New Introduction to Bibliography*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1972.

10050 IFLA Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records, *Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records: Final Report*. München: K.G. Saur, 1998. Also available at <http://www.ifla.org/en/publications/functional-requirements-for-bibliographic-records>

International Conference on Cataloguing Principles. *Report*. London: International Federation of Library Associations, 1963.

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. *Guidelines for the application of the ISBDs to the description of component parts*. London: IFLA Universal Bibliographic Control and International MARC Programme, 1988. Available online at: <http://www.ifla.org/files/cataloguing/isbd/component-parts.pdf>

10060 International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. *IFLA Cataloguing Principles: the Statement of International Cataloguing Principles (ICP) and its Glossary in 20 Languages*. Ed. by Barbara B. Tillett and Ana Lupe Cristán. München: K.G. Saur, 2009. Also available at <http://www.ifla.org/en/publications/statement-of-international-cataloguing-principles>

International Organization for Standardization. ISO 832:1994, *Information and documentation – Bibliographic description and references – Rules for the abbreviation of bibliographic terms*.

International Organization for Standardization. ISO 2108:2005, *Information and documentation – International standard book number (ISBN)*

International Organization for Standardization. ISO 3297:2007, *Information and documentation – International standard serial number (ISSN)*

International Organization for Standardization. ISO 3901:2001, *Information and documentation – International Standard Recording Code (ISRC)*

10070 International Organization for Standardization. ISO 4217:2008, *Codes for the representation of currencies and funds*.

International Organization for Standardization. ISO 10957:2009, *Information and documentation – International standard music number (ISMN)*

International Organization for Standardization. ISO 80000-3:2006, *Quantities and units. Part 3, Space and time*. Revises ISO 31-1:1992.

RDA/ONIX Framework for Resource Categorization. 2006. Available at:  
<http://www.rda-jsc.org/working2.html#chair-10>

Reitz, Joan M. *ODLIS—Online Dictionary for Library and Information Science*.  
<http://lu.com/odlis/about.cfm>. Also available in print, Westport, Conn.: Libraries Unlimited, 2004.

U.S. Defense Mapping Agency, Hydrographic/Topographic Center. *Glossary of Mapping, Charting, and Geodetic Terms*. 4th ed. 1981. Reprint, Honolulu, Hawaii: University Press of the Pacific, 2005.

Vriesema, P.C.A. “The STCN-fingerprint”, in: *Studies in bibliography* 39 (1986), p. 93-100; “The STCN-fingerprint”, available online at <http://www.koninklijkebibliotheek.nl/stcn/vingerafdruk-en.html>

10080

## APPENDIX D: ABBREVIATIONS

The following abbreviations for use ~~in area 5~~ in English-language records are recommended but not prescribed. Other abbreviations as used in ISO 832<sup>27</sup> and ISO ~~31~~ 80000-3<sup>28</sup> are recommended for use throughout the ISBD (see ~~0~~ A.6.4).

b&w	black and white
CD	compact disc (sound recordings)
CD-I	compact disc-Interactive
CD-ROM	compact disc read-only memory
cm/s	centimetres per second
col.	colour, <u>coloured</u>
cop.	copyright
diam.	diameter
<del>DVD</del>	
<del>DVD-Audio</del>	
<del>DVD-ROM</del>	
<del>DVD-Video</del>	
fr.	frame <del>(s)</del> <u>or frames</u>
<u>ill.</u>	<u>illustrations</u>
in.	inch <del>(es)</del> <u>or inches</u>
ips	inches per second
m/s	metres per second
mono	monophonic/monaural
<u>p.</u>	<u>pages</u>
p or P	phonogram date
photo CD	photo compact disc
quad	quadraphonic
rpm	revolutions per minute

<sup>27</sup> ISO 832. Information and Documentation—Bibliographic Description and References—Rules for the Abbreviation of Bibliographic Term.

<sup>28</sup> ISO 80000-3:2006. Quantities and Units—Part 3: Space and time.

sd.	sound
si.	silent
stereo	stereophonic
<u>vol.</u>	<u>volume or volumes</u>

**APPENDIX E: GLOSSARY**

- 10090 Definitions are given for those terms used in the ISBD in a special sense, or in one of several senses in general use. Some terms used in the normal bibliographic sense are also defined. Sources for some definitions are identified after the definition. Full citations are given in the bibliography (Appendix C).
- AACR2 = Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules, 2nd edition
  - DCRM(B) = Descriptive Cataloging of Rare Materials (Books)
  - ODLIS = Joan M. Reitz, Online Dictionary for Library and Information Science (used by permission)
  - USDMA = U.S. Defense Mapping Agency
- absorption**  
the incorporation of one or more continuing resources into another continuing resource, with the absorbed continuing resources typically losing their separate identities
- 10100 **access** ~~(for electronic resources)~~  
<electronic resources> a method of obtaining data resources and programs (*See also* direct access, remote access)
- accompanying documentation** ~~(electronic resource)~~  
*see* documentation ~~(electronic resource)~~
- accompanying material**  
any material issued with the main part or part(s) of the resource being described, and intended to be used with it (*See also* documentation; insert<sup>4</sup>inset)
- 10110 **accompanying material statement**  
a brief description of accompanying material
- acronym**  
a word formed from the initial letter or letters of each of the successive parts or major parts and/or each of the successive words or major words of a compound term, such as the name of a corporate body or a title (*See also* initialism)
- alternative title**  
the second part of a title proper that consists of two parts (each of which has the form of an independent title), joined by a word such as “or” or its equivalent in another language, e.g. *Moby-Dick, or, The Whale*
- analytical title page**  
a title page chosen as the basis of description for part of a bibliographic resource for which a comprehensive description is also made, e.g. the title page of a monograph within a monographic series
- 10120 **antiquarian**  
*see* older monographic resource
- ~~**aperture card**—  
a card containing an aperture or “window” in which one or more microphotographs on film are mounted~~
- area**  
a major section of the bibliographic description, comprising data of a particular category or set of categories
- art reproduction**  
a mechanically reproduced art work in a commercial edition

- 10130 **ascension**  
*see right ascension*
- audiovisual resource**  
*a resource in medium that combines sound with visual images, for example, a motion picture or videorecording with soundtrack, or a slide presentation synchronized with audiotape [ODLIS]*
- avant-titre**  
other title information introducing the title proper, and occurring above the title proper on the prescribed source of information for the title and statement of responsibility area
- 10140 **back-to-back**  
*a form of binding in which two texts are bound together, each beginning at one of the covers, with the pages in the same orientation relative to the spine, e.g. a French and Arabic text bound together (*see also tête-bêche*)*
- bibliographic description**  
a set of bibliographic data recording and identifying a resource
- bibliographic format**  
*see format <older monographic resources>*
- bibliographic resource**  
*see resource*
- bound with**  
a designation used for a copy contained in a volume with one or more other resources as arranged and bound independent of publication (see also “Issued with”). It is used in copy-specific information
- 10150 **broadsheet**  
a separately published sheet, printed on one side only and intended to be read unfolded; usually intended to be posted, publicly distributed, or sold, e.g. proclamation, handbill, ballad-sheet, news-sheet
- broadside**  
*see broadsheet*
- caption title**  
a title of a resource given at the beginning of the first page of the text
- carrier**  
*see physical carrier*
- 10160 **cartographic resource**  
representation, in whole or in part, of the Earth or any celestial body at any scale, such as two- and three-dimensional maps and plans; aeronautical, nautical and celestial charts; globes; block-diagrams; map sections; aerial, satellite and space photographs; remote-sensing imagery; atlases; bird's-eye views
- cartridge**  
a permanently encased single reel of film or magnetic tape whose ends are joined together to allow continuous playback without rewinding, used for recording microreproductions of text and/or images (~~i.e.~~ microfilm cartridge), or for playing sound (~~i.e.~~ sound cartridge), motion pictures (~~i.e.~~ film cartridge) or video (~~i.e.~~ videocartridge). Usually designed to be inserted into a display or playback device
- 10170 **cassette**  
a permanently encased film or magnetic tape storage device, incorporating both supply and take-up reels into a removable unit, and used for recording microreproductions of text and/or images (~~i.e.~~ microfilm cassette), or for playing sound (~~i.e.~~ sound cassette), motion pictures (~~i.e.~~ film cassette) or video (~~i.e.~~ videocassette). Usually designed to be inserted into a display or playback device

- catalogue number**  
an identification number a record label assigns to a recording
- chief source of information**  
see preferred source of information
- chorus score**  
 10180 notated music for a work for voices and instruments that gives only the choral music in score form without the music for the instruments
- cine mode**  
arrangement of successive images on microfilm and filmstrips having with the base of each frame perpendicular to the sides edges of the film; see also comic mode
- close score**  
 notated music giving all the parts on a minimum of staves, normally two
- collation**  
a list of the signatures of a book, indicating the number of leaves in each
- collective title**  
 a title for a resource that consists of two or more individual works that applies to the resource as a whole
- colophon**  
 10190 a statement usually at the end of a resource giving information about its publication or printing, and in some cases, other bibliographic information, including the title. Particularly in fifteenth- and sixteenth century books, and in Asian books until the twentieth century, the colophon may give information generally found on the title page in later books (*See also* Title page, Title-page substitute)
- ~~**colour**  
 two or more colours in which a program is encoded or a monitor displays. Programs encoded to display colour require a colour monitor and, in the case of some computers, a colour card or board~~
- coloured illustration**  
 an illustration containing any colour; black, white, and shades of grey are not to be considered colours
- comic mode**  
 10200 arrangement of successive images on microfilm and filmstrips with the base of each frame parallel to the edge of the film; see also cine mode [ODLIS]
- common title**  
 that part of the title that is carried by a group of related resources in addition to their different section titles. The common title serves to indicate this relationship and together with the section title identifies a given resource. The common title may also be common to a main resource and its supplement or supplement(s) and to a main series and its subseries when the supplement or supplement(s) or subseries ~~has (have)~~ a dependent title or title(s)
- condensed score**  
 10210 notated music giving only the principal musical parts on a minimum of staves, usually organized by instrumental sections
- conductor part**  
see piano (violin, etc.) conductor part
- container**  
 any housing for a resource, a group of resources, or a part of a resource, that is physically separable from the material being housed (The sleeve, album or a slipcase, box, or folder for a set of discs ~~disks~~ is a container; a cassette or cartridge is not.) (*See also* Physical carrier)

**content standard**

10220 a detailed set of rules for preparing bibliographic records to describe and represent resources added to a library or archival collection. A content standard is established to maintain consistency within the catalogue and between the catalogues of libraries or archives using the same standard. The word “content” refers to the content of the bibliographic or descriptive record, not the content of the resource being described

**continuing resource**

a resource that is issued over time with no predetermined conclusion. A continuing resource is either a serial or an ongoing integrating resource

**coordinates**

<cartographic resources> the quantities of latitude and longitude which define the position of a point on the surface of the Earth or other celestial sphere [USDMA, under geographic coordinates]

10230 **corporate body**

any organization or group of persons and/or organizations that is identified by a particular name. This includes named occasional groups and events, such as meetings, conferences, congresses, expeditions, exhibitions, festivals and fairs.<sup>29</sup> Typical examples of corporate bodies are associations, institutions, business firms, nonprofit enterprises, governments, government agencies, religious bodies and conferences (*See also* issuing body)

**cover**

the outer covering of a resource, of whatever material

**cover title**

the title printed on the (original) front cover of a resource

10240 **data set name**

*see* file name

**date of publication, production, and/or distribution**

the date on which a resource is officially offered for sale or distribution to the public, usually given in the form of a year [ODLIS, under publication date]

**declination**

the angular distance to a body on the celestial sphere measured north or south through 90° from the celestial equator along the hour circle of the body; comparable to latitude on the terrestrial sphere [USDMA]

**dependent title**

10250 a title that by itself is insufficient to identify a resource and that requires the addition of the common title, or the title of the main resource or the title of the main series. Examples are section titles, some titles of individual sheets of a map series, some supplement titles and some titles of subseries and the titles of some parts of a multipart monographic resource (*See also* section title)

**dependent title designation**

numbering that alone or in conjunction with a dependent title serves to distinguish one of two or more related resources having a common title (*See also* Section designation, Subseries designation)

<sup>29</sup> See Standing Committees of the IFLA Section on Cataloguing and the IFLA Section on Official Publications. Form and structure of corporate headings: recommendations of the Working Group on Corporate Headings / approved by the Standing Committees of the IFLA Section on Cataloguing and the IFLA Section on Official Publications.— (London: IFLA International Office for UBC, 1980).

**dimensions**

the linear measurements (height, width, depth) of a resource and/or, ~~in the case of~~ **for** resources that require equipment for their use, dimensions relevant to the use of the resource

10260

**diorama**

a three-dimensional representation of a scene, created by placing objects, figures, etc., in front of a two-dimensional painted background

**direct access**

a method of obtaining an electronic resource by use of a physical carrier, such as a ~~disk~~ disc, cassette or cartridge, designed to be inserted into a peripheral attached to a computer

**docket title**

a title written, typed, or printed on a document, or on a label affixed to the document, briefly indicating its contents or subject; usually found perpendicular to the main text, on an otherwise blank page (e.g. the verso of the last leaf), on a document designed to be folded for filing [DCRM(B)]

10270

**document**

*see* resource

**documentation** ~~(electronic resource)~~—

information issued by the publisher, creator, etc., with the resource, normally in the form of manuals or guides (sometimes electronic) describing how to initiate, operate, and maintain ~~electronic~~ the resources ~~and computer systems~~ (*see also accompanying material*)

**edition**

all copies of a resource produced from substantially the same original input and issued by the same agency or group of agencies or a person. For older monographic resources, all copies of a resource printed at any time from substantially the same type-pages (*See also* facsimile reproduction, impression, issue (printed monographic resource), state (older monographic resource), type-page, type-forme, variant copy, version)

10280

**edition statement**

a word or phrase, or a group of characters, indicating that a resource belongs to an edition

**electronic resource**

a resource consisting of materials that are computer-controlled, including materials that require the use of a peripheral (e.g. a CD-ROM player) attached to a computer; the resources may or may not be used in an interactive mode. Included are two types of resources: data (information in the form of numbers, letters, graphics, images and sound, or a combination thereof) and programs (instructions or routines for performing certain tasks including the processing of data). In addition, they may be combined to include electronic data and programs (e.g. educational software with text, graphics and programs).

10290

This definition of electronic resources is taken as applying for the most part to resources that are generally available, and includes those accessed via telecommunications. Resources produced and/or generated for limited distribution, for fee on demand, or on a made-to-order basis are, however, included. A resource residing in permanent memory in a computer (ROM) is understood to be part of the device in which it is stored, and, if catalogued, would be treated as a resource requiring remote access. Programmed toys, calculators, and other programmed objects are considered to be outside the intended scope of the ISBD

**element**

a word or phrase, or a group of characters, representing a distinct unit of bibliographic information and forming part of an area of the bibliographic description

10300

**epoch**

an arbitrary moment in time to which measurements of position for a body or orientation for an orbit are referred. [USDMA]

**equinox**

one of two points of intersection of the ecliptic and the celestial equator, occupied by the sun when its declination is 0°. [USDMA]

**extent**

the number of ~~units and/or sub-units~~ making up the units of a resource, e.g the pages in a volume or the frames in a filmstrip; ~~Extent may also include~~ the duration or playing time of a resource

**facsimile reprint**

*see* facsimile reproduction

10310 **facsimile reproduction**

a new issue of a resource in which the main part is reproduced exactly from the original pages of an earlier edition. This is normally made by a different publisher from that of the original and often has its own title page and other introductory matter

**fascicle**

a division of a printed resource that, for convenience in printing or publication, is issued in small installments, usually incomplete in themselves; they do not necessarily coincide with any formal division of the work into parts, etc. Usually the fascicle is protected by temporary paper wrappers. It may or may not be numbered. A fascicle is distinguished from a part by being a temporary division of a work rather than a formal component unit. [AACR2]

10320 **file name**

a name, usually consisting of a maximum number of alphanumeric characters that are used to identify either a data resource or a program to the computer. Also known as data set name

**film cartridge**

*see* cartridge

**film cassette**

*see* cassette

**film reel**

*see* reel

**film loop**

10330 a ~~continuous loop~~ length of film with the ends spliced together for continuous play, usually in the form of a cartridge utilizing 8 mm film and having a maximum running time of 4 1/2 minutes. ~~[ODLIS]~~

**filmstrip**

a roll of film, usually 16 mm or 35 mm, containing a succession of images designed to be viewed frame by frame, with or without integral sound. If the shorter side of the frame runs parallel to the sprocket holes, the filmstrip is described as “single frame”; if the longer side of the frame runs parallel to the sprocket holes, it is described as “double frame”

**fingerprint**

10340 a group of characters derived from an older monographic resource with the purpose of identifying the edition uniquely. The fingerprint consists of a number of characters drawn from a number of uniform places in the text of the resource, followed by a number indicating the source of one or more of the characters, and/or a letter indicating the direction of the chain-lines, and/or the date as it appears in the publication, ~~printing~~ production, distribution, etc., area

**fixing of the sound** —

~~the process involved in determining and creating the version that is issued as a recording. It may result from the mix of several takes~~

**flash card**

a card or other opaque material printed with words, numerals or pictures and designed for rapid display

**flip chart**

10350 a set of subject-integrated data sheets, hinged together at the top or side and designed for presentation on an easel

**form/forme**

*see* type-forme

**format**

in general, refers to the particular physical presentation of a resource

**format** (~~electronic resource~~)—

<electronic resources> the manner in which data are arranged in a medium of input, output or storage (*See also* medium, physical carrier)

**format** (~~notated music~~)—

<notated music> *see* ~~Notated~~ music format

10360 **format** (~~older monographic resource~~)—

<older monographic resources> the designation of the number of type-pages in each type-forme. In a folio (2°, 2:o, etc.), there are two type-pages in each forme, in a quarto (4°, 4:o, etc.), there are four, in an octavo (8°, 8:o, etc.) eight, and so on

**former title**

an earlier title of a continuing resource that has continued under another title (in whole or in part), or has merged with another continuing resource under another title or titles, or has been absorbed by another continuing resource (in whole or in part) under another title

**frequency**

10370 (1) the intervals at which the issues or parts of a serial or the updates to an integrating resource are issued, such as daily, weekly, monthly, annually—(2) ~~the intervals at which updates of an integrating resource are issued~~

**game**

a set of materials designed for use according to prescribed rules in play and/or instruction

**gathering**

a number of folds arranged within each other. For older monographic resources, normally, one sheet forms one gathering, but if the type-pages are imposed in half-sheets or in other fractions of a whole type-forme, the printed sheet may form more than one gathering. More than one sheet can also be arranged in one gathering. A folio (2°, 2:o, etc.) may be gathered, or quired, in fours (two sheets per gathering) or in sixes, etc.

10380 **general material designation (GMD)**—

~~a term indicating, broadly, the class of material to which a resource belongs~~

**generic term**

(1) a general term indicating the kind, form or genre and/or periodicity of a resource; ~~†~~ terms such as *Abhandlungen, annales, annual report, bulletin, cahiers, compte rendu des séances, circular letter, journal, newsletter, occasional paper, proceedings, report, transactions*, and their equivalents in other languages, are considered to be generic terms; (2) for music, a term indicating a musical form or genre

**geographic coordinates**

*see* coordinates

- graphic**  
10390 a two-dimensional image (or set of images) produced in its original form by such techniques as drawing, engraving, painting or photography. Graphics are normally accessible to the naked eye, though in one instance (stereographs) special viewing equipment is needed for their use
- ~~half-sheet (older monographic resource)—  
(1) half a sheet, separately published and printed so as to be read unfolded. (2) also used as a technical term designating half a sheet~~
- half title**  
the title of a book as printed, in full or in brief, on the recto of a leaf preceding the title page, usually in a smaller size of the font in which the title proper is printed on the title page [ODLIS]
- hologram**  
10400 a three-dimensional image made by a process based on the principle of light interference
- ~~home page—  
the main or opening screen of a hypertext document for a World Wide Web site. Home pages are a subset of “Web pages” that present information on systems, services and products, and, in addition, provide links in the form of words, URLs, etc., to other related documents and Web sites~~
- illustration**  
a diagrammatic, pictorial or other graphic representation occurring within a resource
- impression**  
(1) all copies of an edition produced at one time or in one operation  
(2) all copies of the sheets of a resource printed in one print run from the same setting of type-pages (See also edition, issue (printed monographic resource), state (older monographic resource), variant copy)
- 10410 | **independent title**  
a title that by itself is sufficient to identify a resource
- initialism**  
the initial letters of the name of an organization or other entity or of any group of words (See also Acronym)
- insert**~~inset~~  
(+) a resource that is issued with another resource by being inserted into it, either loose or fixed, either regularly or occasionally. Any printed material, such as a map, illustration, subscription blank, advertising supplement, etc., slipped loose (unbound) into a book or periodical, which is not an integral part of the publication. [ODLIS] (See also Accompanying material, Common title, Dependent title)—(2) in older monographic resources, any leaf or gathering printed with letterpress in a separate process, not forming an integral part of the regular gatherings of leaves, but issued with the resource
- 10420 | **inset**  
<older monographic resources> any leaf or gathering printed with letterpress in a separate process, not forming an integral part of the regular gatherings of leaves, but issued with the resource. In bookbinding, a section of two or more leaves placed within another section in such a way that the back folds of both are sewn in the same pass of the thread. The inset section can wrap around the outside of the main section (“outsert”) or be placed in its center or at some intermediate location within it. Insetting is used to include plates without having to go through the time-consuming process of tipping them in. [ODLIS]
- 10430 | Also refers to a small diagram, map, or illustration printed within the area of a larger map or illustration, usually enclosed in a border of ruled lines. [ODLIS]

**integrating resource**

a resource that is added to or changed by means of updates that do not remain discrete and are integrated into the whole. Integrating resources can be finite or ongoing. Examples of integrating resources include updating looseleaves and updating web sites

**ISBN (International Standard Book Number)**

10440 The ISBN a number that uniquely identifies a book or book-like product as defined in an issue of a work issued by one specific publisher and is unique to that issue. It is assigned by the national ISBN agency and is based on ISO international standard ISO 2108

**ISMN (International Standard Music Number)**

an international number that uniquely identifies a publication of printed created for notated music as defined in. The international agency in Berlin coordinates assignment of numbers. ISMN is not used for sound, video recordings, CDs, audio tapes or books on music. It is based on ISO international standard ISO 10957

**ISRC (International Standard Recording Code)**

10450 a code that uniquely identifies a an international identification system for sound recordings and or music videorecordings as defined in international standard ISO 3901. Each ISRC is a unique and permanent identifier for a specific recording that can be permanently encoded into a product as its digital fingerprint. Encoded ISRCs provide the means to identify automatically recordings for royalty payments

**ISSN (International Standard Serial Number)**

The ISSN together with the key title an eight-digit number assigned to a continuing resource by the ISSN Network, uniquely identifies a particular serial or integrating resource (*see ISSN Manual*<sup>30</sup>) as defined in. It is assigned by the ISSN Network and is based on ISO international standard ISO 3297

**ISSN Network** —

an international network of operational centres jointly responsible for the creation and maintenance of computer based data banks providing a reliable registry of world continuing resources. The ISSN Network is responsible for the assigning of the International Standard Serial Number (ISSN)

**issue (printed monographic resource)**

10460 <printed monographic resources> those copies of an edition that constitute a planned publishing unit, distinguishable from other copies of that edition by one or more differences (e.g. a new title page or colophon that expressly identifies the copies as a discrete unit) (*See also* facsimile reproduction, impression, state (older monographic resource), variant copy) For motion pictures *see* reissue

**issue (serial)** —

<serials> one of the successive parts of a serial; the term being used to designate the lowest level successive part of a serial

**issued with**

a designation used for a resource as arranged and issued by a publisher together with one or more other, different resources (generally with separate title pages and separate pagination) (*See also* bound with)

10470 **issuing body**

a corporate body under whose auspices a resource may be published. The body may or may not be intellectually responsible for the resource, and may or may not be the publisher

**iteration**

an instance of an integrating resource, either as first published or after it has been updated

<sup>30</sup> ISSN Manual, Cataloguing part. Available at <http://www.issn.org/2-23364-ISSN-Manual.php><http://www.issn.org/en/node/343>

**journal**—

~~a term frequently used for periodicals, particularly more learned periodicals~~

**key title**

10480 the unique name assigned to a continuing resource by the ISSN Network and inseparably linked with its ISSN. The key title may be the same as the title proper; or, in order to achieve uniqueness, it can be constructed by the addition of identifying and/or qualifying elements such as name of issuing body, place of publication, edition statement (*see also* ISSN *Manual*)

**kit**

*see* multimedia resource

**label name**

the brand or ~~trade mark~~ **trademark** name associated with all or some of the products of a publisher or production company, particularly for sound recordings

**leaf**

10490 one of the units into which the original sheet or half sheet of paper, parchment, etc., is folded to form part of a book, pamphlet, journal, etc.; each leaf consists of two pages, one on each side, either or both of which may be blank [AACR2]

**local access**

*see* direct access

**logo**

~~a single piece of type or single plate faced with a term (such as the name of a newspaper, company, organization) often designed in a stylized or decorative form~~ an emblem or graphic design used in publications and on promotional materials by a company, organization, agency, or institution as a trademark or symbol of its identity [ODLIS]

**looseleaf**

*see* updating looseleaf

10500 **main series**

a series that contains one or more subseries

**map projection**

~~*see projection* any systematic arrangement of meridians and parallels portraying upon a plane the curved surface of a celestial sphere or spheroid~~

**map series**

10510 a number of related but physically separate and bibliographically distinct cartographic units intended by the producer or producer(s) or issuing body or bodies to form a single group. For bibliographic treatment, the group is collectively identified by any commonly occurring unifying characteristic or combination of characteristics including a common designation (e.g. collective title, number, or a combination of both); sheet identification system (including successive or chronological numbering systems); scale; publisher; cartographic specifications; uniform format; etc.

**map series designation**

coded numeric or alphanumeric identification applied to a map series by the publisher

**map sheet title**

the title proper of an individual map sheet of a map series, exclusive of the map series title

**masthead**

a statement of title, ownership, editors, etc., of a newspaper or periodical; although its location is variable, ~~in the case of~~ for newspapers it is commonly found on the editorial page or at the top of the front page, and, ~~in the case of~~ for periodicals, on the contents page

- 10520 **medium**  
material in *any* format (films, filmstrips, slides, videorecordings, audiorecordings, CD-ROMS, DVDs, machine-readable data files, computer software, etc.) that carries and communicates information content (*See also* format [\(<electronic resource>](#)); multimedia resource; physical carrier)
- merger**  
the coming together of two or more continuing resources to form a new continuing resource, with the merged continuing resources typically losing their former separate identities
- microfiche**  
a rectangular sheet of film carrying a set of microphotographs in two-dimensional array. Microfiches usually include a title and other bibliographic data that can be read without magnification
- 10530 **microfilm cartridge**  
*see* cartridge
- microfilm cassette**  
*see* cassette
- microfilm reel**  
*see* reel
- microfilm slip**  
a short length of microfilm not contained on a reel
- microform**  
a resource with images too small to be read by the unaided human eye; intended to be magnified for use
- 10540 **microopaque**  
a rectangular opaque card carrying a set of microphotographs in two-dimensional array
- miniature score**  
a score reduced in size and not intended primarily for performance; sometimes known as a “pocket score” or “study score”
- monographic resource**  
a resource that is complete in one part, or intended to be completed within a finite number of parts
- motion picture**  
a length of film, with or without a magnetic or optical sound track, bearing a sequence of images that create the illusion of movement when projected in rapid succession
- 10550 **multilevel description**  
a method of bibliographic description based on the division of descriptive information into two or more levels. The first level contains information common to the whole or main resource. The second and subsequent levels contain information relating to the individual part or other unit
- multimedia resource**  
a resource comprising two or more distinct media or differing forms of the same medium, no one of which is identifiable as being of primary importance. Usually intended for use as a unit (*See also* Medium)
- multipart monographic resource**  
a monographic resource in a finite number of physically separate parts known to have been conceived or published as a unit; the separate parts may have their own titles and statements of responsibility. No single part is identifiable as being of primary importance
- 10560 **multipart resource**  
a resource composed of discrete parts conceived, created, realized or arranged as a unit. A multipart resource can be a multipart monographic resource or a serial

**music format**

the physical form in which a notated music resource is presented in the resource (e.g. score, parts); also known as musical presentation format

**music part(s)**

*see* part(s) (Notated music)

**neat line**

10570 a line, usually grid or graticule, that encloses the detail of a map

**newspaper**

a serial issued at frequent intervals, usually daily, weekly or semiweekly, that reports events and discusses topics of general current interest

~~**nonbook resources**~~

~~monographic resources such as audiovisual resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images~~

**notated music**

10580 a music resource in readable form, reproduced by printing methods, by photocopying, by offset printing methods, digitalisation, etc. Notated music resources include music intended for performance, tutors, studies, exercises and facsimile editions of music manuscripts

~~**notated music format**~~

~~The form in which the work is presented in the resource in hand (e.g. score, parts).~~

**numbering**

the identification of each of the successive issues or parts of a resource. The description can include a numeral, a letter, any other character, or the combination of these, with or without an accompanying word (volume, number, etc.), and/or a chronological designation

**older monographic resource**

10590 chiefly those resources produced prior to the introduction of machine printing in the nineteenth century and include those published for the market as well as those printed in few, or even single copies, for private or limited distribution ~~The ISBD may also be used to prepare descriptions for later resources produced by hand or by methods continuing the tradition of the hand-produced book.~~

**other title information**

10600 a word or phrase, or a group of characters, appearing in conjunction with, and subordinate to, the title proper of the resource. Other title information also occurs in conjunction with, and subordinate to, other titles (e.g. parallel titles, titles of individual works contained in the resource, titles in series/subseries statements). Other title information qualifies, explains or completes the title to which it applies, or is indicative of the character, contents, etc., of the resource or the works contained in it, or is indicative of the motive for, or the occasion of, the resource's production. The term includes sub-titles and avant-titres, but does not include variant titles (e.g. spine titles, container titles, sleeve titles, other forms of the title proper) found on the resource but not on the prescribed sources of information

**output medium**

*see* medium

**pagination**

the sequential numbering of the pages of a printed text; for the purposes of the ISBD, the term includes the numbering of leaves, columns, etc.

~~parallel element~~

~~a statement of an element in a language and/or script different from the first statement given; e.g. Parallel-edition statement, Parallel-other title information, Parallel statement of responsibility, Parallel title~~

- parallel title**  
10610 a title presented on the prescribed sources of information for the resource as an equivalent in another language ~~and/or~~ script of the title proper of the resource or of an individual work in a resource with no collective title
- ~~part designation—~~  
~~numbering following the common title, that alone or in conjunction with a part title serves to distinguish one part from another part of a multipart resource~~
- ~~part(s) (notated music)—~~  
~~<notated music> music printed for one or more of the performers in an ensemble; see also piano (violin, etc.) conductor part~~
- part designation**  
10620 <multipart resources> numbering following the common title that alone or in conjunction with a part title serves to distinguish one part from another part
- ~~periodical—~~  
~~a type of serial, published at regular intervals, more frequently than annually and normally containing separate articles~~
- Phonogram (“P”) date**  
a date appearing with the sound recording copyright symbol ©<sup>“P”</sup> followed by a date is commonly known as the “phonogram date”; it has variant meanings under different copyright conventions and laws but generally indicates the first date of the sound recording
- photograph**  
10630 an opaque print produced by the action of light on sensitive film
- physical carrier**  
the physical medium on or in which data, sound, images, programs, etc., may be stored. For certain categories of material, the physical carrier consists of a storage medium (e.g. tape, film) sometimes encased in a plastic, metal, etc., housing (e.g. cassette, cartridge) that is an integral part of the resource (*See also* container; medium)
- piano (violin, etc.) conductor part**  
performance part to which cues have been added to enable the performer to function also as conductor; sometimes called “piano (violin, etc.) conductor score”
- place of publication**  
10640 the geographic location in which a resource is issued, usually given on the preferred source of information as the name of a city [ODLIS]
- plate**  
a leaf containing illustrative matter, with or without explanatory text, that does not form part of either the preliminary or the main sequences of pages or leaves or does not form an integral part of a gathering of leaves of text. For older monographic resources, plates are always leaves that are printed with some technique other than letterpress. Plates may include leaves that contain no printing other than engraved text (*See also* illustration)
- ~~plate number (notated music)—~~  
10650 <notated music> the number that was given to the original plates, which now appears at the foot of a page of notated music, identifying the plates from which an edition was printed. A plate number can consist of a combination of numbers, letters and symbols; the name of a publisher may be included
- ~~postcard—~~  
~~a picture produced on card and designed for transmission through the mail without the use of an envelope~~

**poster**

a bill or placard intended for public display

**preferred source of information**

the order in which the source or sources are selected for the description from among the various possibilities for sources

*see Sources of information*

10660 **preliminaries**

the title page or page(s) (or the title-page substitute) together with the verso of the title page or page(s) (or the title-page substitute) and any pages preceding the title page or page(s) (or the title-page substitute)

**prescribed punctuation**

punctuation supplied by the cataloguing agency according to the requirements of the ISBD to precede or enclose ~~the information given in each~~ an element ~~(except the first element of area 1)~~ or area of the bibliographic description

**prescribed sources of information**

the source or sources from which information is taken for entry of each element or area of bibliographic description

10670 *see Sources of information***print**

an etching, engraving, lithograph, etc., in a limited artist's edition—~~Alternatively, the specific name of the process is used~~

**printed resource**

a resource in eye-readable form or in an embossed form for use by the visually impaired, including a resource published for limited distribution or for sale on demand

**printer**

a person or firm that prints a printed resource, as distinct from the publisher that issues the resource and the bookseller that offers it for sale; in early printed books, the printer and publisher were often the same [ODLIS]

10680 **producer** ~~(electronic resource)~~ —  
<electronic resources> the person or corporate body with the financial and/or administrative responsibility for the physical processes whereby an electronic resource is brought into existence. Specific responsibilities may relate in varying degrees to the creative and technical aspects of a particular work, including collecting data and converting data into a computerized form**producer** ~~(motion picture)~~ —

<motion pictures> the person designated as “producer” who has overall responsibility for bringing a motion picture into existence. Specific responsibilities may relate in varying degrees to the creative and technical aspects of a particular production

10690 **producer** ~~(sound recording)~~ —

<sound recordings> the person who has technical responsibility for the fixing of the sound. A producer may also be responsible in varying degrees for the creative and other aspects of a sound recording

**production company** ~~(motion picture)~~ —

<motion pictures> a company exercising overall responsibility for the financial, technical and organizational management of the creation of a motion picture

**production company** (~~sound recording~~) —

~~<sound recordings>~~ (1) the company responsible for the fixing of the sound at a recording session ~~or~~ (2) the company responsible for the mass production of the sound recording (e.g. pressing of discs or replication of tape copies)

10700

**projection**

~~<cartographic resources>~~ a systematic drawing of lines on a plane surface to represent the parallels of latitude and the meridians of longitude of the Earth or a section of the Earth or other celestial sphere [USDMA, *under map projection*]

**publication**

*see* resource

**publisher**

a person or corporate body that prepares and issues a resource for public sale or distribution, normally on the basis of a legal contract in which the publisher is granted certain exclusive rights in exchange for assuming the financial risk of publication and agreeing to compensate the author, usually with a share of the profits; in older books, the publisher and printer are often the same, but since the mid-19th century, the two functions have been performed by separate entities [ODLIS]

10710

**publisher's number** (~~notated music~~) —

~~<notated music>~~ a list number that can be given by music publishers, usually appearing on the title pages of their notated music resources, intended to identify that resource and facilitate ordering and distribution. The name of a publisher may be included

**quire**

*see* gathering

~~realization~~ (~~audiovisual resource~~) —

~~the mounting, staging or otherwise bringing into existence of a work by performance~~

10720

**record** (**verb**)

to make a description from information derived or obtained from a resource rather than copying the exact textual information

**recording company** (~~sound recording~~) —

*see* Production company ~~<sound recordings>~~

**reel**

a flanged circular holder with a hole running from end to end onto which a roll of film or magnetic tape is wound, and used for recording microreproductions of text and/or images (~~i.e.~~ microfilm reel), or for playing sound (~~i.e.~~ sound reel), motion pictures (~~i.e.~~ film reel) or video (~~i.e.~~ videoreel). Usually designed to be inserted into a display or playback device

10730

**reissue** (~~audiovisual resources, sound recordings, videorecordings, and still and moving images~~) —

a named or otherwise identified batch of copies of a resource produced from the same master copy as an earlier issue, in the same physical form, and emanating from the same publishing or production agency (*See also* edition)

~~reissue~~ (~~motion picture~~) —

~~a later issue of a work by a distributor other than the original distributor. A later release by the original distributor is called a "re-release"~~

**remote access**

a method of accessing electronic resources stored on a server and accessed through a computer network

- 10740 **remote sensing**  
the measurement or acquisition of information of some property of an object or phenomenon by a recording device that is not in physical or intimate contact with the object or phenomenon under study; sometimes restricted to the practice of data collection in the wavelengths from ultraviolet to radio regions [USDMA]
- representative fraction**  
the scale of a map or chart expressed as a fraction or ratio [USDMA]
- reprint**  
 (1) a new edition reproducing the text of an earlier one as exactly as possible  
 (2) a new impression made, or derived from, the same master as an earlier one
- 10750 **resolution** ~~(electronic resource) —~~  
~~for <graphic resources>, resolution indicates~~ the smallest measuring unit used to register data for a computer image and is expressed as dots per inch, pixels per line, or lines per millimetre. It indicates the amount of detail found in one pixel of the image-
- resolution**  
~~For <cartographic resources>, resolution indicates~~ the accuracy at which a given map scale can depict the location and shape of geographic features. The larger the map scale, the higher the possible resolution. As a map scale decreases, resolution diminishes and feature boundaries must be smoothed, simplified, or not shown at all, e.g. small areas may have to be represented as points. For example, an image with one-metre resolution means that each pixel in the image represents one square metre on the ground
- 10760 **resource**  
 an entity, tangible or intangible, that comprises intellectual and/or artistic content and is conceived, produced and/or issued as a unit, forming the basis of a single bibliographic description. Resources include text, music, still and moving images, graphics, maps, sound recordings and video recordings, electronic data or programs, including those issued serially (*See also Resource itself, whole resource*)
- resource identifier**  
any number of alphanumeric designation associated with and identifying a resource according to an international standard, such as an International Standard Book Number or an International Standard Serial Number, or a designation assigned by a publisher
- 10770 **resource itself** —  
~~the entity that contains the intellectual and/or artistic content of the resource, including when applicable the physical carrier and its permanently affixed labels with which the resource was produced and/or issued (See also Resource, Whole resource)~~
- right ascension**  
the angular distance measured eastward on the Equator from the vernal equinox to the hour circle through the celestial body, from 0 to 24 hours [USDMA]
- scale** ~~(cartographic resource) —~~  
<cartographic resources> the ratio of distances on the resource to the actual distances they represent
- 10780 **score**  
 notated music consisting of a series of staves showing all the parts of an ensemble meant to be heard simultaneously a musical work, normally arranged one underneath the other on different staves in vertical alignment, so that the parts may be read simultaneously; also the generic term for modified arrangements of notated music in this form; a work for one instrument or one voice cannot be rendered in score (*see also chorus score, close score, condensed score, miniature score, vocal score*)

**section** ~~(continuing resource)~~ —

<continuing resources> one part of a group of related resources having a common title. The section is normally devoted to a specific subject category and is identified by the common title of the group and a section title and/or a section designation. There can be two or more hierarchical levels of sections (subsections)

**section designation**

10790 numbering following the common title, that alone or in conjunction with a section title serves to distinguish one part of a group of related resources having a common title (*See also* subseries designation)

**section title**

the title specific to a section that serves to distinguish one part of a group of related resources having a common title. The section title is dependent on the common title for identification of a resource whether distinctive or not. A designation such as “Series C” or “Second series” is considered a section title or subseries title when there is more than one simultaneous section or the subseries is unnumbered. If the designation represents a change in numbering, it is considered part of the numbering of the serial or series (*See also* dependent title)

**serial**

10800 a continuing resource issued in a succession of discrete issues or parts, usually bearing numbering, that has no predetermined conclusion. Examples of serials include journals, magazines, electronic journals, continuing directories, annual reports, newspapers, and monographic series

**series**

(1) a group of separate resources related to one another by the fact that each resource bears, in addition to its own title proper, a collective title applying to the group as a whole, i.e., the title proper of the series. The separate resources may or may not be numbered. ~~The volumes, etc., within a series may be monographs or continuing resources~~ —

(2) a numbered sequence of issues or parts within a serial

**series statement**

10810 ~~the main elements~~ a statement identifying a one or more series to which a resource belongs, including any numbering of the ~~separate resources~~ within the series. ~~Also includes a statement that a resource forms part of a multipart monographic resource~~ (*See also* subseries statement)

**series title page**

an added title page bearing the series title proper and usually, though not necessarily, other information about the series (e.g. statement of responsibility, numeric designation, data relating to publication, title of the resource within the series)

**sheet**

as used in the physical description area, a single piece of paper other than a broadsheet with printed matter on one or both sides

10820 **sheet** ~~(older monographic resource)~~ —

<older monographic resources> a piece of paper or other material manufactured in a size to cover the type-forme of the printing press

**signature** ~~(older monographic resource)~~ —

<older monographic resources> one or more letter(s) and/or symbol(s) and/or numeral(s) usually printed at the foot of the first and some subsequent recto pages of each gathering of a resource and used to ensure the correct printing, folding and assembly of a resource

**slide**

a two-dimensional image on film or other transparent material, mounted in a frame and designed for use in a projector or viewer

10830 **sound cartridge**

*see* cartridge

**sound cassette**

*see* cassette

**sound disc**

(1) a disc of plastic or other material on which sound vibrations are registered

(2) an optical disc on which sound is digitally encoded on a metallic surface protected by plastic polycarbonate

**sound recording**

a recording of sound, unaccompanied by visual images

10840 **sound reel**

*see* reel

**sources of information**

*see preferred source of information; prescribed sources of information*

~~The source or sources from which information is taken for the bibliographic description. These sources are prescribed in a preferred order~~

~~prescribed source—~~

~~the source or sources from which information is taken for entry of each element or area of the bibliographic description~~

~~preferred source—~~

10850 ~~the order in which the source or sources are selected for the description from among the various possibilities for sources~~

**specific material designation (SMD)**

~~the a term indicating the specific class of material (usually the class of physical object) to which the a resource belongs~~

**split**

the division of a continuing resource into two or more new and separate continuing resources

~~sponsoring body—~~

~~a corporate body with intellectual and not merely financial sponsorship may be included in the description~~

~~**state (older monographic resource)—**~~

10860 <older monographic resources> a variation within a resource that distinguishes it from other copies within the same impression or issue in any respect that the publisher has not identified as representing a discrete publishing effort (*See also* edition, impression, issue)

**statement of responsibility**

one or more name(s), phrase(s) or group(s) of characters relating to the identification and/or function of any persons or corporate bodies responsible for or contributing to the creation or ~~realization~~ realisation of the intellectual or artistic content of a work. Statements of responsibility may occur in conjunction with titles (e.g. the title proper, parallel titles, titles of individual works contained in the resource, titles in series/subseries statements) or in conjunction with edition statements

- stereograph**  
10870 slides or pictures, mounted in pairs, designed to produce a three-dimensional optical effect when used with a stereoscopic viewer. Stereographic images may also be printed on an opaque surface for use with a hand viewer consisting of bicoloured lenses mounted in a card frame; this type of stereograph usually appears as a book illustration
- study print**  
a picture accompanied by questions or explanations, which are often printed on the verso
- study score**  
~~a score not primarily intended for use in performance; such scores are often issued in a reduced size (“miniature score”, “pocket score”)~~ [see miniature score](#)
- subseries**  
10880 a series that appears as part of a main series. The subseries may or may not have a title dependent on that of the main series. The subseries may or may not be numbered (*See also* common title, dependent title)
- subseries designation**  
numbering following the title of the main series, that can stand alone or in conjunction with the title of the subseries (*See also* section designation)
- subseries statement**  
the main elements identifying a subseries, including any numbering of the separate resources within the subseries. ~~In the case of~~ [For](#) a subseries the title of which is dependent on the title of the main series, the subseries statement includes both the title of the main series and the subseries, and may include a subseries designation (*See also* series statement)
- supplement**  
10890 a resource, usually issued separately, that complements the main resource by bringing it up-to-date or otherwise continuing it or containing a special feature not included in it. A supplement may or may not have a title dependent on that of the main resource (*See also* common title, dependent title)
- tête-bêche**—  
A form of binding in which one text begins at the “front” and another text at the “back”, with the texts being inverted with respect to one another. [e.g. an English and a French text bound together \(see also back-to-back\)](#)
- terms of availability**  
[the conditions under which a resource may be obtained, e.g. the price of a resource offered for sale or a statement that a resource is available for hire or for free](#)
- title**  
10900 a word or phrase, or a group of characters, usually appearing on a resource, that is the name of the resource or the work (or any one of a group of individual works) contained in it. A resource will usually contain several titles (e.g. on the prescribed source of information, or elsewhere on the resource or on the container, or on accompanying material), and these titles may be identical or may differ from one another (*See also* common title, dependent title)
- title page**  
10910 a page normally at the beginning of a resource presenting the fullest information about the resource and the [work or](#) work(s) contained in it. It contains a title and, usually, although not necessarily, the fullest title information, a statement of responsibility and the whole or part of the publication statement. ~~When the elements normally presented on the title page are divided without repetition between two facing pages or on pages distributed throughout the resource, these pages together are regarded as the title page~~ (*See also* colophon)

**title-page substitute**

the page, portion of a page or other component part of a resource, that includes the information usually found on a title page, and that, in the absence of a title page, takes its place (e.g. cover, caption, masthead, editorial pages, first page of music, colophon) (*See also* colophon)

**title proper**

10920 the chief title of a resource, i.e. the title of a resource in the form in which it appears on the prescribed sources of information for the title and statement of responsibility area. The title proper includes any alternative title, but excludes parallel titles and other title information. In the case of a section or some supplements and some titles of subseries or parts, the title proper can consist of two or more components: the common title (or the title of the main series or of the multipart monographic resource), the dependent title and the dependent title designation. For resources containing several individual works the title proper is the collective title. Resources containing several individual works and lacking a collective title are considered not to have a title proper. A series or subseries also has its own title proper (*See also* common title, dependent title, dependent title designation)

**title screen**

10930 title information appearing on a monitor or screen, usually displayed in the first or opening [frame or frame\(s\)](#) of a resource

~~trade mark~~ [trademark](#) name  
*see* label name

**transcribe**

to make a description copying the exact textual information for the area being described as found on the resource, except for punctuation or capitalization

**transparency**

a sheet of transparent material, which may be mounted in a card frame, bearing an image and designed for use with an overhead projector or light box; a single transparency may be furnished with overlays

~~type-forme (older monographic resource) —~~

10940 [<older monographic resources>](#) the combination of type-pages, arranged and locked in a frame, used to print on one side of a sheet

~~type-page (older monographic resource) —~~

[<older monographic resources>](#) the arrangement of movable type in the shape used to print a page on a sheet

**updating looseleaf**

an integrating resource that consists of one or more base volumes updated by separate pages that are inserted, removed and/or substituted

**variant copy**

10950 a copy showing any bibliographically significant difference from one or more other copies of the same edition. The term may refer to an impression, issue or state

~~version —~~

~~(1) a related term for edition. Versions may indicate major or minor changes and therefore may not constitute a reliable guide to indicate a new edition —~~

~~(2) it is often used to signify output format in the publishing world (*See also* Edition)~~

**videocartridge**

*see* cartridge

**videocassette**

*see* cassette

- videodisc**  
10960 | a laser- or stylus-readable random-access circular disc that contains both audio and video signals recorded in an analog form (e.g. laserdisc format) or a digital form (~~Digital Video Disc~~ or e.g. DVD format) that can be played on a television set or a computer
- videorecording**  
a recording of visual images, usually in motion and with sound accompaniment, designed for playback via a television receiver
- videoreel**  
*see* reel
- visual projection**  
10970 | a two-dimension image (or set of images) produced in its original form by such techniques as drawing, painting or photography, and designed for use with a projector or a magnification device such as a viewer or microscope
- vocal score**  
notated music for a work for voices and instruments that gives the vocal parts in score form but the instrumental parts in a keyboard reduction
- wallchart**  
an opaque sheet designed for display and exhibiting data in graphic or tabular form
- whole resource**  
10980 | the entity that includes the resource itself, its container, documentation and other accompanying material as it was produced and/or issued as a unit and that forms the basis of a single bibliographic description  
(*See also* resource, ~~Resource itself~~)



## INDEX

- Abbreviations ~~0-A.6~~, Appendix D  
 in Edition statements 2.1.2  
 in Physical descriptions Appendix D  
 in Publishers' names 4.2.7  
 in Qualification to identifier 8.4+1.3  
 in Series or subseries numbering 6.6.1  
 in Statement of projection 3.1.2.2  
 in Title ~~0-A.2.57.1+1~~  
*see also* Acronyms and initialisms
- Abridgements ~~0-A.6~~  
 in Resources with no title proper 1.1.5.4  
 in Other title information 1.43.4.2  
 in Statement of responsibility 1.54.5.3  
 in Title proper 1.1.5.1
- Absorption notes 7.2.4.7.4
- Accompanying material statement 5.4  
 in Multi-level description Appendix A
- Acronyms and initialisms ~~0-A.6.5~~  
 in Other title information 1.1.4.1.1, 1.43.3.1  
 in Statement of responsibility ~~1.5.5.1,~~  
 1.54.5.4  
 in Title proper ~~0-A.2.57.1.2, 0.2.5.1.6,~~  
 1.1.3.3, 1.43.3.1, 7.1.1.43  
*see also* Abbreviations
- Alternative title 1.1.3.4
- Atlases ~~5~~
- Audience notes  
*see* Use/audience notes
- Author statement  
*see* Statement of responsibility
- Availability, Terms of  
*see* Terms of availability
- Bi-directional records Appendix B
- Bibliographic history  
 notes on 7.2
- Bibliographic records  
 single or multiple ~~0-A.2.1, 0.2.2~~
- Bibliographies, notes on 7.7.3
- Binding notes 7.8.2
- Bound with 7.11
- Capitalization ~~0-A.7~~  
 other title information 1.43.4.2  
 parallel title 1.32.5.1  
 series or subseries title 6.1.3  
 title proper 1.1.5.1
- Changes to edition statement  
*see* Edition statement—changes to
- Changes to name of publisher, producer and/or distributor  
*see* Publisher, producer and/or distributor—change of
- Changes to statement of responsibility  
*see* Statement of responsibility—changes
- Changes to title proper  
*see* Title proper—changes
- Chronological designation  
*see* Numbering data
- Collation (Older monographic resources) ~~5.3,~~  
 7.5.1  
*see also* Physical description area
- Collective title 1.1.4.3  
 collective title proper lacking 1.1.4.4,  
 1.1.5.2  
 edition statement 2.1.4.2
- Colour specifications 5.2.4
- Common title 1.1.3.7, ~~6.6.1.5~~  
 transcription 1.1.5.3
- Container 5.3.1.1+1, 5.3.1.3  
Content form 0.1  
Content qualification 0.2
- Contents notes 7.7
- Continuation notes 7.2.4.7.1
- Contractions ~~0-A.6.6~~
- Coordinates statement 3.1.3
- Copy notes 7.11
- Copyright dates 4.43.6, 4.43.7
- Date of printing or manufacture ~~or engraving~~  
 4.43.7
- Date of publication, production and/or distribution 4.43
- Dependent title 1.1.3.7, 1.1.4.65, ~~1.1.7, 6.1.5~~  
 transcription 1.1.5.3
- Description  
 basis of ~~0-A.4.1~~  
 changes requiring a new description  
~~0-A.2.46, 1.1.76, 1.54.6~~  
 changes not requiring a new description  
~~0-A.2.57~~
- Dimensions of resource 5.3
- Direct-access electronic resource 7.0.34  
 dimensions 5.3.1.1.2
- Distribution  
*see* Publication, production, distribution, etc., area

- Distributor [4.2.5](#), [4.3](#)  
 ——— *statement of function* [4.3](#)
- Edition area [2](#)  
 notes [7.2](#)
- Edition statement [2.1](#)  
 additional edition statement [2.4](#)  
 changes to [0-A.2.4](#), [6.2.2\(b\)](#), [2.1.5](#)  
 in Series and subseries [6.3.3](#)  
 notes [7.2](#)  
 parallel edition statement [2.2](#)  
 statement of responsibility [2.3](#), [2.5](#)  
 supplied statement [2.1.3](#)  
 transcription [2.1.2](#)
- Editions, Different  
 notes on [7.2.4.3](#)
- Electronic resources  
*see* Direct-access electronic resources  
 Remote-access electronic resources
- ~~Engraver~~  
 ——— *see* Printer, manufacturer or engraver
- Examples [0-8A.11](#)
- Extent of resource [5.1](#)
- Facsimile  
 publication, production, distribution, etc. [4](#)  
 notes [7.2.4.2](#)  
 numbering [3.3.10](#), [9](#)
- File name [1.1.1](#), [2](#), [1.1.6](#)  
 ——— *notes* [7.10.1](#)
- ~~Filmstrip specifications~~ [5.1.3](#), [5.2.7](#)
- Fingerprint [8.1.5](#)
- Frequency statement [7.0.2](#), [3](#)
- ~~General material designation~~ [1.2](#)
- Generic title [0-A.2.4](#), [6.2.1\(a\)](#), [1.1.3.1](#)
- Genre notes [7.1.2.1](#)
- Illustrations *statement* [5.2.3](#)
- Imperfections [0-11A.10](#)
- Imprint  
*see* Publication, production, distribution, etc.,  
 area
- Inaccuracies [0-9A.8](#)  
 in Dates [4.4](#), [3](#), [5](#)  
 in name of publisher, producer and/or  
 distributor [4.2.10](#)
- Initialisms  
*see* Acronyms and initialisms
- Inserts *insets* [1.1.4](#), [5.2](#)  
*changes to titles* [1.1.7](#)  
 notes [7.2.4.4](#), [7.2.4.5](#)
- International Standard Book Number  
*see* ISBN
- International Standard Serial Number  
*see* ISSN
- ISBN [8.1.2](#)
- ISSN [8.1.2](#)  
 in Series and subseries [6.5](#)  
 notes [7.2.4](#)
- Issued with [7.2.4.6](#)
- Key title [8.2](#)
- Language of the description [0-A.5](#)  
 in bi-directional records [Appendix B](#)
- Languages, Multiple [0-A.3.2.9](#)
- Letters in titles [0-A.2.5](#), [7.1.6](#), [1.1.3.5](#)
- Logo  
 in Title proper [1.1.3.3](#)
- Looseleaf resource [4.4](#), [3.10.1](#), [2](#), [5.1.2](#), [8.4.1](#)
- Major changes to title proper  
*see* Title proper—changes
- Manufacturer  
*see* Printer, or manufacturer or engraver
- Material or type of resource specific area [3](#)  
 notes [7.3](#)
- Mathematical data (Cartographic resources) [3.1](#)  
 notes [7.3.2](#), [1](#)
- [Media type](#) [0.3](#)
- Merger notes [7.2.4.7.2](#)
- Microform specifications [5.1.7](#), [5.2.5](#)
- Minor changes to title proper  
*see* Title proper—changes
- Misprints [0-9A.8](#)
- Misspelled words [0-9A.8](#)
- Mode of access note [7.0.4](#), [5](#)
- Multilevel description [5.4.4](#), [3](#), [Appendix A](#)
- Multiple languages  
*see* Languages, Multiple
- Multiple scripts  
*see* Scripts, Multiple
- Music format statement (Notated music) [3.2](#)
- Name of printer, or manufacturer or engraver  
*see* Printer, or manufacturer or engraver
- Name of publisher, producer and/or distributor  
*see* Publisher, producer and/or distributor
- Note area [7](#)
- Numbering data [3.3](#)  
~~lack of~~ [3.3.1](#)  
 notes [7.3.3](#)  
 in Series and subseries [6.6](#)  
~~recording~~ [3.3.1](#)
- Numbers in titles [1.1.3.5](#)
- Other physical details [5.2](#)
- Other title information [1.4](#), [3](#)  
~~changes~~ [1.4.4.9](#)

- ~~in Common and dependent titles—1.4.4.6~~  
 in Series and subseries 6.3  
~~notes—7.1.3~~  
~~transcription—1.4.4~~  
 Pagination statement 5.1.4  
 Parallel edition statement  
   *see* Edition statement—parallel edition statement  
 Parallel other title information 1.4.3.4.7  
 Parallel title 1.3.2  
   ~~changes—1.3.5.6~~  
   in Series and subseries 6.2  
   notes 7.1.3  
   ~~transcription—1.3.5~~  
 Physical description area 5  
   notes 7.5  
 Place of printing, ~~or manufacture or engraving~~ 4.5.4  
 Place of publication, production and/or distribution 4.1  
   ~~change of—4.1.17~~  
 Preferred order of sources of information ~~0-A.4.3.2~~  
 Prescribed punctuation ~~0-A.3.1~~  
 Prescribed sources of information ~~0-A.4.3~~  
 Printing, ~~or manufacture or engraving~~  
   date of  
   *see* Date of printing, ~~or manufacture or engraving~~  
   ~~engraving~~  
   place of  
   *see* Place of printing, ~~or manufacture or engraving~~  
   ~~engraving~~  
 Printer, ~~or manufacturer or engraver~~ 4.6.5  
 Privilege dates 4.4.7.3.6  
 Production  
   *see* Publication, production, distribution, etc., area  
 Projection statement 3.1.2  
 Publication, production and/or distribution date  
   *see* Date of publication, production and/or distribution  
 Publication, production, distribution, etc., area 4  
   notes 7.4  
 Publisher, producer and/or distributor 4.2  
   ~~change of—4.2.15~~  
 Punctuation ~~0-A.3.2~~  
 Purpose ~~of ISBD~~ ~~0-A.1.2~~  
 Qualification—8.4  
   to Resource identifiers 8.4-1.3  
   to Terms of availability 8.3.2
- Relationships to other continuing resources  
   notes on 7.2.4  
 Remote-access electronic resource—5  
   extent 5.1.3  
   notes 7.0.4.5  
   ~~other physical details—5.2.4.2, 5.2.6.3~~  
 Reproduction 4  
   notes 7.2.4.2  
 Resource identifier and terms of availability  
   area 8  
   notes 7.8  
 Romanisation  
   *see* Transliterated title  
 Scale statement—3.1.1  
Scale  
   *see* Statement of scale  
 Scope ~~of ISBD~~ ~~0-A.1.1~~  
 Script of the description ~~0-A.5~~  
   in bi-directional records Appendix B  
 Scripts, Multiple ~~0-A.3.2.9~~  
 Section title 1.1.4.6.1, 1.1.5.3  
   ~~changes—1.1.7~~  
 Separation notes 7.2.4.7.3  
 Series area 6  
   notes 7.6  
   numbering 6.6  
   other title information 6.3  
   parallel title 6.2  
   statement of responsibility 6.4  
   title 6.1  
 Sound specifications 5.2.7.6  
 Sources of information ~~0-A.4~~  
 Specific material designation 5.1, Appendix C  
 Split or separation notes 7.2.4.7.3  
 Standard numbers 8  
   notes on 7.8  
Statement of scale 3.1.1  
 Statement of responsibility 1.5.4  
   abbreviated—1.5.5.1  
   ~~changes—1.5.6~~  
   form—1.5.3  
   in Additional edition statement 2.5  
   in Common and dependent title—1.5.5.12  
   in Edition statement 2.3  
   in Other title information 1.4.3.2  
   in Resources without a title proper—1.5.5.11  
   in Series or subseries 6.4  
   in Title proper 1.1.3.6  
   notes 7.1.4  
   parallel statement of responsibility—1.5.5.10  
   transcription—1.5.5

- Subseries 6
- ~~changes to titles—1.1.7~~
- designation not described as dependent  
        1.1.5.3
- notes 7.2.4.7.5, 7.2.4.7.6
- Summary note 7.10.2
- Supplements 1.1.4.6
- ~~changes to title—1.1.7~~
- notes [7.2.4.4](#), [7.2.4.5](#)
- Symbols ~~0.10~~[A.9](#)
- System requirements note [7.0.34](#)
- Technical specifications [7.0.34](#)
- Terms of availability 8.3
- notes 7.8
- Title
- see* Alternative title
- Collective title
- Common title
- Dependent title
- Generic title
- Key title
- Parallel title
- Section title
- Title proper
- Transliterated title
- Variant title
- Title and statement of responsibility area 1
- notes 7.1
- Title page ~~0~~[A.4.2.1.1](#)
- ~~more than one—0.4.2.1~~
- ~~substitute—0.4.2.1~~
- Title proper 1.1
- changes ~~0~~[A.2.46](#), ~~0~~[A.2.57](#), [1.1.76](#)
- ~~notes—7.1.1.6~~
- ~~choice—1.1.4~~
- ~~form of—1.1.3~~
- in ~~S~~series and subseries 6.1
- notes 7.1.1
- ~~numbering—1.1.3.5~~
- ~~transcription—1.1.5~~
- ~~variations—1.1.6~~
- Translation note 7.2.4.1
- Transliterated title ~~0~~[A.5](#)
- notes [7.1.1.32](#)
- Treatment of resources ~~0~~[A.2](#)
- Type of resource specific area
- see* Material or type of resource specific area
- Typographical errors ~~0~~[9A.8](#)
- Use/audience notes 7.10.3
- Variant title ~~1.1.6~~[3.1](#)
- notes [7.1.1.32](#)

Versions 2.1.1